This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

X 916

יהוה

INSTITVTIO THEOLOGICA
ANDOVERI FVNDATA MDCCCVIII.
Ps. CXIX. 169.
כדברך הבינני
JOH. XVII. 17.
ὁ λογος ὁ σος αληθεια ἐστι.
ΑΚΡΟΓΩΝΙ
ΟΥ ΧΡΙΣΤΟΥ.

~~7..6..21~~
~~[illegible]~~
50.81

ENGLISH GRAMMAR,

ADAPTED TO THE

DIFFERENT CLASSES OF LEARNERS.

WITH

AN APPENDIX,

CONTAINING

RULES AND OBSERVATIONS,

FOR ASSISTING THE MORE ADVANCED STUDENT'S

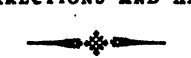
TO WRITE WITH PERSPICUITY AND ACCURACY.

"They who are learning to compose and arrange their sentences with accuracy and order, are learning, at the same time, to think with accuracy and order." BLAIR.

By LINDLEY MURRAY.

THE NINTH EDITION,

WITH CORRECTIONS AND ADDITIONS.



NEW-YORK:

PRINTED AND SOLD BY ISAAC COLLINS AND SON,
NO. 189, PEARL-STREET.

1805.

INTRODUCTION.

When the number and variety of Engliſh Grammars already publiſhed, and the ability with which ſome of them are written, are conſidered, little can be expected from a new compilation, beſides a careful ſelection of the moſt uſeful matter, and ſome degree of improvement in the mode of adapting it to the underſtanding, and the gradual progreſs of learners. In theſe reſpects ſomething, perhaps, may yet be done, for the eaſe and advantage of young perſons.

In books deſigned for the inſtruction of youth, there is a *medium* to be obſerved, between treating the ſubject in ſo extenſive and minute a manner, as to embarraſs and confuſe their minds, by offering too much at once for their comprehenſion; and, on the other hand, conducting it by ſuch ſhort and general precepts and obſervations, as convey to them no clear and preciſe information. A diſtribution of the parts, which is either defective or irregular, has alſo a tendency to perplex the young underſtanding, and to retard its knowledge of the principles of literature. A diſtinct general view, or outline, of all the eſſential parts of the ſtudy in which they are engaged; a gradual and judicious ſupply of this outline; and a due arrangement of the diviſions, according to their natural order and connexion, appear to be among the beſt means of enlightening the minds of youth, and of facilitating their acquiſition of knowledge. The Compiler of this work, at the ſame time that he has endeavoured to avoid a plan, which may be too conciſe or too extenſive, defective in its parts or irregular in their diſpoſition, has ſtudied to render his ſubject ſufficiently eaſy, intelligible, and comprehenſive. He does not preſume to have completely attained theſe objects.

How far he has ſucceeded in the attempt, and wherein he has failed, muſt be referred to the determination of the judicious and candid reader.

THE method which he has adopted, of exhibiting the performance in characters of different ſizes, will, he truſts, be conducive to that gradual and regular procedure, which is ſo favourable to the buſineſs of inſtruction. The more important rules, definitions, and obſervations, and which are therefore the moſt proper to be committed to memory, are printed with a larger type; whilſt rules and remarks that are of leſs conſequence, that extend or diverſify the general idea, or that ſerve as explanations, are contained in the ſmaller letter: theſe, or the chief of them, will be peruſed by the ſtudent to the greateſt advantage, if poſtponed till the general ſyſtem be completed. The uſe of notes and obſervations, in the common and detached manner, at the bottom of the page, would not, it is imagined, be ſo likely to attract the peruſal of youth, or admit of ſo ample and regular an illuſtration, as a continued and uniform order of the ſeveral ſubjects. In adopting this mode, care has been taken to adjuſt it ſo that the whole may be peruſed in a connected progreſs, or the part contained in the larger character read in order by itſelf.

WITH reſpect to the definitions and rules, it may not be improper more particularly to obſerve, that in ſelecting and forming them, it has been the Compiler's aim to render them as exact and comprehenſive, and, at the ſame time, as intelligible to young minds, as the nature of the ſubject, and the difficulties attending it, would admit. In this attempt, he has ſometimes been, unavoidably, induced to offer more for the ſcholar's memory, than he could otherwiſe have wiſhed. But if he has tolerably ſucceeded in his deſign, the advantages to be derived from it, will, in the end, more than compenſate the inconvenience. In regard to the notes and obſervations, he may add, that many of them are intended, not only to explain the ſubjects, and to illuſtrate them by comparative views, but alſo to invite the

ingenious ſtudent to inquiry and reflection, and to prompt to a more enlarged, critical, and ſatisfactory reſearch.

From the ſentiment generally admitted, that a proper ſelection of faulty compoſition is more inſtructive to the young grammarian, than any rules and examples of propriety that can be given, the Compiler has been induced to pay peculiar attention to this part of the ſubject; and though the inſtances of falſe grammar, under the rules of Syntax, are numerous, it is hoped they will not be found too many, when their variety and uſefulneſs are conſidered.

In a work which profeſſes itſelf to be a compilation, and which, from the nature and deſign of it, muſt conſiſt of materials ſelected from the writings of others, it is ſcarcely neceſſary to apologize for the uſe which the Compiler has made of his predeceſſors' labours; or for omitting to inſert their names. From the alterations which have been frequently made in the ſentiments and the language, to ſuit the connexion, and to adapt them to the particular purpoſes for which they are introduced; and, in many inſtances, from the uncertainty to whom the paſſages originally belonged, the inſertion of names could ſeldom be made with propriety. But if this could have been generally done, a work of this nature would derive no advantage from it, equal to the inconvenience of crowding the pages with a repetition of names and references. It is, however, proper to acknowledge, in general terms, that the authors to whom the grammatical part of this compilation is principally indebted for its materials, are Harris, Johnſon, Lowth, Prieſtley, Beattie, Sheridan, Walker, and Coote.

The Rules and Obſervations reſpecting Perſpicuity, &c. contained in the Appendix, and which are, chiefly, extracted from the writings of Blair and Campbell, will, it is preſumed, form a proper addition to the Grammar. The ſubjects are very nearly related; and the ſtudy of perſpicuity and accuracy in writing, appears naturally to follow that of Grammar. A competent acquaintance with

the principles of both, will prepare and qualify the ſtudents, for proſecuting thoſe additional improvements in language, to which they may be properly directed.

On the utility and importance of the ſtudy of Grammar, and the principles of Compoſition, much might be advanced, for the encouragement of perſons in early life to apply themſelves to this branch of learning; but as the limits of this Introduction will not allow of many obſervations on the ſubject, a few leading ſentiments are all that can be admitted here with propriety. As words are the ſigns of our ideas, and the medium by which we perceive the ſentiments of others, and communicate our own; and as ſigns exhibit the things which they are intended to repreſent, more or leſs accurately, according as their real or eſtabliſhed conformity to thoſe things is more or leſs exact; it is evident, that in proportion to our knowledge of the nature and properties of words, of their relation to each other, and of their eſtabliſhed connexion with the ideas to which they are applied, will be the certainty and eaſe, with which we transfuſe our ſentiments into the minds of one another; and that, without a competent knowledge of this kind, we ſhall frequently be in hazard of miſunderſtanding others, and of being miſunderſtood ourſelves. It may indeed be juſtly aſſerted, that many of the differences in opinion amongſt men, with the diſputes, contentions, and alienations of heart, which have too often proceeded from ſuch differences, have been occaſioned by a want of proper ſkill in the connexion and meaning of words, and by a tenacious miſapplication of language.

One of the beſt ſupports, which the recommendation of this ſtudy can receive, in ſmall compaſs, may be derived from the following ſentiments of an eminent and candid writer* on language and compoſition. "All that regards "the ſtudy of compoſition, merits the higher attention "upon this account, that it is intimately connected with "the improvement of our intellectual powers. For I

* Blair.

"must be allowed to say, that when we are employed, "after a proper manner, in the study of composition, we "are cultivating the understanding itself. The study of "arranging and expressing our thoughts with propriety, "teaches to think, as well as to speak, accurately."

BEFORE the close of this Introduction, it may not be superfluous to observe, that the Compiler of the following work has no interest in it, but that which arises from the hope, that it will prove of some advantage to young persons, and relieve the labours of those who are employed in their education. He wishes to promote, in some degree, the cause of virtue, as well as of learning; and, with this view, he has been studious, through the whole of the work, not only to avoid every example and illustration, which might have an improper effect on the minds of youth; but also to introduce, on many occasions, such as have a moral and religious tendency. His attention to objects of so much importance will, he trusts, meet the approbation of every well-disposed reader. If they were faithfully regarded in all books of education, they would doubtless contribute very materially to the order and happiness of society, by guarding the innocence, and cherishing the virtue of the rising generation.

Holdgate, near York,—1795.

Advertisement

TO THE NINTH EDITION.

The eighth edition of this grammar received considerable alterations and additions: but works of this nature admit of repeated improvements; and are, perhaps, never complete. The author, solicitous to render his book more worthy of the encouraging approbation bestowed on it by the public, has again revised the work with care and attention. The new edition, he hopes will be found much im-

proved. The additions, which are very conſiderable, are chiefly, ſuch as are calculated, to expand the learner's views of the ſubject; to obviate objections; and to render the ſtudy of grammar both eaſy and intereſting. This edition contains alſo a new and enlarged ſyſtem of parſing; copious liſts of nouns arranged according to their gender and number; and many notes and obſervations, which ſerve to extend, or to explain, particular rules and poſitions.*

The writer is ſenſible that, after all his endeavours to elucidate the principles of the work, there are few of the diviſions, arrangements, definitions, or rules, againſt which critical ingenuity cannot deviſe plauſible objections. The ſubject is attended with ſo much intricacy, and admits of views ſo various, that it was not poſſible to render every part of it unexceptionable; or to accommodate the work, in all reſpects, to the opinions and prepoſſeſſions of every grammarian and teacher. If the author has adopted that ſyſtem which, on the whole, is beſt ſuited to the nature of the ſubject, and conformable to the ſentiments of the moſt judicious grammarians; if his reaſonings and illuſtrations, reſpecting particular points, are founded on juſt principles, and the peculiarities of the Engliſh language; he has, perhaps, done all that could reaſonably be expected in a work of this nature; and he may warrantably indulge a hope, that the book will be ſtill more extenſively approved and circulated.

---

* The author conceives that the occaſional ſtrictures, diſperſed through the book, and intended to illuſtrate and ſupport a number of important grammatical points, will not, to young perſons of ingenuity, appear to be dry and uſeleſs diſcuſſions. He is perſuaded that, by ſuch perſons, they will be read with attention. And he preſumes that theſe ſtrictures will gratify their curioſity, ſtimulate application, and give ſolidity and permanence to their grammatical knowledge.

MOLDGATE, NEAR YORK,
1804.

CONTENTS.

PART I.——ORTHOGRAPHY.

CHAP. I. Of letters. Page.
SECT. 1. Of the nature of the letters, and of a perfect alphabet. : : : : 13
2. General observations on the sounds of the letters. : : : : : 21
3. The nature of articulation explained. 31
CHAP. 2. Of syllables, and the rules for arranging them. : : : : 35
CHAP. 3. Of words in general, and the rules for spelling them. : : 36

PART II.——ETYMOLOGY.

CHAP. I. A general view of the parts of speech. : : : : : : 40
CHAP. 2. Of the articles. : : : : 43
CHAP. 3. Of substantives.
SECT. 1. Of substantives in general. : : 46
2. Of gender. : : : : : : 47
3. Of number. : : : : : : 49
4. Of case. : : : : : : 52
CHAP. 4. Of pronouns. : : : : : 56
SECT. 1. Of the personal pronouns. : : 56
2. Of relative pronouns. : : : 58
3. Of the adjective pronouns. : : 61
CHAP. 5. Of adjectives.
SECT. 1. Of the nature of adjectives, and the degrees of comparison. : : : 66
2. Remarks on the subject of comparison. : : : : : : 68

CHAP. 6. Of verbs. Page.

SECT. 1. Of the nature of verbs in general. 69
2. Of number and perſon. : : : : 73
3. Of moods and participles. : : : 74
4. Remarks on the potential mood. : 78
5. Of the tenſes. : : : : : : 80
6. The conjugation of the auxiliary verbs *to have* and *to be*. : : : 86
7. The auxiliary verbs conjugated in their ſimple form; with obſervations on their peculiar nature and force. : : : : : : : : 95
8. The conjugation of regular verbs. : 99
9. Obſervations on paſſive verbs. : : 108
10. Of irregular verbs. : : : : : 111
11. Of defective verbs; and of the different ways in which verbs are conjugated. : : : : : : : 117

CHAP. 7. Of adverbs. : : : : : 119
CHAP. 8. Of prepoſitions. : : : : 123
CHAP. 9. Of conjunctions. : : : : 126
CHAP. 10. Of interjections. : : : : 129
CHAP. 11. Of derivation.
SEC. 1. Of the various ways in which words are derived from one another. : 130
2. A ſketch of the ſteps, by which the Engliſh language has riſen to its preſent ſtate of refinement. : : 134

PART III.——SYNTAX. 137

Of the ſyntax of the article. : : : : ; 166
Of the ſyntax of the noun.
Of ſeveral nouns joined by copulatives. : : 143
Of nouns connected by disjunctives. : : : 146

Page.
Of nouns of multitude. : : : : : : : 147
Of one noun governing another in the poſſeſſive caſe. : : : : : : : : : : : : 169

Of the ſyntax of the pronoun.

Of pronouns agreeing with their antecedents. : 148
Of the relative being nominative to the verb. : 153
Of the relative preceded by nominatives of different perſons. : : : : : : : : : : 155

Of the ſyntax of the adjective. : : : : 156

Of the ſyntax of the verb.

Of the verb's agreement with the nominative caſe. 139
Of verbs active requiring the objective caſe. : 175
Of one verb governing another in the infinitive mood. : : : : : : : : : : : 178
Of verbs related in point of time. : : : : 179

Of the ſyntax of the participle. : : : : 183

Of the rules reſpecting adverbs.

Of the poſition of adverbs. : : : : : : 186
Of two negatives. : : : : : : : : : : 189

Of the ſyntax of prepoſitions. : : : : 189

Of the ſyntax of conjunctions.

Of conjunctions connecting the ſame moods, tenſes, and caſes. : : : : : : : : : 194
Of conjunctions requiring the ſubjunctive mood, &c. : : : : : : : : : : : : : 195

Of the ſyntax of interjections. : : : : 153
Of compariſons by the conjunction *than* or *as*. 205
Directions reſpecting the ellipſis. : : : : 207
General rule of ſyntax. : : : : : : 211
An example of grammatical reſolution. : : 215

PART. IV.——PROSODY.

CHAP. 1. Of pronunciation. : : : : 224

SECT. 1. Of accent. : : : : : : : 224
2. Of quantity. : : : : : : : 229
3. Of emphaſis. : : : : : : : 231
4. Of pauſes. : : : : : : : 236
5. Of tones. : : : : : : : 239
CHAP. 2. Of verſification. : : : : 241

OF PUNCTUATION.

CHAP. 1. Of the comma. : : : : 258
CHAP. 2. Of the ſemicolon. : : : : 264
CHAP. 3. Of the colon. : : : : : 265
CHAP. 4. Of the period. : : : : 266
CHAP. 5. Of the daſh, notes of interrogation, exclamation, &c. : : 267

APPENDIX.

RULES AND OBSERVATIONS FOR PROMOTING PERSPICUITY AND ACCURACY IN WRITING.

PART I.

Of Perſpicuity and accuracy of expreſſion, with reſpect to ſingle words and phraſes.

CHAP. 1. Of purity. : : : : : : 274
CHAP. 2. Of propriety. : : : : : 275
CHAP. 3. Of preciſion. : : : : : 282

PART II.

Of perſpicuity and accuracy of expreſſion, with reſpect to the conſtruction of ſentences.

CHAP. 1. Of the clearneſs of a ſentence. 287
CHAP. 2. Of the unity of a ſentence. : 293
CHAP. 3. Of the ſtrength of a ſentence. 297
CHAP. 4. Of figures of ſpeech. : : : 315
CONCLUSION. : : : : : : : : : 327

ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

ENGLISH GRAMMAR is the art of ſpeaking and writing the Engliſh language with propriety.

It is divided into four parts, viz. ORTHOGRAPHY, ETYMOLOGY, SYNTAX, and PROSODY.

This diviſion may be rendered more intelligible to young minds, by obſerving, in other words, that Grammar treats, *firſt*, of the form and ſound of the letters, the combination of letters into ſyllables, and ſyllables into words; *ſecondly*, of the different ſorts of words, their various modifications, and their derivation; *thirdly*, of the union and right order of words in the formation of a ſentence; and *laſtly*, of the juſt pronunciation, and poetical conſtruction of ſentences.

PART I.

ORTHOGRAPHY.

CHAPTER I. *Of the LETTERS.*

SECT. 1. *Of the nature of the letters, and of a perfect alphabet.*

An articulate ſound, is the ſound of the human voice, formed by the organs of ſpeech.

Orthography teaches the nature and powers of letters, and the juſt method of ſpelling words.

A letter is the firſt principle or leaſt part of a word.

The letters of the Engliſh language, called the Engliſh Alphabet, are twenty-ſix in number.

The following is a list of the Roman, Italic, and Old English Characters.

Roman.		Italic.		Old English.		Name.
Cap.	Small.	Cap.	Small.	Cap.	Small.	
A	a	*A*	*a*	𝔄	𝔞	*ai.*
B	b	*B*	*b*	𝔅	𝔟	*bee.*
C	c	*C*	*c*	ℭ	𝔠	*see.*
D	d	*D*	*d*	𝔇	𝔡	*dee.*
E	e	*E*	*e*	𝔈	𝔢	*ee.*
F	f	*F*	*f*	𝔉	𝔣	*ef.*
G	g	*G*	*g*	𝔊	𝔤	*jee.*
H	h	*H*	*h*	ℌ	𝔥	*aitch.*
I	i	*I*	*i*	ℑ	𝔦	*i* or *eye.*
J	j	*J*	*j*	𝔍	𝔧	*jay.*
K	k	*K*	*k*	𝔎	𝔨	*kay.*
L	l	*L*	*l*	𝔏	𝔩	*el.*
M	m	*M*	*m*	𝔐	𝔪	*em.*
N	n	*N*	*n*	𝔑	𝔫	*en.*
O	o	*O*	*o*	𝔒	𝔬	*o.*
P	p	*P*	*p*	𝔓	𝔭	*pee.*
Q	q	*Q*	*q*	𝔔	𝔮	*cue.*
R	r	*R*	*r*	ℜ	𝔯 ꝛ	*ar.*
S	ſ s	*S*	*ſ s*	𝔖	ſ 𝔰	*eſs.*
T	t	*T*	*t*	𝔗	𝔱	*tee.*
U	u	*U*	*u*	𝔘	𝔲	*u* or *you.*
V	v	*V*	*v*		𝔳	*vee.*
W	w	*W*	*w*	𝔚	𝔴	*double u.*
X	x	*X*	*x*	𝔛	𝔵	*eks.*
Y	y	*Y*	*y*	𝔜	𝔶	*wy.*
Z	z	*Z*	*z*	ℨ	𝔷	*zed.*

A perfect alphabet of the Engliſh language, and, indeed, of every other language, would contain a number of letters, preciſely equal to the number of ſimple articulate ſounds belonging to the language. Every ſimple ſound would have its diſtinct character; and that character be the repreſentative of no other ſound. But this is far from being the ſtate of the Engliſh alphabet. It has more original ſounds than diſtinct ſignificant letters; and, conſequently, ſome of theſe letters are made to repreſent, not one ſound alone, but ſeveral ſounds. This will appear by reflecting, that the ſounds ſignified by the united letters *th*, *ſh*, *ng*, are elementary, and have no ſingle appropriate characters, in our alphabet; and that the letters *a* and *u* repreſent the different ſounds heard in *hat*, *hate*, *hall*; and in *but*, *bull*, *mule*.

To explain this ſubject more fully to the learners, we ſhall ſet down the characters made uſe of to repreſent all the elementary articulate ſounds of our language, as nearly in the manner and order of the preſent Engliſh alphabet, as the deſign of the ſubject will admit; and ſhall annex to each character the ſyllable or word, which contains its proper and diſtinct ſound. And here it will be proper to begin with the vowels.

Letters denoting the ſimple ſounds.			Words containing the ſimple ſounds.
a	*as heard in*		fate.
a	*as*	*in*	fall.
a	*as*	*in*	fat.
a	*as*	*in*	far.
e	*as*	*in*	me.
e	*as*	*in*	met.
i	*as*	*in*	pine.
i	*as*	*in*	pin.
o	*as*	*in*	no.
o	*as*	*in*	not.
o	*as*	*in*	move.
u	*as*	*in*	mule.
u	*as*	*in*	tub.
u	*as*	*in*	bull.

By this liſt it appears, that there are in the Engliſh

language fourteen ſimple vowel ſounds: but as *i* and *u*, when pronounced long, may be conſidered as diphthongs, or diphthongal vowels, our language, ſtrictly ſpeaking, contains but twelve ſimple vowel ſounds; the repreſent which, we have only five diſtinct characters or letters. If *a* in *far*, is the ſame ſpecific ſound as *a* in *fat*; and *u* in *bull*, the ſame as *o* in *move*, which is the opinion of ſome grammarians; then there are but ten original vowel ſounds in the Engliſh language.

The following liſt will ſhow the ſounds of the conſonants, being in number twenty-two.

Letters denoting the ſimple ſounds.			Words containing the ſimple ſounds.
b	*as heard in*		bay, tub.
d	*as*	*in*	day, ſad.
f	*as*	*in*	off, for.
v	*as*	*in*	van, love.
g	*as*	*in*	egg, go.
h *	*as*	*in*	hop, ho.
k	*as*	*in*	kill, oak.
l	*as*	*in*	lap, all.
m	*as*	*in*	my, mum.
n	*as*	*in*	no, on.
p	*as*	*in*	pin, map.
r	*as*	*in*	rap, cry.
s	*as*	*in*	so, lass.
z	*as*	*in*	zed, buzz.
t	*as*	*in*	top, mat.
w	*as*	*in*	wo, will.
y	*as*	*in*	ye, yes.
ng	*as*	*in*	ing, ſing.
sh	*as*	*in*	shy, ash.
th	*as*	*in*	thin, thick.
th	*as*	*in*	then, them.
zh	*as*	*in*	pleaſure.

Several letters marked in the Engliſh alphabet, as con-

* Some grammarians ſuppoſe *h* to mark only an aſpiration, or breathing: but it appears to be a diſtinct ſound, and formed in a particular manner, by the organs of ſpeech.

Encyclopædia Britannica.

ſonants, are either ſuperfluous, or repreſent, not ſimple, but complex ſounds. *C*, for inſtance, is ſuperfluous in both its ſounds; the one being expreſſed by *k*, and the other by *s*. *G*, in the ſoft pronunciation, is not a ſimple, but a complex ſound; as *age* is pronounced *aidge*. *J* is unneceſſary, becauſe its ſound, and that of the ſoft *g*, are in our language the ſame. *Q*, with its attendant *u*, is either complex, and reſolvable into *kw*, as in *quality*; or unneceſſary, becauſe its ſound is the ſame with *k*, as in *opaque*. *X* is compounded of *gs*, as in *example*; or of *ks*, as in *expect*.

From the preceding repreſentation, it appears to be a point of conſiderable importance, that every learner of the Engliſh language ſhould be taught to pronounce perfectly, and with facility, every original ſimple ſound that belongs to it. By a timely and judicious care in this reſpect, the voice will be prepared to utter, with eaſe and accuracy, every combination of ſounds; and taught to avoid that confuſed and imperfect manner of pronouncing words, which accompanies, through life, many perſons, who have not, in this reſpect, been properly inſtructed at an early period.

Letters are divided into Vowels and Conſonants.

A vowel is an articulate ſound, that can be perfectly uttered by itſelf: as, *a*, *e*, *o*; which are formed without the help of any other ſound.

A conſonant is an articulate ſound, which cannot be perfectly uttered without the help of a vowel: as, *b*, *d*, *f*, *l*; which require vowels to expreſs them fully.

The vowels are, *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, and ſometimes *w* and *y*.

W and *y* are conſonants when they begin a word or ſyllable; but in every other ſituation they are called vowels.

It is generally acknowledged by the beſt grammarians, that *w* and *y* are conſonants when they begin a ſyllable or word, and vowels when they end one. That they are conſonants when uſed as initials, ſeems to be evident from their not admitting the article *an* before them, as it would be improper to ſay an walnut, an yard, &c.; and from their following a vowel without any hiatus or difficulty of utterance; as, froſty winter, roſy youth. That they are vowels in other ſituations, appears from their regularly taking the ſound of other vowels; as, *w* has the exact ſound of *u* in ſaw, few, now, &c.; and *y* that of *i*, in hymn, fly, cryſtal, &c. See the letters W and Y, pages 30 and 31.*

We preſent the following as more exact and philoſophical definitions of a vowel and conſonant.

A vowel is a ſimple, articulate ſound, perfect in itſelf, and formed by a continued effuſion of the breath, and a certain conformation of the mouth, without any alteration in the poſition, or any motion of the organs of ſpeech, from the moment the vocal ſound commences, till it ends.

A conſonant is a ſimple, articulate ſound, imperfect by itſelf, but which, joined with a vowel, forms a complete ſound, by a particular motion or contact of the organs of ſpeech.

Some grammarians ſubdivide vowels into the *ſimple* and the *compound*. But there does not appear to be any foundation for the diſtinction. Simplicity is eſſential to the nature of a vowel, which excludes every degree of mixed or compound ſounds. It requires, according to the definition, but one conformation of the organs of ſpeech, to form it; and no motion in the organs, whilſt it is forming.

Conſonants are divided into mutes and ſemivowels.

---

* The letters *w* and *y* are of an ambiguous nature; being conſonants at the beginning of words, and vowels at the end.
Encyclopædia Britannica.
WALKER's Critical pronouncing Dictionary, page 24.
PERRY's Engliſh Dictionary, Preface, page 7.

The mutes cannot be founded *at all* without the aid of a vowel. They are *b*, *p*, *t*, *d*, *k*, and *c*, and *g* hard.

The ſemi-vowels have an imperfect ſound of themſelves, they are *f*, *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, *v*, *ſ*, *z*, *x*, and *c* and *g* ſoft.

Four of the ſemi-vowels, namely, *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, are alſo diſtinguiſhed by the name of *liquids*, from their readily uniting with other conſonants, and flowing as it were into their ſounds.

We have ſhown above, that it is eſſential to the nature of a conſonant, that it cannot be fully uttered without the aid of a vowel. We may further obſerve, that even the *names* of the conſonants, as they are pronounced in reciting the alphabet, require the help of vowels to expreſs them. In pronouncing the names of the mutes, the aſſiſtant vowels *follow* the conſonants: as, *be*, *pe*, *te*, *de*, *ka*. In pronouncing the names of the ſemi-vowels, the vowels generally *precede* the conſonants: as, *ef*, *el*, *em*, *en*, *ar*, *es*, *ex*. The exceptions are, *ce*, *ge*, *ve*, *zed*.

This diſtinction between the *nature* and the *name* of a conſonant, is of great importance, and ſhould be well explained to the pupil. They are frequently confounded by writers on grammar. Obſervations and reaſonings on the name, are often applied to explain the nature, of a conſonant: and, by this means, the ſtudent is led into error and perplexity, reſpecting theſe elements of language. It ſhould be impreſſed on his mind, that the name of every conſonant, is a *complex* ſound; but that the conſonant itſelf, is always a *ſimple* ſound.

Some writers have deſcribed the mutes and ſemi-vowels, with their ſubdiviſions, nearly in the following manner.

The *mutes* are thoſe conſonants, whoſe ſounds cannot be protracted. The *ſemi-vowels*, ſuch whoſe ſounds can be continued at pleaſure, partaking of the nature of vowels, from which they derive their name.

The mutes may be ſubdivided into *pure* and *impure*.

The pure are thoſe whoſe ſounds cannot be at all prolonged: they are *k*, *p*, *t*. The impure, are thoſe whoſe ſounds may be continued, though for a very ſhort ſpace: they are *b*, *d*, *g*.

The ſemi-vowels may be ſubdivided into *vocal* and *aſpirated*. The vocal are thoſe which are formed by the voice; the aſpirated, thoſe formed by the breath. There are eleven vocal, and five aſpirated. The vocal are *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, *v*, *w*, *y*, *z*, *th* flat, *zh*, *ng*: the aſpirated, *f*, *h*, *ſ*, *th* ſharp, *ſh*.

The vocal ſemi-vowels may be ſubdivided into *pure* and *impure*. The pure are thoſe which are formed entirely by the voice: the impure, ſuch as have a mixture of breath with the voice. There are ſeven pure—*l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, *w*, *y*, *ng*: four impure—*v*, *z*, *th* flat, *zh*.

A diphthong is the union of two vowels, pronounced by a ſingle impulſe of the voice; as *ea* in beat, *ou* in ſound.

A triphthong is the union of three vowels, pronounced in like manner; as, *eau* in beau, *iew* in view.

A proper diphthong is that in which both the vowels are ſounded; as, *oi* in voice, *ou* in ounce.

An improper diphthong has but one of the vowels ſounded; as, *ea* in eagle, *oa* in boat.

Each of the diphthongal letters was, doubtleſs, originally heard in pronouncing the words which contain them. Though this is not the caſe at preſent, with reſpect to many of them, theſe combinations ſtill retain the name of diphthongs; but, to diſtinguiſh them, they are marked by the term *improper*. As the diphthong derives its name and nature from its ſound, and not from its letters, and properly denotes a double vowel ſound, no union of two vowels, where one is ſilent, can, in ſtrictneſs, be entitled to that appellation; and the ſingle letters *i* and *u*, when pronounced long, muſt, in this view, be conſidered as

diphthongs. The triphthongs, having at moſt but two ſounds, are merely ocular, and are, therefore, by ſome grammarians claſſed with the diphthongs.

SECT. 2. *General obſervations on the ſounds of the letters.*

A

A has four ſounds; the long or ſlender, the broad, the ſhort or open, and the middle.

The long; as in name, baſin, creation.

The broad; as in call, wall, all.

The ſhort; as in barrel, fancy, glaſs.

The middle; as in, far, farm, father.

The diphthong *aa* generally ſounds like *a* ſhort in proper names; as in Balaam, Canaan, Iſaac; but not in Baal, Gaal.

Ae has the ſound of long *e*. It is ſometimes found in Latin words. Some authors retain this form: as, ænigma, æquator, &c.; but others have laid it aſide, and write enigma, Ceſar, Eneas, &c.

The diphthong *ai* has exactly the long ſlender ſound of *a*; as in pail, tail, &c.; pronounced pale, tale, &c.: except plaid, again, raillery, fountain, Britain, and a few others.

Au is generally ſounded like the broad *a*: as in taught, caught, &c. Sometimes like the ſhort or open a: as in aunt, flaunt, gauntlet, &c. It has the ſound of long *o* in hautboy; and that of *o* ſhort in laurel, laudanum, &c.

Aw, has always the ſound of broad *a*; as in bawl, ſcrawl, crawl.

Ay, like its near relation *ai*, is pronounced like the long ſlender ſound of *a*; as in pay, day, delay.

B

B keeps one unvaried ſound, at the beginning, middle, and end of words; as in baker, number, rhubarb, &c.

In ſome words it is ſilent; as in thumb, debtor, ſubtle, &c. In others, beſides being ſilent, it lengthens the ſyllable: as in climb, comb, tomb.

C

C has two different ſounds.

A hard ſound like *k*, before *a*, *o*, *u*, *r*, *l*, *t*; as, in cart, cottage, curious, craft, tract, cloth, &c.; and when it ends a ſyllable; as, in victim, flaccid.

A ſoft ſound like *s* before *e*, *i*, and *y*, generally; as in centre, face, civil, cymbal, mercy, &c. It has ſometimes the ſound of *ſh*; as in ocean, ſocial.

C is mute in czar, czarina, victuals, &c.

C, ſays Dr. Johnſon, according to Engliſh orthography, never ends a word; and therefore we find in our beſt dictionaries, ſtick, block, publick, politick, &c. But many writers of latter years omit the *k* in words of two or more ſyllables; and this practice is gaining ground, though it is productive of irregularities; ſuch as writing mimic and mimickry; traffic and trafficking.

Ch is commonly ſounded like *tch*; as in church, chin, chaff, charter: but in words derived from the Greek, has the ſound of *k*; as in chymiſt, ſcheme, chorus, chyle, diſtich; and in foreign names; as, Achiſh, Baruch, Enoch, &c.

Ch, in ſome words derived from the French, takes the ſound of *ſh*; as in chaiſe, chagrin, chevalier, machine.

Ch, in arch, before a vowel, ſounds like *k*; as in archangel, archives, Archipelago; except in arched, archery, archer, and arch-enemy: but before a conſonant it always ſounds like *tch*; as in archbiſhop, archduke, archpreſbyter, &c. *Ch* is ſilent in ſchedule, ſchiſm, and yacht.

D

D keeps one uniform ſound, at the beginning, middle, and end of words; as in death, bandage, kindred; unleſs it may be ſaid to take the ſound of *t*, in ſtuffed, tripped, &c. ſtuft, tript, &c.

E

E has three different ſounds.

A long ſound; as in ſcheme, glebe, ſevere.

A ſhort ſound; as in men, bed, clemency.

An obſcure and ſcarcely perceptible ſound; as, open, lucre, participle.

It has ſometimes the ſound of middle *a*; as in clerk, ſerjeant; and ſometimes that of ſhort *i*; as in England, yes, pretty.

E is always mute at the end of a word, except in monoſyllables that have no other vowel: as, me, he, ſhe: or in ſubſtantives derived from the Greek; as cataſtrophe, epitome, Penelope. It is uſed to ſoften and modify the foregoing conſonants; as, force, rage, ſince, oblige: or to lengthen the preceding vowel; as, can, cane; pin, pine; rob, robe.

The diphthong *ea* is generally ſounded like *e* long; as in appear, beaver, creature, &c. It has alſo the ſound of ſhort *e*; as in breath, meadow, treaſure. And it is ſometimes pronounced like the long and ſlender *a*; as in bear, break, great.

Eau has the ſound of long *o*; as in beau, flambeau, portmanteau. In beauty and its compounds, it has the ſound of long *u*.

Ei, in general, ſounds the ſame as long and ſlender *a*; as in deign, vein, neighbour, &c. It has the ſound of long *e* in ſeize, deceit, receive, either, neither, &c. It is ſometimes pronounced like ſhort *i*; as in foreign, forfeit, ſovereign, &c.

Eo is pronounced like *e* long; as in people; and ſometimes like *e* ſhort; as in leopard, jeopardy. It has alſo the ſound of ſhort *u*; as in dungeon, ſturgeon, puncheon, &c.

Eu is always ſounded like long *u* or *ew*; as in feud, deuce.

Ew is almoſt always pronounced like long *u*: as in few, new, dew.

Ey, when the accent is on it, is always pronounced like *a* long; as in bey, grey, convey; except in key, ley, where it is ſounded like long *e*.

When this diphthong is unaccented, it takes the ſound of *e* long; as, alley, valley, barley.

F

F keeps one pure unvaried ſound at the beginning, middle, and end of words; as, fancy, muffin, miſchief, &c.: except in *of*, in which it has the flat ſound of *ov*; but not in compoſition; as, whereof, thereof, &c. We ſhould not pronounce a wive's jointure, a calve's head; but a wife's jointure, a calf's head.

G

G has two ſounds: one hard; as in gay, go, gun: the other ſoft; as in gem, giant.

At the end of a word it is always hard; as in bag, ſnug, frog. It is hard before *a*, *o*, *u*, *l*, and *r*: as game, gone, gull, glory, grandeur.

G before *e*, *i*, and *y*, is ſoft; as in genius, geſture, ginger, Egypt; except in get, gewgaw, finger, craggy, and ſome others.

G is mute before *n*: as in gnaſh, ſign, foreign, &c.

Gn at the end of a word, or ſyllable accented, gives the preceding vowel a long ſound; as in reſign, impugn, oppugn, impregn, impugned; pronounced impune, imprene, &c.

Gh, at the beginning of a word, has the ſound of the hard *g*; as ghoſt, ghaſtly: in the middle, and ſometimes at the end, it is quite ſilent; as in right, high, plough, mighty.

At the end it has often the ſound of *f*; as in laugh, cough, tough. Sometimes, only the *g* is ſounded; as in burgh, burgher.

H

The ſound ſignified by this letter, is, as before obſerved, an articulate ſound, and not merely an aſpiration. It is heard in the words, hat, horſe, Hull. It is ſeldom mute at the beginning of a word. It is always ſilent after *r*; as, rhetoric, rheum, rhubarb.

H final, preceded by a vowel, is always ſilent; as, ah! hah! oh! ſoh! Sarah, Meſſiah.

From the faintneſs of the ſound of this letter, in many words, and its total ſilence in others, added to the negligence of tutors, and the inattention of pupils, it has happened, that many perſons have become almoſt incapable of acquiring its juſt and full pronunciation. It is, therefore, incumbent on teachers, to be particularly careful to inculcate a clear and diſtinct utterance of this ſound.

I

I has a long ſound; as in fine; and a ſhort one; as in fin.

The long ſound is always marked by the *e* final in monoſyllables; as thin, thine; except give, live. Before *r* it is often ſounded like a ſhort *u*; as, flirt, firſt. In ſome words it has the ſound of *e* long; as in machine, bombazine, magazine.

The diphthong *ia* is frequently ſounded like *ya*; as in chriſtian, filial, poniard; pronounced chriſt-yan, &c. It has ſometimes the ſound of ſhort *i*; as in carriage, marriage, parliament.

Ie ſounds in general like *e* long; as in grief, thief, grenadier. It has alſo the ſound of long *i*; as in die, pie, lie: and ſometimes that of ſhort *i*; as in ſieve.

Ieu has the ſound of long *u*; as in lieu, adieu, purlieu.

Io, when the accent is upon the firſt vowel, forms two diſtinct ſyllables; as priory, violet, violent. The terminations *tion* and *ſion*, are ſounded exactly like the verb ſhun; except when the *t* is preceded by *ſ* or *x*; as in queſtion, digeſtion, combuſtion, mixtion, &c.

The triphthong *iou* is ſometimes pronounced diſtinctly in two ſyllables; as in bilious, various, abſtemious. But theſe vowels often coaleſce into one ſyllable; as in precious, factious, noxious.

J

J is pronounced exactly like ſoft *g*; except in hallelujah, where it is pronounced like *y*.

K

K has the ſound of *c* hard, and is uſed before *e* and *i*, where, according to Engliſh analogy, *c* would be ſoft; as, kept, king, ſkirts. It is not ſounded before *n*; as in knife, knell, knocker. It is never doubled; except in Habakkuk; but *c* is uſed before it, to ſhorten the vowel by a double conſonant; as cockle, pickle, ſucker.

L

L has always a ſoft liquid ſound; as, in love, billow, quarrel. It is ſometimes mute; as in half, talk, pſalm. The cuſtom is to double the *l* at the end of monoſyllables: as, mill, will, fall, except where a diphthong precedes it; as, hail, toil, ſoil.

C

Le, at the end of words, is pronounced like a weak *el*; in which the *e* is almoſt mute; as, table, ſhuttle.

M

M has always the ſame ſound; as, murmur, monumental, except in comptroller, which is pronounced controller.

N

N has two ſounds: the one pure; as in man, net, noble, the other a ringing ſound like *ng*; as in thank, banquet, &c.

N is mute when it ends a ſyllable, and is preceded by *m*; as, hymn, ſolemn, autumn.

The participial *ing* muſt always have its ringing ſound; as, writing, reading, ſpeaking. Some writers have ſuppoſed that when *ing* is preceded by *ing*, it ſhould be pronounced *in*; as, ſinging, bringing, ſhould be ſounded *ſingin*, *bringin*: but as it is a good rule, with reſpect to pronunciation, to adhere to the written words, unleſs cuſtom has clearly decided otherwiſe, it does not ſeem proper to adopt this innovation.

O

O has a long ſound; as in note, bone, obedient, over; and a ſhort one; as in not, got, lot, trot.

It has ſometimes the ſhort ſound of *u*; as, ſon, come, attorney. And in ſome words it is ſounded like *oo*; as in prove, move, behove; and often like *au*; as in nor, for, lord.

The diphthong *oa* is regularly pronounced as the long ſound of *o*; as in boat, oat, coal; except in broad, abroad, groat, where it takes the ſound of broad *a*; as, abrawd, &c. *Oe* has the ſound of ſingle *e*. It is ſometimes long; as in fœtus, Antœci: and ſometimes ſhort; as in œconomics, œcumenical. In doe, foe, floe, toe, throe, hoe, and bilboes, it is ſounded exactly like long *o*.

Oi has almoſt univerſally the double ſound of *a* broad and *e* long united, as in boy; as boil, toil, ſpoil, joint, point, anoint: which ſhould never be pronounced as if written bile, ſpile, tile, &c.

Oo almoſt always preſerves its long regular ſound; as in moon, ſoon, food. It has a ſhorter ſound in wool, good, foot, and a few others. In blood and flood it ſounds like ſhort *u*. Door and floor ſhould always be pronounced as if written dore and flore.

The diphthong *ou* has ſix different ſounds. The firſt and proper ſound is equivalent to *ow* in down; as in bound, found, ſurround.

The ſecond is that of ſhort *u*; as in enough, trouble, journey.

The third is that of *oo*; as in ſoup, youth, tournament.

The fourth is that of long *o*; as in though, mourn, poultice.

The fifth is that of ſhort *o*, as in cough, trough.

The ſixth is that of *awe*; as in ought, brought, thought.

Ow is generally ſounded like *ou* in thou; as in brown, dowry, ſhower. It has alſo the ſound of long *o*; as in ſnow, grown, beſtow.

The diphthong *oy* is but another form for *oi*, and is pronounced exactly like it.

P

P has always the ſame ſound, except, perhaps, in cupboard, where it ſounds like *b*. It is ſometimes mute; as in pſalm, pſalter, Ptolemy: and between *m* and *t*; as, tempt, empty, preſumptuous.

Ph is generally pronounced like *f*; as in philoſophy, philanthropy, Philip.

In nephew and Stephen, it has the ſound of *v*. In apophthegm, phthiſis, phthiſic, and phthiſical, both letters are entirely dropped.

Q

Q is always followed by *u*; as, quadrant, queen, quire.

Qu is ſometimes ſounded like *k*; as, conquer, liquor, riſque.

R

R has a rough ſound; as in Rome, river, rage; and a ſmooth one; as in bard, card, regard.

Re, at the end of many words, is pronounced like a weak *er*; as in theatre, ſepulchre, maſſacre.

S

S has two different ſounds.

A ſoft and flat ſound like *z*; as, beſom, naſal, diſmal.

A ſharp hiſſing ſound; as ſaint, ſiſter, cyprus.

It is always ſharp at the beginning of words.

At the end of words it takes the ſoft ſound; as, his, was, trees, eyes; except in the words this, thus, us, yes, rebus, ſurplus, &c.; and in words terminating with *ous*.

It ſounds like *z* before *ion*, if a vowel goes before; as, intruſion; but like *s* ſharp, if it follows a conſonant; as, converſion. It alſo ſounds like *z* before *e* mute; as, amuſe; and before *y* final; as roſy; and in the words boſom, deſire, wiſdom, &c.

S is mute in iſle, iſland, demeſne, viſcount.

T

T has its cuſtomary ſound; as in take, temptation.

Ti before a vowel has the ſound of *ſh*; as in ſalvation: except in ſuch words as tierce, tiara, &c. and unleſs an *s* goes before; as, queſtion; and excepting alſo derivatives from words ending in *ty*; as, mighty, mightier.

Th has two ſounds: the one ſoft and flat; as, thus, whether, heathen: the other hard and ſharp; as, thing, think, breath.

Th, at the beginning of words, is ſharp; as, in thank, thick, thunder: except in that, then, thus, thither, and ſome others. *Th*, at the end of words, is alſo ſharp; as death, breath, mouth: except in with, booth, beneath, &c.

Th, in the middle of words, is ſharp; as panther, orthodox, miſanthrope: except worthy, farthing, brethren, and a few others.

Th, between two vowels, is generally flat in words purely Engliſh; as, father, heathen, together, neither, mother.

Th, between two vowels, in words from the learned languages, is generally ſharp; as, apathy, ſympathy, Athens, theatre, apothecary.

Th is ſometimes pronounced like ſimple *t*; as, Thomas, thyme, Thames, aſthma.

U

U has three ſounds, viz.

A long ſound; as in mule, tube, cubic.

A ſhort ſound; as in dull, gull, cuſtard.

An obtuſe ſound, like *oo*; as in bull, full, buſhel.

The ſtrangeſt deviation of this letter from its natural ſound, is in the words buſy, buſineſs, bury, and burial; which are pronounced bizzy, bizneſs, berry, and berrial.

A is now often uſed before words beginning with *u* long, and *an* always before thoſe that begin with *u* ſhort; as, a union, a univerſity, a uſeful book; an uproar, an uſher, an umbrella.

The diphthong *ua* has ſometimes the ſound of *wa*; as in aſſuage, perſuade, antiquary. It has alſo the ſound of middle *a*; as in guard, guardian, guarantee.

Ue is often ſounded like *we*; as in quench, queriſt, conqueſt. It has alſo the ſound of long *u*; as in cue, hue, ague. In a few words, it is pronounced like *e* ſhort; as in gueſt, gueſs. In ſome words it is entirely ſunk; as in antique, oblique, prorogue, catalogue, dialogue, &c.

Ui is frequently pronounced *wi*; as in languid, anguiſh, extinguiſh. It has ſometimes the ſound of *i* long; as in guide, guile, diſguiſe: and sometimes that of *i* ſhort; as in guilt, guinea, guildhall. In ſome words it is ſounded like long *u*; as in juice, ſuit, purſuit: and after *r*, like *oo*; as in bruiſe, fruit, recruit.

Uo is pronounced like *wo*; as in quote, quorum, quondam.

Uy has the ſound of long *e*; as in obloquy, ſoliloquy; pronounced obloquee, &c. except, buy, and its derivatives.

V

V has the ſound of flat *f*, and bears the ſame relation to it, as *b* does to *p*, *d* to *t*, hard *g* to *k*, and *z* to *s*. It has alſo one uniform ſound; as vain, vanity, love.

W

W, when a conſonant, has nearly the ſound of *oo*; as

water reſembles the ſound of *ooater;* but that it has a ſtronger and quicker ſound than *oo*, and has a formation eſſentially different, will appear to any perſon who pronounces, with attention, the words *wo*, *woo*, *beware;* and who reflects that it will not admit the article *an* before it; which *oo* would admit. In ſome words it is not ſounded; as in anſwer, ſword, wholeſome: it is always ſilent before *r;* as in wrap, wreck, wrinkle, wriſt, wrong, wry, bewray, &c.

W before *h* is pronounced as if it were after the *h*; as, why, hwy; when, hwen; what, hwat.

W is often joined to *o* at the end of a ſyllable, without affecting the ſound of that vowel; as in crow, blow, grow, know, row, flow, &c.

When *w* is a vowel, and is diſtinguiſhed in the pronunciation, is has exactly the ſame ſound as *u* would have in the ſame ſituation; as, draw, crew, view, now, ſawyer, vowel, outlaw.

X

X has three ſounds, viz.

It is ſounded like *z* at the beginning of proper names of Greek original; as in Xanthus, Xenophon, Xerxes.

It has a ſharp ſound like *ks*, when it ends a ſyllable with the accent upon it; as, exit, exerciſe, excellence; or when the accent is on the next ſyllable, if it begins with a conſonant; as excuſe, extent, expenſe.

It has, generally, a flat ſound like *gz*, when the accent is not on it, and the following ſyllable begins with a vowel; as, exert, exiſt, example; pronounced, egzert, egziſt, egzample.

Y

Y, when a conſonant, has nearly the ſound of *ee;* as, youth, York, reſemble the ſounds of eeouth, eeork: but that this is not its exact ſound, will be clearly perceived by pronouncing the words *ye*, *yes*, *new-year*, in which its juſt and proper ſound is aſcertained. It not only requires a ſtronger exertion of the organs of ſpeech to pronounce it, than is required to pronounce *ee;* but its formation is

essentially different. It will not admit of *an* before it, as *ee* will in the following example; an *eel*. The opinion that *y* and *w*, when they begin a word or syllable, take exactly the sound of *ee* and *oo*, has induced some grammarians to assert, that these letters are always vowels or diphthongs.

When *y* is a vowel, it has exactly the same sound as *i* would have in the same situation; as, rhyme, system, justify, pyramid, party, fancy, hungry.

Z

Z has the sound of an *s* uttered with a closer compression of the palate by the tongue: it is the flat *s*; as, freeze, frozen, brazen.

It may be proper to remark, that the sounds of the letters vary, as they are differently associated, and that the pronunciation of these associations depends upon the position of the accent. It may also be observed, that, in order to pronounce accurately, great attention must be paid to the vowels which are not accented. There is scarcely any thing which more distinguishes a person of a poor education from a person of a good one, than the pronunciation of the *unaccented* vowels. When vowels are *under the accent*, the best speakers and the lowest of the people, with very few exceptions, pronounce them in the same manner; but the unaccented vowels in the mouths of the former, have a distinct, open, and specific sound, while the latter often totally sink them, or change them into some other sound.

Sect. 3. *The nature of articulation explained.*

A CONCISE account of the origin and formation of the sounds emitted by the human voice, may, perhaps, not improperly, be here introduced. It may gratify the ingenious student, and serve to explain more fully the nature of articulation, and the radical distinction between vowels and consonants.

Human voice is air sent out from the lungs, and so agitated or modified, in its passage through the windpipe and larynx, as to become distinctly audible. The windpipe is

that tube, which on touching the forepart of our throat externally, we feel hard and uneven. It conveys air into the lungs for the purpose of breathing and speech. The top or upper part of the windpipe is called the *larynx*, consisting of four or five cartilages, that may be expanded or brought together, by the action of certain muscles which operate all at the same time. In the middle of the larynx there is a small opening, called the *glottis*, through which the breath and voice are conveyed. This opening is not wider than one tenth of an inch; and, therefore, the breath transmitted through it from the lungs, must pass with considerable velocity. The voice, thus formed, is strengthened and softened by a reverberation from the palate, and other hollow places in the inside of the mouth and nostrils; and as these are better or worse shaped for this reverberation, the voice is said to be more or less agreeable.

If we consider the many varieties of sound, which one and the same human voice is capable of uttering, together with the smallness of the diameter of the glottis; and reflect, that the same diameter must always produce the same tone, and, consequently, that to every change of tone a correspondent change of diameter is necessary; we must be filled with admiration at the mechanism of these parts, and the fineness of the fibres that operate in producing effects so minute, so various, and in their proportions so exactly uniform. For it admits of proof, that the diameter of the human glottis is capable of more than sixty distinct degrees of contraction or enlargement, by each of which a different note is produced; and yet the greatest diameter of that aperture, as before observed, does not exceed one tenth of an inch.

Speech is made up of *articulate* voices; and what we call *articulation*, is performed, not by the lungs, windpipe, or larynx, but by the action of the throat, palate, teeth, tongue, lips, and nostrils. Articulation begins not, till the breath, or voice, has passed through the larynx.

The simplest articulate voices are those which proceed from an open mouth, and are by grammarians called *vowel* sounds. In transmitting these, the aperture of the mouth may be pretty large, or somewhat smaller, or very small;

which is one cauſe of the variety of vowels; a particular ſound being produced by each particular aperture. Moreover, in paſſing through an open mouth, the voice may be *gently acted upon*, by the lips, or by the tongue and palate, or by the tongue and throat; whence another ſource of variety in vowel ſounds.

Thus ten or twelve ſimple vowel ſounds may be formed, agreeably to the plan in page 15; and the learners, by obſerving the poſition of their mouth, lips, tongue, &c. when they are uttering the ſounds, will perceive that various operations of theſe organs of ſpeech, are neceſſary to the production of the different vowel ſounds; and that by minute variations they may all be diſtinctly pronounced.

When the voice, in its paſſage through the mouth, is *totally intercepted*, or *ſtrongly compreſſed*, there is formed a certain modification of articulate ſound, which, as expreſſed by a character in writing, is called a *conſonant*. Silence is the effect of a total interception; and indiſtinct ſound, of a ſtrong compreſſion; and therefore a conſonant is not of itſelf a diſtinct articulate voice; and its influence in varying the tones of language is not clearly perceived, unleſs it be accompanied by an opening of the mouth, that is, by a vowel.

By making the experiment with attention, the ſtudent will perceive that each of the *mutes* is formed by the voice being *intercepted* by the lips, by the tongue and palate, or by the tongue and throat; and that the *ſemi-vowels* are formed by the ſame organs *ſtrongly compreſſing* the voice in its paſſage, but not totally intercepting it.

The elements of language, according to the different ſeats where they are formed, or the ſeveral organs of ſpeech chiefly concerned in their pronunciation, are divided into ſeveral claſſes, and denominated as follows: thoſe are called *labials*, which are formed by the lips; thoſe *dentals*, that are formed with the teeth; *palatals*, that are formed with the palate; and *naſals*, that are formed by the noſe.

The importance of obtaining, in early life, a clear, diſtinct, and accurate knowledge of the ſounds of the firſt principles of language, and a wiſh to lead young minds to a further

conſideration of a ſubject ſo curious and uſeful, have induced the compiler to beſtow particular attention on the preceding part of his work. Some writers think that theſe ſubjects do not properly conſtitute any part of grammar; and conſider them as the excluſive province of the ſpelling-book; but if we reflect, that letters and their ſounds are the conſtituent principles of that art, which teaches us to ſpeak and write with propriety, and that very little knowledge of their nature is acquired by the ſpelling-book, we muſt admit that they properly belong to grammar; and that a rational conſideration of theſe elementary principles of language, is an object that demands the attention of the young grammarian. The ſentiments of a very judicious and eminent writer (Quinctilian) reſpecting this part of grammar, may, perhaps, be properly introduced on the preſent occaſion.

"Let no perſons deſpiſe, as inconſiderable, the elements of grammar, becauſe it may ſeem to them a matter of ſmall conſequence, to ſhow the diſtinction between vowels and conſonants, and to divide the latter into liquids and mutes. But they who penetrate into the innermoſt parts of this temple of ſcience, will there diſcover ſuch refinement and ſubtility of matter, as are not only proper to ſharpen the underſtandings of young perſons, but ſufficient to give exerciſe for the moſt profound knowledge and erudition."

The elementary ſounds, under their ſmalleſt combination, produce a *ſyllable*; ſyllables properly combined produce a *word*; words duly combined produce a *ſentence*; and ſentences properly combined produce an *oration* or *diſcourſe*. Thus it is, ſays HARRIS, in his HERMES, that to principles apparently ſo trivial as a few plain elementary ſounds, we owe that variety of articulate voices, which has been ſufficient to explain the ſentiments of ſo innumerable a multitude, as all the preſent and paſt generations of men.

CHAPTER II.

Of SYLLABLES, *and the* RULES *for arranging them.*

A SYLLABLE is a ſound, either ſimple or compounded, pronounced by a ſingle impulſe of the voice, and conſtituting a word, or part of a word: as, a, an, ant.

Spelling is the art of rightly dividing words into their ſyllables; or of expreſſing a word by its proper letters.

The following are the general rules for the diviſion of words into ſyllables.

1. A ſingle conſonant between two vowels, muſt be joined to the latter ſyllable: as, de-light, bri-dal, re-ſource: except the letter x; as, ex-iſt, ex-amine: and except likewiſe words compounded; as upon, un-even, diſ-eaſe.

2. Two conſonants proper to begin a word, muſt not be ſeparated; as, fa-ble, ſti-fle. But when they come between two vowels, and are ſuch as cannot begin a word, they muſt be divided; as, ut-moſt, un-der, in-fect, er-ror, cof-fin.

3. When three conſonants meet in the middle of a word, if they can begin a word, and the preceding vowel be pronounced long, they are not to be ſeparated; as, de-throne, de-ſtroy. But when the vowel of the preceding ſyllable is pronounced ſhort, one of the conſonants, always belongs to that ſyllable; as, diſ-tract, diſ-prove, diſ-train.

4. When three or four conſonants, which are not proper to begin a word, meet between two vowels, the firſt conſonant is always kept with the firſt ſyllable in the diviſion: as, ab-ſtain, com-plete, em-broil, dan-dler, dap-ple, con-ſtrain.

5. Two vowels, not being a diphthong, muſt be divided into ſeparate ſyllables; as, cru-el, de-ni-al, ſo-ci-e-ty.

6. Compounded words muſt be traced into the ſimple words of which they are compoſed; as, ice-houſe, graceful, over-power, reſt-leſs, never-the-leſs.

7. Grammatical, and other particular terminations, are generally ſeparated; as, teach-eſt, teach-eth, teach-ing, teach-er, contend-eſt, great-er, wretch-ed, good-neſs, love-ly.

Some of the preceding rules may be liable to conſiderable exceptions; and therefore it is ſaid by Dr. Lowth and others, that the beſt and eaſieſt direction for dividing the ſyllables in ſpelling, is to divide them as they are naturally ſeparated in a right pronunciation; without regard to the derivation of words, or the poſſible combination of conſonants at the beginning of a ſyllable.

CHAPTER III.

Of WORDS *in general, and the* RULES *for ſpelling them.*

WORDS are articulate ſounds, uſed by common conſent, as ſigns of our ideas.

A word of one ſyllable is termed a Monoſyllable; a word of two ſyllables, a Diſſyllable; a word of three ſyllables, a Triſyllable; and a word of four or more ſyllables, a Polyſyllable.

All words are either primitive or derivative.

A primitive word is that which cannot be reduced to any ſimpler word in the language: as, man, good, content.

A derivative word is that which may be reduced to another word in Engliſh of greater ſimplicity; as, manful, goodneſs, contentment, Yorkſhire.*

There are many Engliſh words which, though compounds in other languages, are to us primitives: thus, cir-

* A compound word is included under the head of derivative words: as, penknife, teacup, looking-glaſs; may be reduced to other words of greater ſimplicity.

cumſpect, circumvent, circumſtance, delude, concave, complicate, &c. primitive words in Engliſh, will be found derivatives when traced in the Latin tongue.

The orthography of the Engliſh language is attended with much uncertainty and perplexity. But a conſiderable part of this inconvenience may be remedied, by attending to the general laws of formation: and, for this end, the learner is preſented with a view of ſuch general maxims in ſpelling primitive and derivative words, as have been almoſt univerſally received.

RULE I.

Monoſyllables ending with *f*, *l*, or *ſ*, preceded by a ſingle vowel, double the final conſonant: as, ſtaff, mill, paſs, &c. The only exceptions are, of, if, as, is, has, was, yes, his, this, us, and thus.

RULE II.

Monoſyllables ending with any conſonant but *f*, *l*, or *ſ*, and preceded by a ſingle vowel, never double the final conſonant; excepting add, ebb, butt, egg, odd, err, inn, and buzz.

RULE III.

Words ending with *y*, preceded by a conſonant, form the plurals of nouns, the perſons of verbs, verbal nouns, paſt participles, comparatives, and ſuperlatives, by changing *y* into *i*: as, ſpy, ſpies; I carry, thou carrieſt; he carrieth, or carries; carrier, carried; happy, happier, happieſt.

The preſent participle in *ing*, retains the *y*, that *i* may not be doubled; as, carry, carrying; bury, burying, &c.

But *y*, preceded by a vowel, in ſuch inſtances as the above, is not changed; as, boy, boys; I cloy, he cloys, cloyed, &c.; except in lay, pay, and ſay; from which are formed, laid, paid, and ſaid; and their compounds, unlaid, unpaid, unſaid, &c.

RULE IV.

Words ending with *y*, preceded by a conſonant, upon aſſuming an additional ſyllable, beginning with a conſo-

nant, commonly change *y* into *i*; as, happy, happily, happineſs. But when *y* is preceded by a vowel, it is very rarely changed in the additional ſyllable: as, coy, coyly; boy, boyiſh, boyhood; annoy, annoyer, annoyance; joy, joyleſs, joyful.

RULE V.

Words ending with a ſingle conſonant, preceded by a ſingle vowel, and with the accent on the laſt ſyllable, upon aſſuming an additional ſyllable beginning with a vowel, double the conſonant: as, to abet, an abettor; to begin, a beginner; a fen, fenny; wit, witty; thin, thinniſh, &c.

But if a diphthong precedes, or the accent is on the preceding ſyllable, the conſonant remains ſingle: as, to toil, toiling; to offer, an offering; maid, maiden, &c.

RULE VI.

Words ending with any double letter but *l*, and taking *neſs*, *leſs*, *ly*, or *ful*, after them, preſerve the letter double; as, harmleſſneſs, careleſſneſs, careleſsly, ſtiffly, ſucceſsful, diſtreſsful, &c. But thoſe words which end with double *l*, and take *neſs*, *leſs*, *ly*, or *ful*, after them, generally omit one *l*; as fulneſs, ſkilleſs, fully, ſkilful, &c.

RULE VII.

Neſs, *leſs*, *ly*, and *ful*, added to words ending with ſilent *e*, do not cut it off: as, paleneſs, guileleſs, cloſely, peaceful; except in a few words; as duly, truly, awful.

RULE VIII.

Ment, added to words ending with ſilent *e*, generally preſerves the *e* from eliſion; as, abatement, chaſtiſement, incitement, &c. The words judgment, abridgment, acknowledgment, are deviations from the rule.

Like other terminations, *ment* changes *y* into *i*, when preceded by a conſonant; as, accompany, accompaniment; merry, merriment.

RULE IX.

Able and *ible*, when incorporated into words ending with ſilent *e*, almoſt always cut it off: as, blame, blamable;

cure, curable; ſenſe, ſenſible, &c.: but if *c* or *g* ſoft comes before *e* in the original word, the *e* is then preſerved in words compounded with *able;* as change, changeable; peace, peaceable, &c.

RULE X.

When *ing* or *iſh* is added to words ending with ſilent *e*, the *e* is almoſt univerſally omitted; as, place, placing; lodge, lodging; ſlave, ſlaviſh; prude, prudiſh.

RULE XI.

Words taken into compoſition, often drop thoſe letters which were ſuperfluous in their ſimples; as, handful, dunghil, withal, alſo, chilblain, foretel.

The orthography of a great number of Engliſh words, is far from being uniform, even amongſt writers of diſtinction. Thus, *honour* and *honor*, *inquire* and *enquire*, *negotiate* and *negociate*, *control* and *controul*, *expenſe* and *expence*, *allege* and *alledge*, *ſurpriſe* and *ſurprize*, *abridgment* and *abridgement*, and many other orthographical variations, are to be met with in the beſt modern publications. Some authority for deciding differences of this nature, appears to be neceſſary: and where can we find one of equal pretenſions with Dr. Johnſon's Dictionary? though a few of his deciſions do not appear to be warranted by the principles of etymology and analogy, the ſtable foundations of his improvements. —"As the weight of truth and reaſon (ſays Nares in his "Elements of Orthoepy") is irreſiſtible, Dr. Johnſon's Dictionary has nearly fixed the external form of our language. Indeed, ſo convenient is it to have one acknowledged ſtandard to recur to; ſo much preferable, in matters of this nature, is a trifling degree of irregularity, to a continual change, and fruitleſs purſuit of unattainable perfection; that it is earneſtly to be hoped, that no author will henceforth, on ſlight grounds, be tempted to innovate."

PART II.

ETYMOLOGY.

CHAPTER I.

A General View of the Parts of Speech.

THE ſecond part of grammar is ETYMOLOGY: which treats of the different ſorts of words, their various modifications, and their derivation.

There are, in Engliſh, nine ſorts of words, or, as they are commonly called, PARTS OF SPEECH; namely, the ARTICLE, the SUBSTANTIVE or NOUN; the PRONOUN, the ADJECTIVE, the VERB, the ADVERB, the PREPOSITION, the CONJUNCTION, and the INTERJECTION.

1. An Article is a word prefixed to ſubſtantives, to point them out, and to ſhow how far their ſignification extends: as, *a* garden, *an* eagle, *the* woman.

2. A Subſtantive or noun is the name of any thing that exiſts, or of which we have any notion: as, *London*, *man*, *virtue*.

A ſubſtantive may, in general, be diſtinguiſhed by its taking an article before it, or by its making ſenſe of itſelf; as, a *book*, the *ſun*, an *apple*; *temperance*, *induſtry*, *chaſtity*.

3. A Pronoun is a word uſed inſtead of a noun, to avoid the too frequent repetition of the ſame word: as, "The man is happy; *he* is benevolent; *he* is uſeful."

4. An Adjective is a word added to a ſubſtantive, to expreſs its quality: as, "An *induſtrious* man; a *virtuous* woman."

An Adjective may be known by its making ſenſe with the addition of the word *thing:* as, a *good* thing; a *bad* thing: or of any particular ſubſtantive; as a *ſweet* apple, a *pleaſant* proſpect.

5. A Verb is a word which ſignifies to BE, to DO, or to SUFFER: as, "I *am*; I *rule*; I *am ruled*."

A Verb may be diſtinguiſhed, by its making ſenſe with any of the perſonal pronouns, or the word *to* before it: as, I *walk*, he *plays*, they *write*; or, to *walk*, to *play*, to *write*.

6. An Adverb is a part of ſpeech joined to a verb, an adjective, and ſometimes to another adverb, to expreſs ſome quality or circumſtance reſpecting it: as, "He reads *well*; a *truly* good man; he writes *very correctly*.

An Adverb may be generally known, by its anſwering to the queſtion, How? how much? when? or where? as, in the phraſe "He reads *correctly*," the anſwer to the queſtion, How does he read? is, *correctly*.

7. Prepoſitions ſerve to connect words with one another, and to ſhow the relation between them: as, "He went *from* London *to* York;" "ſhe is *above* diſguiſe;" "they are ſupported *by* induſtry."

A Prepoſition may be known by its admitting after it a perſonal pronoun, in the objective caſe; as, *with*, *for*, *to* &c. will allow the objective caſe after them; with *him*, for *her*, to *them*, &c.

8. A Conjunction is a part of ſpeech that is chiefly uſed to connect or join together ſentences; ſo as, out of two, to make one ſentence: it ſometimes connects only words: as, "Thou *and* he are happy, *becauſe* you are good." "Two *and* three are five."

9. Interjections are words thrown in between the parts of a ſentence, to expreſs the paſſions or emotions of the ſpeaker: as "O virtue! how amiable thou art!"

The obſervations which have been made, to aid learners in diſtinguiſhing the parts of ſpeech from one another, may afford them ſome ſmall aſſiſtance; but it will certainly be much more inſtructive, to diſtinguiſh them by the definitions, and an accurate knowledge of their nature.

In the following paſſage, all the parts of ſpeech are exemplified:

1 2 7 2 5 1 2 4 7 2
The power of ſpeech is a faculty peculiar to man;
8 5 5 7 3 7 3 4 2 7
and was beſtowed on him by his beneficent Creator, for
1 4 8 6 4 2 8 9 6 6
the greateſt and moſt excellent uſes; but alas! how often
5 3 5 3 7 1 4 7 2
do we pervert it to the worſt of purpoſes.

In the foregoing ſentence, the words *the*, *a*, are articles; *power*, *ſpeech*, *faculty*, *man*, *Creator*, *uſes*, *purpoſes*, are ſubſtantives; *him*, *his*, *we*, *it*, are pronouns; *peculiar*, *beneficent*, *greateſt*, *excellent*, *worſt*, are adjectives; *is*, *was*, *beſtowed*, *do*, *pervert*, are verbs; *moſt*, *how*, *often*, are adverbs; *of*, *to*, *on*, *by*, *for*, are prepoſitions; *and*, *but*, are conjunctions; and *alas* is an interjection.

The number of the different ſorts of words, or of the parts of ſpeech, has been variouſly reckoned by different grammarians. Some have enumerated ten, making the participle a diſtinct part; ſome eight, excluding the participle, and ranking the adjective under the noun; ſome four, and others only two, (the noun and the verb,) ſuppoſing the

reſt to be contained in the parts of their diviſion. We have followed thoſe authors, who appear to have given them the moſt natural and intelligible diſtribution. Some remarks on the diviſion made by the learned Horne Tooke, are contained in the firſt ſection of the eleventh chapter of etymology.

The interjection, indeed, ſeems ſcarcely worthy of being conſidered as a part of artificial language or ſpeech, being rather a branch of that natural language, which we poſſeſs in common with the brute creation, and by which we expreſs the ſudden emotions and paſſions that actuate our frame. But, as it is uſed in written as well as oral language, it may, in ſome meaſure, be deemed a part of ſpeech. It is with us, a virtual ſentence, in which the noun and verb, are concealed under an imperfect or indigeſted word.

CHAPTER II.

Of the ARTICLES.

AN Article is a word prefixed to ſubſtantives, to point them out, and to ſhow how far their ſignification extends; as, *a* garden, *an* eagle, *the* woman.

In Engliſh, there are but two articles, *a* and *the*: *a* becomes *an* before a vowel,* and before a ſilent *h*; as, *an* acorn, *an* hour. But if the *h* be ſounded, the *a* only is to be uſed; as, a hand, a heart, a highway.

The inattention of writers and printers to this neceſſary diſtinction, has occaſioned the frequent uſe of *an* before *h*, when it is to be pronounced; and this circumſtance, more than any other, has probably contributed to that indiſtinct utterance, or total omiſſion, of the ſound ſignified by this letter, which very often occurs amongſt readers and ſpeakers.

* *A* inſtead of *an* is now uſed before words beginning with *u* long. See page 29, letter *U*. It is alſo uſed before *one*; as, many a one.

An horſe, *an* huſband, *an* herald, *an* heathen, and many ſimilar aſſociations, are frequently to be found in works of taſte and merit. To remedy this evil, readers ſhould be taught to omit, in all ſimilar caſes, the ſound of the *n*, and to give the *h* its full pronunciation.

A or *an* is ſtyled the indefinite article: it is uſed in a vague ſenſe to point out one ſingle thing of the kind, in other reſpects indeterminate: as "Give me *a* book;" that is, any book.

The is called the definite article; becauſe it aſcertains what particular thing is meant: as, "Give me *the* book; meaning ſome book referred to.

A ſubſtantive without any article to limit it, is taken in its wideſt ſenſe: as, "A candid temper is proper for man;" that is, for all mankind.

The peculiar uſe and importance of the articles will be ſeen in the following examples; "The ſon of a king—the ſon of the king—a ſon of the king." Each of theſe three phraſes has an entirely different meaning, through the different application of the articles *a* and *the*.

"Thou art *a* man," is a very general and harmleſs poſition; but, "Thou art *the* man," (as Nathan ſaid to David,) is an aſſertion capable of ſtriking terror and remorſe into the heart.

The article is omitted before nouns that imply the different virtues, vices, paſſions, qualities, ſciences, arts, metals, herbs, &c.; as, prudence is commendable; falſehood is odious; anger ought to be avoided;" &c. It is not prefixed to a proper name; as, "Alexander," (becauſe that of itſelf denotes a determinate individual or particular thing,) except for the ſake of diſtinguiſhing a particular family: as, "He is *a* Howard, or of the family of the Howards;" or by way of eminence: as, "Every man is not *a* Newton;" "He has the courage of *an* Achilles: or when ſome noun is underſtood; "He ſailed down *the* (river) Thames, in *the* (ſhip) Britannia."

When an adjective is used with the noun to which the article relates, it is placed between the article and the noun; as, "a *good* man." "an *agreeable* woman," "the *best* friend." On some occasions, however, the adjective precedes *a* or *an*; as, "*such* a shame," "as *great* a man as Alexander," "too *careless* an author."

The indefinite article can be joined to substantives in the singular number only; the definite article may be joined also to plurals.

But there appears to be a remarkable exception to this rule, in the use of the adjectives *few* and *many*, (the latter chiefly with the word *great* before it,) which, though joined with plural substantives, yet admit of the singular article *a*; as, *a few* men; *a great many* men.

The reason of it is manifest, from the effect which the article has in these phrases; it means a small or great number collectively taken, and therefore gives the idea of a whole, that is, of unity. Thus likewise, a dozen, a score, a hundred, or a thousand, is one whole number, an aggregate of many collectively taken; and therefore still retains the article *a*, though joined as an adjective to a plural substantive; as, a hundred years, &c.

The indefinite article is sometimes placed between the adjectives *many*, and a singular noun: as,

"Full *many a gem* of purest ray serene,
"The dark unfathom'd caves of ocean bear;
"Full *many a flow'r* is born to blush unseen,
"And waste its sweetness on the desert air."

In these lines, the phrases, *many a gem*, and *many a flow'r*, refer to *many gems* and *many flowers*, separately, not collectively considered.

The definite article *the* is frequently applied to adverbs in the comparative and superlative degree; and its effect is, to mark the degree the more strongly, and to define it the more precisely: as "*The* more I examine it, *the* better I like *it*. I like this *the* least of any."

CHAPTER III.

Of SUBSTANTIVES.

SECT. I. *Of Subſtantives in general.*

A SUBSTANTIVE or Noun is the name of any thing that exiſts, or of which we have any notion: as, *London*, *man*, *virtue*.

Subſtantives are either proper or common.

Proper names or ſubſtantives, are the names appropriated to individuals: as, George, London, Thames.

Common names or ſubſtantives, ſtand for kinds containing many ſorts, or for ſorts containing many individuals under them; as, animal, man, tree, &c.

When proper names have an article annexed to them, they become common names: as, "He is the *Cicero* of his age; he is reading the lives of the Twelve *Cæſars*."

Common names may alſo be uſed to ſignify individuals, by the addition of articles or pronouns: as, "*The* boy is ſtudious; *that* girl is diſcreet."*

To ſubſtantives belong gender, number, and caſe; and they are all of the third perſon, when ſpoken *of*, and of the ſecond when ſpoken *to*: as,

---

* Nouns may alſo be divided into the following claſſes: *Collective* nouns, or nouns of multitude; as, the people, the parliament, the army: *Abſtract* nouns, or the names of qualities abſtracted from their ſubſtances; as knowledge, goodneſs, whiteneſs: *Verbal* or *participial* nouns; as, beginning, reading, writing.

"Bleſſings attend us on every ſide; be grateful, children of men!" that is, *ye* children of men.

SECT. 2. *Of Gender.*

GENDER is the diſtinction of ſex. There are three genders, the MASCULINE, the FEMININE, and the NEUTER.

The Maſculine Gender denotes animals of the male kind: as, a man, a horſe, a bull.

The Feminine Gender ſignifies animals of the female kind: as, a woman, a duck, a hen.

The Neuter Gender denotes objects which are neither males nor females: as, a field, a houſe, a garden.

Some ſubſtantives, naturally neuter, are, by a figure of ſpeech, converted into the maſculine or feminine gender: as, when we ſay of the ſun, *he* is ſetting; and of a ſhip, *ſhe* ſails well.

Figuratively, in the Engliſh tongue, we commonly give the maſculine gender to nouns which are conſpicuous for the attributes of imparting or communicating, and which are by nature ſtrong and efficacious. Thoſe, again, are made feminine, which are conſpicuous for the attributes of containing or bringing forth, or which are peculiarly beautiful or amiable. Upon theſe principles, the ſun is ſaid to be maſculine; and the moon, being the receptacle of the ſun's light, to be feminine. The earth is generally feminine. A ſhip, a country, a city, &c. are likewiſe made feminine, being receivers or containers. Time is always maſculine, on account of its mighty efficacy. Virtue is feminine from its beauty, and its being the object of love. Fortune and the church are generally put in the feminine gender.

The Engliſh language has three methods of diſtinguiſhing the ſex, viz.

1. By different words: as,

Male.	Female.	Male.	Female.
Bachelor.	Maid.	Huſband.	Wife.
Boar.	Sow.	King.	Queen.
Boy.	Girl.	Lad.	Laſs.
Brother.	Siſter.	Lord.	Lady.
Buck.	Doe.	Man.	Woman.
Bull.	Cow.	Maſter.	Miſtreſs.
Bullock *or* Steer.	Heifer.	Milter.	Spawner.
		Nephew.	Niece.
Cock.	Hen.	Ram.	Ewe.
Dog.	Bitch.	Singer.	Songſtreſs *or* Singer.
Drake.	Duck.		
Earl.	Counteſs.	Sloven.	Slut.
Father.	Mother.	Son.	Daughter.
Friar.	Nun.	Stag.	Hind.
Gander.	Gooſe.	Uncle.	Aunt.
Hart.	Roe.	Wizard.	Witch.
Horſe.	Mare.		

2. By a difference of termination: as,

Male.	Female.	Male.	Female.
Abbot.	Abbeſs.	Landgrave.	Landgravine.
Actor.	Actreſs.	Lion.	Lioneſs.
Adminiſtrator.	Adminiſtratrix.	Marquis.	Marchioneſs.
Adulterer.	Adultreſs.	Maſter.	Miſtreſs.
Ambaſſador.	Ambaſſadreſs.	Mayor.	Mayoreſs.
Arbiter.	Arbitreſs.	Patron.	Patroneſs.
Baron.	Baroneſs.	Peer.	Peereſs.
Bridegroom.	Bride.	Poet.	Poeteſs.
Benefactor.	Benefactreſs.	Priest.	Prieſteſs.
Caterer.	Catereſs.	Prince.	Princeſs.
Chanter.	Chantreſs.	Prior.	Prioreſs.
Conductor.	Conductreſs.	Prophet.	Propheteſs.
Count.	Counteſs.	Protector.	Protectreſs.
Deacon.	Deaconeſs.	Shepherd.	Shepherdeſs.
Duke.	Ducheſs.	Songſter.	Songſtreſs.
Elector.	Electreſs.	Sorcerer.	Sorcereſs.

Male.	Female.	Male.	Female.
Emperor.	Empreſs.	Sultan.	Sultaneſs.
Enchanter.	Enchantreſs.		Sultana.
Executor.	Executrix.	Tiger.	Tigreſs.
Governor.	Governeſs.	Traitor.	Traitreſs.
Heir.	Heireſs.	Tutor.	Toreſs.
Hero.	Heroine.	Viſcount.	Viſcounteſs.
Hunter.	Huntreſs.	Votary.	Votareſs.
Hoſt.	Hoſteſs.	Widower.	Widow.
Jew.	Jeweſs.		

3. By a noun, pronoun, or adjective, being *prefixed* to the ſubſtantive, as,

A cock-ſparrow.	A hen-ſparrow.
A man-ſervant.	A maid-ſervant.
A he-goat.	A ſhe-goat.
A he-bear.	A ſhe-bear.
A male-child.	A female-child.
Male deſcendants.	Female deſcendants.

It ſometimes happens, that the ſame noun is either maſculine or feminine. The words *parent*, *child*, *couſin*, *friend*, *neighbour*, *ſervant*, and ſeveral others, are uſed indifferently for males or females.

Nouns with variable terminations contribute to conciſeneſs and perſpicuity of expreſſion. We have only a ſufficient number of them to make us feel our want; for when we ſay of a woman, ſhe is a philoſopher, an aſtronomer, a builder, a weaver, we perceive an impropriety in the termination, which we cannot avoid: but we can ſay, that ſhe is a botaniſt, a ſtudent, a witneſs, a ſcholar, an orphan, a companion, becauſe theſe terminations have not annexed to them the notion of ſex.

SECT. 3. *Of Number.*

NUMBER is the conſideration of an object, as one or more.

Subſtantives are of two numbers, the ſingular and the plural.

The ſingular number expreſſes but one object; as, a chair, a table.

The plural number ſignifies more objects than one; as, chairs, tables.

Some nouns, from the nature of the things which they expreſs, are uſed only in the ſingular form; as, wheat, pitch, gold, ſloth, pride, &c.; others, only in the plural form; as, bellows, ſciſſors, lungs, riches, &c.

Some words are the ſame in both numbers; as, deer, ſheep, ſwine, &c.

The plural number of nouns is generally formed by adding *s* to the ſingular: as, dove, doves; face, faces; thought, thoughts. But when the ſubſtantive ſingular ends in *x*, *ch* ſoft, *ſh*, *ff*, or *ſ*, we add *es* in the plural: as box, boxes; church, churches; laſh, laſhes; kiſs, kiſſes; rebus, rebuſſes. If the ſingular ends in *ch* hard, the plural is formed by adding *s*; as, monarch, monarchs; diſtich, diſtichs.

Nouns which end in *o*, have ſometimes *es*, added to the plural; as, cargo, echo, hero, negro, manifeſto, potato, volcano, wo: and ſometimes only *s*; as folio, grotto, junto, nuncio, portico, punctilio, tyro.

Nouns ending in *f*, or *fe*, are rendered plural by the change of thoſe terminations into *ves*: as, loaf, loaves; half, halves; wife, wives; except grief, relief, reproof, and ſeveral others, which form the plural by the addition of *s*. Thoſe which end in *ff*, have the regular plural: as, ruff, ruffs; except, ſtaff, ſtaves.

Nouns which have *y* in the ſingular, with no other vowel in the ſame ſyllable, change it into *ies* in the plural: as,

beauty, beauties; fly, flies. But the *y* is not changed, when there is another vowel in the ſyllable: as, key, keys, delay, delays; attorney, attorneys.

Some nouns become plural by changing the *a* of the ſingular into *e*: as, man, men; woman, women; alderman, aldermen. The words ox and child, form oxen and children; brother, makes either brothers, or brethren. Sometimes the diphthong *oo* is changed into *ee* in the plural: as, foot, feet; gooſe, geeſe; tooth, teeth. Louſe and mouſe make lice and mice. Penny makes pence, or pennies, when the coin is meant; die, dice (for play); die, dies (for coining.)

It is agreeable to analogy, and the practice of the generality of correct writers, to conſtrue the following words as plural nouns; *pains, riches, alms*: and alſo, *mathematics, metaphyſics, politics, ethics, optics, pneumatics*, with other ſimilar names of ſciences.

Dr. Johnſon ſays that the adjective *much* is ſometimes a term of number, as well as of quantity. This may account for the inſtances we meet with of its aſſociating with *pains* as a plural noun: as, "much pains." The connexion, however, is not to be recommended.

The word *news* is now almoſt univerſally conſidered as belonging to the ſingular number.

The noun *means* is uſed both in the ſingular and the plural number.

The following words, which have been adopted from the Hebrew, Greek, and Latin languages, are thus diſtinguiſhed, with reſpect to number.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Cherub.	Cherubim.	Datum.	Data.
Seraph.	Seraphim.	Effluvium.	Effluvia.
Antitheſis.	Antitheſes.	Encomium.	Encomia *or* Encomiums.
Automaton.	Automata.		
Baſis.	Baſes.	Erratum.	Errata.
Criſis.	Criſes.	Genius.	Genii.*
Criterion.	Criteria.	Genus.	Genera.

* *Genii*, when denoting aerial ſpirits: *Geniuſes*, when ſignifying perſons of genius.

Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Diæreſis.	Diæreſes.	Index.	Indices *or* Indexes.†
Ellipſis.	Ellipſes.		
Emphaſis.	Emphaſes.	Lamina.	Laminæ.
Hypotheſis.	Hypotheſes.	Medium.	Media.
Metamorphoſis.	Metamorphoſes.	Magus.	Magi.
Phœnomenon.	Phænomena.	Memorandum.	Memoranda *or* Memorandums
Appendix.	Appendices *or* Appendixes.	Radius.	Radii.
		Stamen.	Stamina.
		Stratum.	Strata.
Arcanum.	Arcana.	Vortex.	Vortices.
Axis.	Axes.		
Calx.	Calces.		

Some words, derived from the learned languages, are confined to the plural number: as, antipodes, credenda, literati, minutiæ.

The following nouns being, in Latin, both ſingular and plural, are uſed in the ſame manner when adopted into our tongue: hiatus, apparatus, ſeries, ſpecies.

Sect. 4. *Of Caſe.*

The Caſes of ſubſtantives ſignify their different terminations, which ſerve to expreſs the relations of one thing to another.

In Engliſh, ſubſtantives have but two caſes, the nominative, and the poſſeſſive or genitive.

The nominative caſe ſimply expreſſes the name of a thing, or the ſubject of the verb: as, "The boy plays;" "The girls learn."

The poſſeſſive or genitive caſe expreſſes the relation of property or poſſeſſion; and has an apoſtrophe with the letter *s* coming after it: as,

† *Indexes*, when it ſignifies pointers, or Tables of contents: *Indices* when referring to Algebraic quantities.

"The ſcholar's duty;" "My father's houſe:" that is, "The duty of the ſcholar;" "The houſe of my father."

When the plural ends in *s*, the other *s* is omitted, but the apoſtrophe is retained: as, "On eagles' wings;" "The drapers' company."

Sometimes alſo, when the ſingular terminates in *ss*, the apoſtrophic *s* is not added: as, "For goodneſs' ſake:" "For righteouſneſs' ſake."

Engliſh ſubſtantives may be declined in the following manner:

	Singular.	Plural.
Nominative Caſe.	A Mother.	Mothers.
Poſſeſſive Caſe.	A Mother's.	Mothers'.
Nominative Caſe.	The man.	The men.
Poſſeſſive Caſe.	The man's.	The men's.

The Engliſh language, to expreſs different connexions and relations of one thing to another, uſes, for the moſt part, prepoſitions. The Greek and Latin among the ancient, and ſome too among the modern languages, as the German, vary the termination or ending of the ſubſtantive, to anſwer the ſame purpoſe; an example of which, in the Latin, is inſerted, as explanatory of the nature and uſe of caſes, viz.

	Singular.	
Nominative.	DOMINUS,	A Lord.
Genitive.	DOMINI,	Lord's, of a Lord.
Dative.	DOMINO,	To a Lord.
Accuſative.	DOMINUM,	A Lord.
Vocative.	DOMINE,	O Lord.
Ablative.	DOMINO,	By a Lord.

	Plural.	
Nominative.	DOMINI,	Lords.
Genitive.	DOMINORUM,	Lords', of Lords.
Dative.	DOMINIS,	To Lords.
Accusative.	DOMINOS,	Lords.
Vocative.	DOMINI,	O Lords.
Ablative.	DOMINIS.	By Lords.

In support of the position, that there are in English but two cases of nouns, we cite the authority of Ruddiman, Lowth, Johnson, Priestley, &c.; names which are sufficient to decide the point. If case, in Grammar, means only the variation of a noun or pronoun, by termination or within itself, (for which there are the highest authorities,*) with what propriety can we distinguish the relations, signified by the addition of articles and prepositions, by the name of cases?

If these relations were to be so distinguished, the English language would have a much greater number of cases than the Greek and Latin tongues; for, as every preposition has its distinct meaning and effect, every combination of a preposition and article with the noun, would form a different relation, and would constitute a distinct case. This would encumber our language with many new terms, and a heavy and useless load of distinctions.†

On the principle of imitating other languages in names and forms, without a correspondence in nature and idiom, we might adopt a number of declensions, as well as cases,

* Vossius, Clarke, Ruddiman, Harris, Lowth, Johnson, Priestley, Beattie, Blair, Coote, the writers of the French and the English Encyclopædia, and many other grammarians, assert, that the cases of a noun are its different inflections or terminations.

† "If we admit the termination to be the sole characteristic of a case, then there are, in English, no more cases than those above specified. If cases are to be distinguished by the different significations of the noun, or by the different relations it may bear to the governing word, then we have in our language as many cases almost, as there are prepositions: and, above a man, beneath a man, beyond a man, round about a man, within a man, without a man, &c. shall be cases, as well as, of a man, to a man, and with a man."

Dr. Beattie.

for Engliſh ſubſtantives. Thus, five or ſix declenſions, diſtinguiſhed according to the various modes of forming the plural of ſubſtantives, with at leaſt half a dozen caſes to each declenſion, would furniſh a complete arrangement of Engliſh nouns, in all their trappings. See on this ſubject, *the fifth and ninth ſections of the ſixth chapter* of etymology.

The aſſumption of a variety of caſes, is not neceſſary for the purpoſe of regular parſing. Though, in the ſentence, "A wiſe man controls his paſſions," we cannot properly ſay, that the noun "paſſions," is in the objective caſe, and governed by the active verb, "control;" yet we may with propriety aſſert, that the noun, "paſſions" is the object of that active verb. This will anſwer all the ends of parſing, and of ſhowing the connexion and dependence of words under ſuch circumſtances, without the arbitrary ſuppoſition of a caſe not at all correſpondent to the nature, or the deſign of caſes.

If, notwithſtanding what has been alledged in ſupport of the poſition, that the termination of nouns conſtitutes their caſe, and that Engliſh nouns have but two caſes, any teachers ſhould be of opinion, that it would be more convenient for parſing, and more intelligible to learners, to conſider the caſe of a noun as ſomething different from its termination, and to ſuppoſe an objective caſe after verbs active and prepoſitions, we ſhall, for the accommodation of ſuch teachers, give the declenſion of two nouns with this ſuppoſed objective caſe.

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom. Caſe.	A Mother.	Mothers.
Poſſeſſive.	A Mother's.	Mothers'.
Objective.	A Mother.	Mothers.
Nom.	The Man.	The Men.
Poſſeſſive.	The Man's.	The Men's.
Objective.	The Man.	The Men.

When the thing to which another is ſaid to belong, is expreſſed by a circumlocution, or by many terms, the ſign

of the poſſeſſive caſe is commonly added to the laſt term: as, "The king of Great Britain's dominions."

Sometimes, though rarely, two nouns in the poſſeſſive caſe, immediately ſucceed each other, in the following form: "My friend's wife's ſiſter;" a ſenſe which would be better expreſſed by ſaying, "the ſiſter of my friend's wife;" or, "my friend's ſiſter in law." In each of the following phraſes, viz. "A book of my brother's," "A ſervant of the queen's," "A ſoldier of the king's," there are two genitive caſes; the firſt phraſe implying, "one of the books of my brother," the next, "one of the ſervants of the queen;" and the laſt, "one of the ſoldiers of the king." This will be more evident to the ſcholar, if we ſupply what is underſtood after each genitive, and tranſpoſe the phraſe: as, "Of my brother's *books*, a book;" or, "Of my brother's *books*, one;" and ſo of the reſt.

CHAPTER IV.

Of PRONOUNS.

A PRONOUN is a word uſed inſtead of a noun, to avoid the too frequent repetition of the ſame word: as, "The man is happy; *he* is benevolent; *he* is uſeful."

There are three kinds of pronouns, viz. the PERSONAL, the RELATIVE, and the ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

SECT. I. *Of the Perſonal Pronouns.*

THERE are five Perſonal Pronouns, viz. *I, thou, he, ſhe, it;** with their plurals, *we, ye* or *you, they*.

* By the indulgence of grammarians, the pronoun *it* is allowed to rank amongſt the perſonal pronouns. It conveniently officiates as a third perſon to the verb.

Perſonal pronouns admit of perſon, number, gender, and caſe.

The perſons of pronouns are three in each number, viz.

I, is the firſt perſon
Thou, is the ſecond perſon
He, *ſhe*, or *it*, is the third perſon
} Singular.

We, is the firſt perſon
Ye or *you*, is the ſecond perſon
They, is the third perſon
} Plural.

This account of perſons will be very intelligible, when we reflect, that there are three perſons who may be the ſubject of any diſcourſe: firſt, the perſon who ſpeaks, may ſpeak of himſelf; ſecondly, he may ſpeak of the perſon to whom he addreſſes himſelf; thirdly, he may ſpeak of ſome other perſon: and as the ſpeakers, the perſons ſpoken to, and the other perſons ſpoken of, may be many, ſo each of theſe perſons muſt have the plural number.

The Numbers of pronouns, like thoſe of ſubſtantives, are two, the ſingular and the plural: as, *I, thou, he; we, ye* or *you, they.*

Gender has reſpect only to the third perſon ſingular of the pronouns, *he, ſhe, it.* *He* is maſculine; *ſhe* is feminine; *it* is neuter.

The perſons ſpeaking and ſpoken to, being at the ſame time the ſubjects of the diſcourſe, are ſuppoſed to be preſent; from which, and other circumſtances, their ſex is commonly known, and needs not to be marked by a diſtinction of gender in the pronouns: but the third perſon or thing ſpoken of, being abſent, and in many reſpects unknown, it is neceſſary that it ſhould be marked by a diſtinction of gender; at leaſt when ſome particular perſon or thing is ſpoken of, that ought to be more diſtinctly

marked: accordingly the pronoun ſingular of the third perſon has the three genders, *he, ſhe, it.*

Perſonal Pronouns have three caſes; the nominative, the poſſeſſive, and the objective.

The objective caſe follows a verb active, or a prepoſition, expreſſing the object of an action, or of a relation.

The perſonal pronouns are thus declined:

Perſon.	Caſe.	Singular.	Plural.
Firſt.	*Nom.*	I.	We.
	Poſs.	Mine.	Ours.
	Obj.	Me.	Us.
Second.	*Nom.*	Thou.	Ye *or* you.
	Poſs.	Thine.	Yours.
	Obj.	Thee.	You.
Third.	*Nom.*	He.	They.
	Poſs.	His.	Theirs.
	Obj.	Him.	Them.
Third.	*Nom.*	She.	They.
	Poſs.	Hers.	Theirs.
	Obj.	Her.	Them.
Third.	*Nom.*	It.	They.
	Poſs.	Its.	Theirs.
	Obj.	It.	Them.

SECT. 2. *Of the Relative Pronouns.*

RELATIVE Pronouns are ſuch as relate, in gene-

ral, to ſome word or phraſe going before, which is thence called the antecedent: they are, *who*, *which*, and *that*: as, "The man is happy *who* lives virtuouſly."*

What is a kind of compound relative, including both the antecedent and the relative, and is equivalent to *that which*: as, "This is *what* I wanted;" that is to ſay, "*the thing which* I wanted."

Who is applied to perſons, *which* to animals and inanimate things: as, "He is a *friend*, *who* is faithful in adverſity; "The *bird*, *which* ſung ſo ſweetly, is flown; "This is the *tree*, *which* produces no fruit."

That, as a relative, is often uſed to prevent the too frequent repetition of *who* and *which*. It is applied to both perſons and things: as, "*He that* acts wiſely deſerves praiſe;" "Modeſty is a *quality that* highly adorns a woman."

Who is of both numbers, and is thus declined:

Singular and Plural.

Nominative.	Who.
Poſſeſſive.	Whoſe.
Objective.	Whom.

Which, *that*, and *what*, are likewiſe of both numbers, but they do not vary their termination; except that *whoſe* is ſometimes uſed as the poſſeſſive caſe of *which*: as, "Is there any other doctrine *whoſe* followers are puniſhed?"

---

* The relative pronoun, when uſed interrogatively, relates to a word or phraſe, which is not *antecedent*, but *ſubſequent* to the relative. See note under the VI. Rule of Syntax.

———" And the fruit
Of that forbidden *tree whoſe* mortal taſte
Brought death." MILTON.

———" Pure the joy without allay,
Whoſe very rapture is tranquillity." YOUNG.

" The lights and ſhades *whoſe* well-accorded ſtrife
Gives all the ſtrength and colour of our life." POPE.

" This is one of the cleareſt characteriſtics of its being a religion *whoſe* origin is divine." BLAIR.

By the uſe of this licenſe, one word is ſubſtituted for three: as, " Philoſophy, *whoſe* end is to inſtruct us in the knowledge of nature," for, " Philoſophy, *the* end *of which* is to inſtruct us," &c.

Who and *which* have ſometimes the words *ſoever* and *ever* annexed to them: as, " *whoſoever*, or *whoever*, *whichſoever* or *whichever*;" but they are ſeldom uſed in modern ſtyle.

The word *that* is ſometimes a relative, ſometimes a demonſtrative pronoun, and ſometimes a conjunction. It is a relative, when it may be turned into *who* or *which* without deſtroying the ſenſe: as, " *They* that (who) reprove us, may be our beſt friends;" " From every thing *that* (which) you ſee, derive inſtruction." It is a demonſtrative pronoun when it is followed immediately by a ſubſtantive, to which it is either joined, or refers, and which it limits or qualifies: as, " *That* boy is induſtrious;" " *That* belongs to me;" meaning, that book, that deſk, &c. It is a conjunction, when it joins ſentences together, and cannot be turned into *who* or *which*, without deſtroying the ſenſe: as, " Take care *that* every day be well employed." " I hope he will believe *that* I have not acted improperly."

Who, *which*, and *what*, are called *Interrogatives*, when they are uſed in aſking queſtions; as. " *Who* is he?" " *Which* is the book?" " *What* art thou doing?"

Whether was formerly made uſe of to ſignify interrogation: as, "*Whether* of theſe ſhall I chooſe?" but it is now ſeldom uſed, the interrogative *which* being ſubſtituted for it. Some grammarians think that the uſe of it ſhould be revived, as, like *either* and *neither* it points to the dual number; and would contribute to render our expreſſions conciſe and definite.

Some writers have claſſed the interrogatives as a ſeparate kind of pronouns; but they are too nearly related to the relative pronouns, both in nature and form, to render ſuch a diviſion proper. They do not, in fact, loſe the character of relatives, when they become interrogatives. The only difference is, that *without* an interrogation, the relatives have reference to a ſubject which is antecedent, definite, and known; *with* an interrogation, to a ſubject which is ſubſequent, indefinite, and unknown, and which it is expected that the *anſwer* ſhould expreſs and aſcertain.

SECT. 3. *Of the Adjective Pronouns.*

Adjective Pronouns are of a mixed nature, participating the properties both of pronouns and adjectives.

The adjective pronouns may be ſubdivided into four ſorts, namely, the *poſſeſſive*, the *diſtributive*, the *demonſtrative*, and the *indefinite*.

1. The *poſſeſſive* are thoſe which relate to poſſeſſion or property. There are ſeven of them; viz. *my*, *thy*, *his*, *her*, *our*, *your*, *their*.

Mine and *thine*, inſtead of *my* and *thy*, were formerly uſed before a ſubſtantive, or adjective, beginning with a vowel, or a ſilent *h*: as, "Blot out all *mine* iniquities."

The poſſeſſives, *his*, *mine*, *thine*, may be accounted

either poſſeſſive pronouns, or the poſſeſſive caſes of their reſpective perſonal pronouns.

When the poſſeſſive pronouns are prefixed to ſubſtantives, or are parted from them only by an adjective, they admit of no variation, whatever be the number or caſe of the noun: as, *My* young couſin is dead; I know *thy* parents; I have heard of *his* extraordinary merit; ſhe lives with *her* mother; *our* books are torn; I will come to *your* houſe; *their* ſituation is miſerable.

When they are ſeparated from the noun by a verb, or when the noun is underſtood, all of them except *his*, vary their terminations: as, This hat is *mine*, and the other is *thine*; thoſe trinkets are *hers*; this houſe is *ours*, and that is *yours*; *theirs* is more commodious than *ours*. But theſe variations are in fact the poſſeſſive caſes of the perſonal pronouns.

The two words *own* and *ſelf*, are uſed in conjunction with pronouns. *Own* is added to poſſeſſives, both ſingular and plural: as, "*My own* hand, *our own* houſe." It is emphatical, and implies a ſilent contrariety or oppoſition: as, "I live in *my own* houſe," that is, "not in a hired houſe." *Self* is added to poſſeſſives: as, *myſelf*, *yourſelves*; and ſometimes to perſonal pronouns: as, *himſelf*, *itſelf*, *themſelves*. It then, like *own*, expreſſes emphaſis and oppoſition: as, "I did this myſelf," that is, "not another;" or it forms a reciprocal pronoun: as, "We hurt ourſelves by vain rage."

Himſelf, *themſelves*, are now uſed in the nominative caſe, inſtead of *hiſelf*, *theirſelves*: as, "He came himſelf;" "He himſelf ſhall do this;" "They performed it themſelves."

2. The *diſtributive* are thoſe which denote the perſons or things that make up a number, as taken ſeparately and ſingly. They are *each*, *every*, *either*: as, "*Each* of his brothers is in a favourable ſituation;" "*Every* man muſt account for himſelf;" "I have not ſeen *either* of them."

Each relates to two or more persons or things, and signifies either of the two, or every one of any number taken separately.

Every relates to several persons or things, and signifies each one of them all taken separately. This pronoun was formerly used apart from its noun, but it is now constantly annexed to it, except in legal proceedings: as, in the phrase "all and *every* of them."

Either relates to two persons or things taken separately, and signifies the one or the other. To say, "either of the three," is therefore improper.

Neither imports "*not either*;" that is, not one nor the other; as, "Neither of my friends was there."

3. The *demonstrative* are those which precisely point out the subjects to which they relate: *this* and *that*, *these* and *those*, are of this class: as, "*This* is true charity; *that* is only its image."

This refers to the nearest person or thing, and *that* to the most distant: as, "*This* man is more intelligent than *that*." *This* indicates the latter or last mentioned; *that*, the former or first mentioned: as, "Both wealth and poverty are temptations; *that*, tends to excite pride, *this*, discontent."

Perhaps the words *former* and *latter* may be properly ranked amongst the demonstrative pronouns, especially in many of their applications. The following sentence may serve as an example: "It was happy for the state, that Fabius continued in the command with Minucius: the *former's* phlegm was a check upon the *latter's* vivacity."

4. The *indefinite* are those which express their subjects in an indefinite or general manner. The following are of this kind: *some*, *other*, *any*, *one*, *all*, *such*, &c.

Of theſe pronouns, only the words *one* and *other* are varied. *One* has a poſſeſſive caſe, which it forms in the ſame manner as ſubſtantives: as, *one, one's.* This word has a general ſignification, meaning people at large; and ſometimes alſo a peculiar reference to the perſon who is ſpeaking: as, "*One* ought to pity the diſtreſſes of mankind." "*One* is apt to love *one's* ſelf." This word is often uſed, by good writers in the plural number: as, "The great *ones* of the world;" "The boy wounded the old bird, and ſtole the young *ones*;" "My wife and the little *ones* are in good health."

Other is declined in the following manner:

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	*Other*	*Others.*
Poſſ.	*Other's*	*Others'.*
Obj.	*Other*	*Others.*

The plural *others* is only uſed when apart from the noun to which it refers, whether expreſſed or underſtood: as, "When you have peruſed theſe papers, I will ſend you the *others.*" "He pleaſes ſome, but he diſguſts *others.*" When this pronoun is joined to nouns, either ſingular or plural, it has no variation: as, "the other man," "the other men."

The following phraſes may ſerve to exemplify the indefinite pronouns. "*Some* of you are wiſe and good;" "A few of them were idle, the *others* induſtrious;" "Neither is there *any* that is unexceptionable;" "*One* ought to know *one's* own mind;" "They were *all* preſent;" "*Such* is the ſtate of man, that he is never at reſt;" "*Some* are happy, while *others* are miſerable."

The word *another* is compoſed of the indefinite article prefixed to the word *other.*

None is uſed in both numbers: as, "*None* is ſo deaf as he that will not hear;" "*None* of thoſe are equal to theſe:" It ſeems originally to have ſignified, according to its derivation, *not one*, and therefore to have had no plural; but there is good authority for the uſe of it in the plural number: as, "*None* that *go* unto her *return* again."

Prov. ii. 19. "Terms of peace *were none* vouchſaf'd." MILTON. "*None* of them *are* varied to expreſs the gender." "*None* of them *have* different endings for the numbers." LOWTH's *Introduction.* "*None* of their productions *are* extant." BLAIR.

We have endeavoured to diſtinguiſh, and explain the nature of the adjective pronouns; but it is difficult to divide them in an exact and unexceptionable manner. Some of them, in particular applications, might have been differently claſſed; but it is preſumed that, in general, the diſtribution is tolerably correct. All the pronouns, except the perſonal and relative, may indeed, in a general view of them, be conſidered as *definitive* pronouns, becauſe they define or aſcertain the extent of the common name, or general term, to which they refer or are joined; but as each claſs of them does this, more or leſs exactly, or in a manner peculiar to itſelf, a diviſion adapted to this circumſtance appears to be ſuitable to the nature of things, and the underſtanding of learners.

It is the opinion of ſome reſpectable grammarians, that the words *this, that, any, ſome, ſuch, his, their, our,* &c. are pronouns, when they are uſed ſeparately from the nouns to which they relate; but that, when they are joined to thoſe nouns, they are not to be conſidered as belonging to this ſpecies of words; becauſe, in this aſſociation, they rather aſcertain a ſubſtantive, than ſupply the place of one. They aſſert that, in the phraſes, "give me *that,*" "*this* is John's" and "*ſuch* were *ſome* of you," the words in italics are pronouns; but that, in the following phraſes, they are not pronouns; "*this* book is inſtructive," "*ſome* boys are ingenious," "*my* health is declining," "*our* hearts are deceitful," &c. Other grammarians think, that none of theſe forms of ſpeech can properly be called pronouns; as the genuine pronoun ſtands by itſelf, without the aid of a noun expreſſed or underſtood. They are of opinion, that in the expreſſions, "Give me that," "this is John's," &c. the noun is always underſtood, and muſt be ſupplied in the mind of the reader: as, "Give me *that book*; "*this book* is John's;" "and *ſuch perſons* were *ſome perſons* amongſt you."

Some writers are of opinion that the pronouns ſhould be claſſed into *ſubſtantive* and *adjective* pronouns. Under the former, they include the perſonal and the relative; under the latter, all the others. But this diviſion, though a neat one, does not appear to be accurate. All the relative pronouns will not range under the ſubſtantive head.—We have diſtributed theſe parts of ſpeech, in the mode which we think moſt correct and intelligible; but, for the information of ſtudents, and to direct their inquiries on the ſubject, we ſtate the different opinions of ſeveral judicious writers on Grammar.

CHAPTER V.

Of ADJECTIVES.

SECT. 1. *Of the nature of Adjectives, and the degrees of compariſon.*

AN Adjective is a word added to a ſubſtantive, to expreſs its quality: as "An *induſtrious* man;" "A *virtuous* woman;" "A *benevolent* mind."

In Engliſh the adjective is not varied on account of gender, number, or caſe. Thus we ſay, "A careleſs boy; careleſs girls."

The only variation which it admits, is that of the degrees of compariſon.

There are commonly reckoned three degrees of compariſon; the POSITIVE, the COMPARATIVE, and the SUPERLATIVE.

Grammarians have generally enumerated theſe three degrees of compariſon; but the firſt of them has been thought by ſome writers, to be, improperly, termed a degree of compariſon; as it ſeems to be nothing more than the ſimple form of the adjective, and to imply not either compariſon or degree. This opinion may be well founded, unleſs the adjective be ſuppoſed to imply compariſon or degree, by

containing a secret or general reference to other things: as, when we say, "he is a *tall* man," "this is a *fair* day," we make some reference to the ordinary size of men, and to different weather.

The Positive State expresses the quality of an object, without any increase or diminution: as, good, wise, great.

The Comparative Degree increases or lessens the positive in signification: as, wiser, greater, less wise.

The Superlative Degree increases or lessens the positive to the highest or lowest degree: as, wisest, greatest, least wise.

The simple word, or positive, becomes the comparative, by adding *r* or *er*; and the superlative, by adding *st* or *est*, to the end of it: as, wise, wiser, wisest; great, greater, greatest. And the adverbs *more* and *most*, placed before the adjective, have the same effect: as, wise, *more* wise, *most* wise.

The termination in *ish* may be accounted in some sort a degree or comparison, by which the signification is diminished below the positive: as, *black*, *blackish*, or tending to blackness: *salt*, *sakish*, or having a little taste of salt.

The word *rather* is very properly used to express a small degree or excess of a quality: as, "She is *rather* profuse in her expenses."

Monosyllables, for the most part, are compared by *er* and *est*; and dissyllables by *more* and *most*: as, mild, milder, mildest; frugal, more frugal, most frugal. Dissyllables ending in *y*; as, happy, lovely: and in *le* after a mute, as able, ample; or accented on the last syllable, as, discreet, polite, easily admit of *er* and *est*: as, happier, happiest; abler, ablest; politer, politest. Words of more

than two ſyllables hardly ever admit of thoſe terminations.

In ſome words the ſuperlative is formed by adding the adverb *moſt* to the end of them, as, nethermoſt, uttermoſt, or utmoſt, undermoſt, uppermoſt, foremoſt.

In Engliſh, as in moſt languages, there are ſome words of very common uſe, (in which the caprice of cuſtom is apt to get the better of analogy,) that are irregular in this reſpect: as, "good, better, beſt; bad, worſe, worſt; little, leſs, leaſt, much or many, more, moſt; near, nearer, neareſt or next; late, later or latter, lateſt or laſt; old, older or elder, oldeſt or eldeſt;" and a few others.

An adjective put without a ſubſtantive, with the definite article before it, becomes a ſubſtantive in ſenſe and meaning, and is written as a ſubſtantive; as, "Providence rewards *the good* and puniſhes *the bad*."

Various nouns placed before other nouns aſſume the nature of adjectives; as, ſea fiſh, wine veſſel, corn field, meadow ground, &c.

Numeral adjectives are either cardinal, or ordinal: cardinal, as one, two, three, &c.; ordinal, as firſt, ſecond, third, &c.

SECT. 2. *Remarks on the ſubject of compariſon.*

IF we conſider the ſubject of compariſon attentively, we ſhall perceive that the degrees of it are infinite in number, or at leaſt indefinite.—A mountain is larger than a mite;—by how many degrees? How much bigger is the earth than a grain of ſand? By how many degrees was Socrates wiſer than Alcibiades? or by how many is ſnow whiter than this paper? It is plain, that to theſe and the like queſtions, no *definite* anſwers can be returned.

In quantities, however, that may be *exactly* meaſured, the degrees of exceſs may be exactly aſcertained. A foot is juſt twelve times as long as an inch; and an hour is ſixty times longer than a minute. But, in regard to *qualities*, and to thoſe quantities which cannot be meaſured exactly, it is impoſſible to ſay how many degrees may be comprehended in the comparative exceſs.

But though these degrees are infinite or indefinite in fact, they cannot be so in language; nor would it be convenient, if language were to express many of them. In regard to unmeasured quantities and qualities, the degrees of more and less, (besides those marked above,) may be expressed intelligibly, at least, if not accurately, by certain adverbs, or words of like import: as, "Socrates was *much* wiser than Alcibiades;" "Snow is *a great deal* whiter than this paper;" "Epaminondas was *by far* the most accomplished of the Thebans;" "The evening star is a *very* splendid object, but the sun is *incomparably* more splendid;" "The Deity is *infinitely* greater than the greatest of his creatures." The inaccuracy of these, and the like expressions, is not a material inconvenience; and, though it were, it is unavoidable: for human speech can only express human thought; and where thought is necessarily inaccurate, language must be so too.

When the word *very, exceedingly*, or any other of similar import, is put before the positive, it is called by some writers the superlative of eminence, to distinguish it from the other superlative, which has been already mentioned, and is called the superlative of comparison. Thus *very eloquent*, is termed the superlative of eminence; *most eloquent*, the superlative of comparison. In the superlative of eminence, something of comparison is, however, remotely or indirectly intimated; for we cannot reasonably call a man very eloquent, without comparing his eloquence with the eloquence of other men.

The comparative may be so employed, as to express the same pre-eminence or inferiority as the superlative. Thus, the sentence, "Of all acquirements, virtue is the *most valuable*," conveys the same sentiment as the following; "Virtue is *more valuable* than every other acquirement."

CHAPTER VI.

Of VERBS.

SECT. 1. *Of the nature of Verbs in general.*

A VERB is a word which signifies to BE, to DO, or to SUFFER; as, "I am, I rule, I am ruled."

Verbs are of three kinds; ACTIVE, PASSIVE, and NEUTER. They are alſo divided into REGULAR, IRREGULAR, and DEFECTIVE.

A Verb Active expreſſes an action, and neceſſarily implies an agent, and an object acted upon: as, to love; "I love Penelope."

A Verb Paſſive expreſſes a paſſion or a ſuffering, or the receiving of an action; and neceſſarily implies an object acted upon, and an agent by which it is acted upon: as, to be loved; "Penelope is loved by me."

A Verb Neuter expreſſes neither action nor paſſion, but being, or a ſtate of being: as, "I am, I ſleep, I ſit."*

The verb active is alſo called *tranſitive*, becauſe the action paſſes over to the object, or has an effect upon ſome other thing: as, "The tutor inſtructs his pupils;" "I eſteem the man."

Verbs neuter may properly be denominated *intranſitives*, becauſe the effect is confined within the ſubject, and

* Verbs have been diſtinguiſhed by ſome writers, into the following kinds.

1ſt. *Active-tranſitive*, or thoſe which denote an action that paſſes from the agent to ſome object: as, Cæſar conquered Pompey.

2d. *Active-intranſitive*, or thoſe which expreſs that kind of action, which has no effect upon any thing beyond the agent himſelf: as Cæſar walked.

3d. *Paſſive*, or thoſe which expreſs, not action, but paſſion, whether pleaſing or painful: as, Portia was loved; Pompey was conquered.

4th. *Neuter*, or thoſe which expreſs an attribute that conſiſts neither in action nor paſſion: as, Cæſar ſtood.

This appears to be an orderly arrangement. But if the claſs of *active-intranſitive* verbs were admitted, it would rather perplex than aſſiſt the learner: for the difference between verbs active and neuter, as tranſitive and intranſitive, is eaſy and obvious; but the difference between verbs abſolutely neuter and intranſitively active, is not always clear. It is, indeed, often very difficult to be aſcertained.

does not pass over to any object: as, "I sit, he lives, they sleep."

Some of the verbs that are usually ranked among neuters, make a near approach to the nature of a verb active, but they may be distinguished from it by their being intransitive: as, to run, to walk, to fly, &c. The rest are more obviously neuter, and more clearly expressive of a middle state between action and passion: as, to stand, to lie, to sleep, &c.

In English, many verbs are used both in an active and a neuter signification, the construction only determining of which kind they are: as, to flatten, signifying to make even or level, is a verb active; but when it signifies to grow dull or insipid, it is a verb neuter.

A neuter verb, by the addition of a preposition, may become a compound active verb. *To smile* is a neuter verb: it cannot, therefore, be followed by an objective case, nor be construed as a passive verb. We cannot say, *she smiled him*, or, *he was smiled*. But *to smile on* being a compound active verb, we properly say, *she smiled on him; he was smiled on* by fortune in every undertaking.

Auxiliary or helping Verbs, are those by the help of which the English verbs are principally conjugated. They are, *do*, *be*, *have*, *shall*, *will* *may*, *can*, with their variations; and *let* and *must*, which have no variation.*

In our definition of the verb, as a part of speech which signifies *to be*, *to do*, or *to suffer*, &c. we have included every thing, either expressly or by necessary consequence, that is essential to its nature, and nothing that is not essential to it. This definition is warranted by the authority of Dr. Lowth, and of many other respectable writers on grammar. There are, however, some grammarians, who consider *assertion* as the essence of the verb. But as the

* *Let*, as a principal verb, has *letteſt* and *letteth*; but as a helping verb it admits of no variation.

participle and the infinitive, if included in it, would prove inſuperable objections to their ſcheme, they have, without heſitation, denied the former a place in the verb, and declared the latter to be merely an abſtract noun. This appears to be going rather too far in ſupport of an hypotheſis. It ſeems to be incumbent on theſe grammarians, to reject alſo the imperative mood. What part of ſpeech would they make the verbs in the following ſentence? "Depart inſtantly: improve your time: forgive us our ſins." Will it be ſaid, that the verbs in theſe phraſes are aſſertions?

In reply to theſe queſtions, it has been ſaid, that "Depart inſtantly," is an expreſſion equivalent to, "I deſire you to depart inſtantly;" and that as the latter phraſe implies affirmation or aſſertion, ſo does the former. But, ſuppoſing the phraſes to be exactly alike in ſenſe, the reaſoning is not concluſive. 1ſt. In the latter phraſe, the only part implying affirmation, is, "I deſire." The words "to depart," are in the infinitive mood, and contain no aſſertion: they affirm nothing. 2d. The poſition is not tenable, that "Equivalence in ſenſe implies ſimilarity in grammatical nature." It proves too much, and therefore nothing. This mode of reaſoning would confound the acknowledged grammatical diſtinction of words. A pronoun, on this principle, may be proved to be a noun; a noun, a verb; an adverb, a noun and prepoſition; the ſuperlative degree, the comparative; the imperative mood, the indicative; the future tenſe, the preſent; and ſo on: becauſe they may reſpectively be reſolved into ſimilar meanings. Thus, in the ſentence, "I deſire you to depart," the words *to depart*, may be called a noun, becauſe they are equivalent in ſenſe to the noun *departure*, in the following ſentence, "I deſire your departure." The words "Depart inſtantly," may be proved to be, not the imperative mood with an adverb, but the indicative and infinitive, with a noun and prepoſition; for they are equivalent to "I deſire you to depart in an inſtant." The *ſuperlative* degree in this ſentence, "Of all acquirements virtue is the moſt valuable," may paſs for the *comparative*, becauſe it conveys the ſame ſentiment as, "Virtue is more valuable than every other acquirement."

We ſhall not purſue this ſubject any further, as the reader muſt be ſatisfied, that only the word *deſire*, in the equivalent ſentence, implies affirmation; and that one phraſe may, in ſenſe, be equivalent to another, though its grammatical nature is eſſentially different.

To verbs belong NUMBER, PERSON, MOOD and TENSE.

SECT. 2. *Of Number and Perſon.*

Verbs have two numbers, the Singular and the Plural: as, "I run, we run," &c.

In each number there are three perſons; as,

	Singular.	Plural.
Firſt Perſon.	I love.	We love.
Second Perſon.	Thou loveſt.	Ye *or* you love.
Third Perſon.	He loves.	They love.

Thus the verb, in ſome parts of it, varies its endings, to expreſs, or agree with, different perſons of the ſame number: as, "I *love*, thou *loveſt*; he *loveth*, or *loves*:" and alſo to expreſs different numbers of the ſame perſon: as, "thou *loveſt*, ye *love*; he *loveth*, they *love*." In the plural number of the verb, there is no variation of ending to expreſs the different perſons; and the verb, in the three perſons plural, is the ſame as it is in the firſt perſon ſingular. Yet this ſcanty proviſion of terminations is ſufficient for all the purpoſes of diſcourſe, and no ambiguity ariſes from it: the verb being always attended, either with the noun expreſſing the ſubject acting or acted upon, or with the pronoun repreſenting it. For this reaſon, the plural termination in *en*, *they loven*, *they weren*, formerly in uſe, was laid aſide as unneceſſary, and has long been obſolete.

Sect. 3. *Of Moods and Participles.*

Mood or Mode is a particular form of the verb, ſhowing the manner in which the being, action, or paſſion, is repreſented.

The nature of a mood may be more intelligibly explained to the ſcholar, by obſerving, that it conſiſts in the change which the verb undergoes, to ſignify various intentions of the mind, and various modifications and circumſtances of action: which explanation, if compared with the following account and uſes of the different moods, will be found to agree with and illuſtrate them.

There are five moods of verbs, the INDICATIVE, the IMPERATIVE, the POTENTIAL, the SUBJUNCTIVE, and the INFINITIVE.

The Indicative Mood ſimply indicates or declares a thing: as, "He loves, he is loved:" or it aſks a queſtion: as, "Does he love?" "Is he loved?"

The Imperative Mood is uſed for commanding, exhorting, entreating, or permitting: as, "Depart thou; mind ye; let us ſtay; go in peace."

Though this mood derives its name from its intimation of command, it is uſed on occaſions of a very oppoſite nature, even in the humbleſt ſupplications of an inferior being to one who is infinitely his ſuperior: as, "Give us this day our daily bread; and forgive us our treſpaſſes."

The Potential Mood implies poſſibility or liberty, power, will, or obligation: as, "It may rain; he may go or ſtay; I can ride; he would walk; they ſhould learn."

The Subjunctive Mood repreſents a thing under

a condition, motive, wiſh, ſuppoſition, &c.; and is preceded by a conjunction, expreſſed or underſtood, and attended by another verb: as, "I will reſpect him, *though* he chide me;" "Were he good, he would be happy;" that is, "*if* he were good."

The Infinitive Mood expreſſes a thing in a general and unlimited manner, without any diſtinction of number or perſon; as, "to act, to ſpeak, to be feared."

The participle is a certain form of the verb, and derives its name from its participating, not only of the properties of a verb, but alſo of thoſe of an adjective: as, "I am deſirous of *knowing him*;" "*admired* and *applauded*, he became vain;" "*Having finiſhed* his work, he ſubmitted it," &c.

There are three participles, the Preſent or Active, the Perfect or Paſſive, and the Conpound Perfect: as, "loving, loved, having loved."

Agreeably to the general practice of grammarians, we have repreſented the preſent participle, as active; and the paſt, as paſſive: but they are not uniformly ſo: the preſent is ſometimes paſſive; and the paſt is frequently active. Thus, "The youth *was conſuming* by a ſlow malady;" "The Indian *was burning* by the cruelty of his enemies;" appear to be inſtances of the preſent participle being uſed paſſively. "He *has inſtructed* me;" "I *have* gratefully *repaid* his kindneſs;" are examples of the paſt participle being applied in an active ſenſe. We may alſo obſerve, that the preſent participle is ſometimes aſſociated with the paſt and future tenſes of the verb; and the paſt participle connected with the preſent and future tenſes.—The moſt unexceptionable diſtinction which grammarians make between the participles, is, that the one points to the con-

tinuation of the action, paſſion, or ſtate, denoted by the verb; and the other, to the completion of it. Thus, the preſent participle ſignifies *imperfect* action, or action begun and not ended: as, "I *am writing* a letter." The paſt participle ſignifies action *perfected*, or finiſhed: as, "I have *written* a letter;" "The letter *is written*." *

The participle is diſtinguiſhed from the adjective, by the former's expreſſing the idea of time, and the latter's denoting only a quality. The phraſes, "*loving* to give as well as to receive," "*moving* in haſte," "*heated* with liquor," contain participles giving the idea of time; but the epithets contained in the expreſſions, "a *loving* child," "a *moving* ſpectacle," "a *heated* imagination," mark ſimply the qualities referred to, without any regard to time; and may properly be called participial adjectives.

Participles not only convey the notion of time; but they alſo ſignify actions, and govern the caſes of pronouns, in the ſame manner as verbs do; and therefore ſhould be comprehended in the general name of verbs. That they are mere modes of the verb, is manifeſt, if our definition of a verb be admitted; for they ſignify being, doing, or ſuffering, with the deſignation of time ſuperadded. But if the eſſence of the verb, be made to conſiſt in affirmation or aſſertion, not only the participle will be excluded from its place in the verb, but the infinitive itſelf alſo; which certain ancient grammarians of great authority held to be alone the genuine verb.

The following phraſes, even when conſidered in themſelves, ſhow that participles include the idea of time; "The letter *being written*, or *having been written*;" "Charles *being writing*, *having written*, or *having been writing*." But when arranged in an entire ſentence, which they muſt be to make a complete ſenſe, they ſhow it ſtill more evidently: as, "Charles *having written* the letter, ſealed and deſpatched it."—The participle does indeed aſſociate with different tenſes of the verb: as, "I am writing," "I was

* When this participle is joined to the verb *to have*, it is called *perfect*; when it is joined to the verb *to be*, or underſtood with it, it is denominated *paſſive*.

writing," "I shall be writing:" but this forms no just objection to its denoting time. If the time of it is often relative time, this circumstance, far from disproving, supports our position.* *See observations under Rule 13 of Syntax.*

Participles sometimes perform the office of substantives, and are used as such; as in the following instances: "The *beginning;*" "a good *understanding;*" "excellent *writing;*" "The chancellor's *being attached* to the king secured his crown:" "The general's *having failed* in this enterprise occasioned his disgrace;" "John's *having been writing* a long time had wearied him."

That the words in italics of the three latter examples, perform the office of substantives, and may be considered as such, will be evident, if we reflect, that the first of them has exactly the same meaning and construction as, "The chancellor's attachment to the king secured his crown;" and that the other examples will bear a similar construction. The words, *being attached*, govern the word *chancellor's* in the possessive case, in the one instance, as clearly as *attachment* governs it in that case, in the other: and it is only substantives, or words and phrases which operate as substantives, that govern the genitive or possessive case.

The following sentence is not precisely the same as the above, either in sense or construction, though, except the genitive case, the words are the same; "The chancellor, being attached to the king, secured his crown." In the former, the words, *being attached*, form the nominative case to the verb, and are stated as the cause of the effect; in the latter, they are not the nominative case, and make only a circumstance to *chancellor*, which is the proper nominative. It may not be improper to add another form of this sentence, by which the learner may better understand the peculiar nature and form of each of these modes of expression: "The chancellor being attached to the

* From the very nature of time, an action may be *present now*, it may *have been present formerly*, or it may *be present* at some *future period*—yet whoever supposed, that the present of the indicative denotes no time? *Encyclopædia Britannica.*

king, his crown was ſecured." This conſtitutes what is properly called, the Caſe Abſolute.

SECT. 4. *Remarks on the Potential Mood.*

THAT the Potential Mood ſhould be ſeparated from the ſubjunctive, is evident, from the complexneſs and confuſion which are produced by their being blended together, and from the diſtinct nature of the two moods; the former of which may be expreſſed without any condition, ſuppoſition, &c. as will appear from the following inſtances: "They *might* have done better;" "We *may* always act uprightly;" "He was generous, and *would* not take revenge;" "We *ſhould* reſiſt the allurements of vice;" "I *could* formerly indulge myſelf in things, of which I *cannot* now think but with pain."

Some grammarians have ſuppoſed that the Potential Mood, as diſtinguiſhed above from the Subjunctive, coincides with the Indicative. But as the latter "ſimply indicates or declares a thing," it is manifeſt that the former, which modifies the declaration, and introduces an idea materially diſtinct from it, muſt be conſiderably different. "I *can* walk," "I *ſhould* walk," appear to be ſo eſſentially diſtinct from the ſimplicity of, "I walk," "I walked," as to warrant a correſpondent diſtinction of moods. The Imperative and Infinitive Moods, which are allowed to retain their rank, do not appear to contain ſuch ſtrong marks of diſcrimination from the Indicative, as are found in the Potential Mood.

There are other writers on this ſubject, who exclude the Potential Mood from their diviſion, becauſe it is formed, not by varying the principal verb, but by means of the auxiliary verbs *may*, *can*, *might*, *could*, *would*, &c.: but if we recollect, that moods are uſed "to ſignify various intentions of the mind, and various modifications and circumſtances of action," we ſhall perceive that theſe auxiliaries, far from interfering with this deſign, do, in the cleareſt manner, ſupport and exemplify it. On the reaſon alleged by theſe writers, the greater part of the Indicative Mood muſt alſo be excluded; as but a ſmall part of it is

conjugated without auxiliaries. The Subjunctive too will fare no better; ſince it ſo nearly reſembles the Indicative, and is formed by means of conjunctions, expreſſed or underſtood, which do not more effectually ſhow the varied intentions of the mind, than the auxiliaries do which are uſed to form the Potential Mood.

Some writers have given our moods a much greater extent than we have aſſigned to them. They aſſert that the Engliſh language may be ſaid, without any great impropriety, to have as many moods as it has auxiliary verbs; and they allege, in ſupport of their opinion, that the compound expreſſions which they help to form, point out thoſe various diſpoſitions and actions, which, in other languages, are expreſſed by moods. This would be to multiply the moods without advantage. It is, however, certain, that the conjugation or variation of verbs, in the Engliſh language, is effected, almoſt entirely, by the means of auxiliaries. We muſt, therefore, accommodate ourſelves to this circumſtance; and do that by their aſſiſtance, which has been done in the learned languages, (a few inſtances to the contrary excepted,) in another manner, namely, by varying the form of the verb itſelf. At the ſame time, it is neceſſary to ſet proper bounds to this buſineſs, ſo as not to occaſion obſcurity and perplexity, when we mean to be ſimple and perſpicuous. Inſtead, therefore, of making a ſeparate mood for every auxiliary verb, and introducing moods *Interrogative, Optative, Promiſſive, Hortative, Precative*, &c. we have exhibited ſuch only as are obviouſly diſtinct; and which, whilſt they are calculated to unfold and diſplay the ſubject intelligibly to the learner, ſeem to be ſufficient, and not more than ſufficient, to anſwer all the purpoſes for which moods were introduced.

From Grammarians who form their ideas, and make their deciſions, reſpecting this part of Engliſh Grammar, on the principles and conſtruction of languages, which, in theſe points, do not ſuit the peculiar nature of our own, but differ conſiderably from it, we may very naturally expect grammatical ſchemes that are neither perſpicuous nor conſiſtent, and which will tend more to perplex than inform the learner. See pages 84, 85.

Sect. 5. *Of the Tenſes.*

Tense, being the diſtinction of time, might ſeem to admit only of the preſent, paſt, and future; but to mark it more accurately, it is made to conſiſt of ſix variations, viz. the PRESENT, the IMPERFECT, the PERFECT, the PLUPERFECT, and the FIRST and SECOND FUTURE TENSES.

The Preſent Tenſe repreſents an action or event as paſſing at the time in which it is mentioned: as, "I rule; I am ruled; I think; I fear."

The preſent tenſe likewiſe expreſſes a character, quality, &c. at preſent exiſting: as, "He is an able man;" "She is an amiable woman." It is alſo uſed in ſpeaking of actions continued, with occaſional intermiſſions, to the preſent time: as, "He frequently rides;" "He walks out every morning;" "He goes into the country every ſummer." We ſometimes apply this tenſe even to perſons long ſince dead: as, "Seneca reaſons and moralizes well;" "Job ſpeaks feelingly of his afflictions."

The preſent tenſe, preceded by the words, *when*, *before*, *after*, *as ſoon as*, &c. is ſometimes uſed to point out the relative time of a future action: as, "*When* he arrives he will hear the news;" "He will hear the news *before* he arrives, or *as ſoon as* he arrives, or, at fartheſt, *ſoon after* he arrives;" "The more ſhe *improves*, the more amiable ſhe will be."

In animated hiſtorical narrations, this tenſe is ſometimes ſubſtituted for the imperfect tenſe: as, "He *enters* the territory of the peaceable inhabitants; he *fights* and *conquers*, *takes* an immenſe booty, which he *divides* amongſt his ſoldiers, and *returns* home to enjoy an empty triumph."

The Imperfect Tenſe repreſents the action or event, either as paſt and finiſhed, or as remaining unfiniſhed at a certain time paſt: as, "I loved her

for her modeſty and virtue;" "They were travelling poſt when he met them."

The Perfect Tenſe not only refers to what is paſt, but alſo conveys an alluſion to the preſent time: as, "I have finiſhed my letter;" "I have ſeen the perſon that was recommended to me."

In the former example, it is ſignified that the finiſhing of the letter, though paſt, was at a period immediately, or very nearly, preceding the preſent time. In the latter inſtance, it is uncertain whether the perſon mentioned was ſeen by the ſpeaker a long or ſhort time before. The meaning is, "I have ſeen him ſome time in the courſe of a period, which includes, or comes to, the preſent time." When the particular time of any occurrence is ſpecified, as prior to the preſent time, this tenſe is not uſed: for it would be improper to ſay, "I *have ſeen* him yeſterday;" or, "I *have finiſhed* my work laſt week." In theſe caſes the imperfect is neceſſary: as, "I *ſaw* him yeſterday;" "I *finiſhed* my work laſt week." But when we ſpeak indefinitely of any thing paſt, as happening or not happening in the day, year, or age, in which we mention it, the perfect muſt be employed: as, "I *have been* there this morning;" "I *have travelled* much this year:" "We *have eſcaped* many dangers through life." In referring, however, to ſuch a diviſion of the day as is paſt before the time of our ſpeaking, we uſe the imperfect: as, "They *came* home this morning;" "He *was* with them this afternoon."

The perfect tenſe, and the imperfect tenſe, both denote a thing that is paſt; but the former denotes it in ſuch a manner, that there is ſtill actually remaining ſome part of the time to ſlide away, wherein we declare the thing has been done; whereas the imperfect denotes the thing or action paſt in ſuch a manner, that nothing remains of that time in which it was done. If we ſpeak of the preſent century, we ſay, "Philoſophers *have made* great diſcoveries in the preſent century:" but if we ſpeak of the laſt century, we ſay, "Philoſophers *made* great diſcoveries in the laſt cen-

tury." "He *has been* much afflicted this year;" "I *have* this week *read* the king's proclamation;" "I *have heard* great news this morning:" in these instances, "He *has been*," "I *have read*," and "*heard*," denote things that are past: but they occurred in this year, in this week, and to-day; and still there remains a part of this year, week, and day whereof I speak.

In general, the perfect tense may be applied wherever the action is connected with the present time, by the actual existence, either of the author, or of the work, though it may have been performed many centuries ago; but if neither the author nor the work now remains, it cannot be used. We may say, "Cicero *has written* orations;" but we cannot say, "Cicero *has written* poems;" because the orations are in being, but the poems are lost. Speaking of priests in general, we may say, "They *have* in all ages *claimed* great powers;" because the general order of the priesthood still exists: but if we speak of the Druids, or any particular order of priests, which does not now exist, we cannot use this tense. We cannot say, "The Druid priests *have claimed* great powers; but must say, "The Druid priests *claimed* great powers;" because that order is now totally extinct. See PICKBOURN *on the English verb.*

The Pluperfect Tense represents a thing, not only as past, but also as prior to some other point of time specified in the sentence: as, "I had finished my letter before he arrived."

The First Future Tense represents the action as yet to come, either with or without respect to the precise time: as, "The sun will rise to-morrow;" "I shall see them again."

The Second Future intimates that the action will be fully accomplished, at or before the time of another future action or event: as, "I shall have dined at one o'clock;" "The two houses will

have finiſhed their buſineſs, when the king comes to prorogue them."

It is to be obſerved, that in the ſubjunctive mood, the event being ſpoken of under a condition or ſuppoſition, or in the form of a wiſh, and therefore as doubtful and contingent, the verb itſelf in the preſent, and the auxiliary both of the preſent and paſt imperfect times, often carry with them ſomewhat of a future tenſe: as, "If he come to-morrow, I may ſpeak to him;" "If he ſhould, or would come to-morrow, I might, would, could, or ſhould ſpeak to him." Obſerve alſo, that the auxiliaries *ſhould* and *would*, in the imperfect times, are uſed to expreſs the preſent and future as well as the paſt: as, "It is my deſire, that he ſhould, or would, come now, or to-morrow;" as well as, "It was my deſire, that he ſhould or would come yeſterday." So that in this mood the preciſe time of the verb is very much determined by the nature and drift of the ſentence.

The preſent, paſt, and future tenſes, may be uſed either *definitely* or *indefinitely*, both with reſpect to *time and action*. When they denote cuſtoms or habits, and not individual acts, they are applied indefinitely: as, "Virtue *promotes* happineſs;" "The old Romans *governed* by benefits more than by fear;" "I *ſhall* hereafter *employ* my time more uſefully." In theſe examples, the words, *promotes*, *governed*, and *ſhall employ*, are uſed indefinitely, both in regard to action and time; for they are not confined to individual actions, nor to any preciſe points of preſent, paſt, or future time. When they are applied to ſignify particular actions, and to aſcertain the preciſe points of time to which they are confined, they are uſed definitely; as in the following inſtances. "My brother *is writing*;" "He *built* the houſe laſt ſummer, but did not *inhabit* it till yeſterday." "He *will write* another letter to-morrow."

The different tenſes alſo repreſent an action as *complete* or *perfect*, or as *incomplete* or *imperfect*. In the phraſes, "I am writing," "I was writing," I ſhall be writing," imperfect, unfiniſhed actions are ſignified. But the follow-

ing examples, "I wrote," "I have written," "I had written," "I ſhall have written," all denote complete perfect action.

From the preceding repreſentation of the different tenſes, it appears, that each of them has its diſtinct and peculiar province; and that though ſome of them may ſometimes be uſed promiſcuouſly, or ſubſtituted one for another, in caſes where great accuracy is not required, yet there is a real and eſſential difference in their meaning.—It is alſo evident, that the Engliſh language contains the ſix tenſes which we have enumerated. Grammarians who limit the number to two or three, do not reflect that the Engliſh verb is moſtly compoſed of principal and auxiliary; and that theſe ſeveral parts conſtitute one verb. Either the Engliſh language has no future tenſe, (a poſition too abſurd to need refutation,) or *that* future tenſe is compoſed of the auxiliary and the principal verb. If the latter be true, as it indiſputably is, then auxiliary and principal united, conſtitute a tenſe, in one inſtance; and, from reaſon and analogy, may doubtleſs do ſo, in others, in which minuter diviſions of time are neceſſary, or uſeful. What reaſon can be aſſigned for not conſidering this caſe, as other caſes, in which a whole is regarded as compoſed of ſeveral parts, or of principal and adjuncts? There is nothing heterogeneous in the parts: and precedent, analogy, utility, and even neceſſity, authoriſe the union.

In ſupport of this opinion, we have the authority of eminent grammarians; in particular, that of Dr. Beattie. "Some writers," ſays the doctor, "will not allow any thing to be a tenſe, but what, in one inflected word, expreſſes an affirmation with time; for that thoſe parts of the verb are not properly called tenſes, which aſſume that appearance, by means of auxiliary words. At this rate, we ſhould have, in Engliſh, two tenſes only, the preſent and the paſt in the active verb, and in the paſſive no tenſes at all. But this is a needleſs nicety; and, if adopted, would introduce confuſion into the grammatical art. If *amaveram* be a tenſe, why ſhould not *amatus fueram?* If *I heard* be a tenſe, *I did hear*, *I have heard*, and *I ſhall hear*, muſt be equally intitled to that appellation."

The proper form of a tenſe, in the Greek and Latin tongues, is certainly that which it has in the grammars of thoſe languages. But in the Greek and Latin grammars, we uniformly find, that ſome of the tenſes are formed by variations of the principal verb; and others, by the addition of helping verbs. It is, therefore, indiſputable, that the principal verb or the participle, and an auxiliary, conſtitute a regular tenſe in the Greek and Latin languages. This point being eſtabliſhed, we may, doubtleſs, apply it to Engliſh verbs; and extend the principle as far as convenience, and the idiom of our language require.

If it ſhould be ſaid, that, on the ſame ground that a participle and auxiliary are allowed to form a tenſe, and the verb conjugated accordingly, the Engliſh noun ought to be declined with articles and prepoſitions; we muſt object to the inference. Such a mode of declenſion cannot apply to our language. This we think has already been proved.* It is alſo confeſſedly inapplicable to the learned languages. Where then is the grammatical inconſiſtency, or the want of conformity to the principles of analogy, in making ſome tenſes of the Engliſh verb to conſiſt of principal and auxiliary; and all the caſes of Engliſh nouns, in their termination? The argument from analogy, inſtead of militating againſt us, appears to confirm and eſtabliſh our poſition. See the ſubject further diſcuſſed in the ninth ſection of this chapter.

We ſhall cloſe theſe remarks on the tenſes, with a few obſervations extracted from the ENCYCLOPÆDIA BRITANNICA. They are worth the ſtudent's attention, as a part of them applies, not only to our explanation of the tenſes, but to many other parts of the work. "Harris has enumerated no fewer than twelve tenſes. Of this enumeration we can by no means approve: for, without entering into a minute examination of it, nothing can be more obvious, than that his *inceptive preſent*, "I am going to write," is a future tenſe; and his *completive preſent*, "I have written, a paſt tenſe. But, as was before obſerved of the

* See page 54.

claſſification of words, we cannot help being of opinion, that, to take the tenſes as they are commonly received, and endeavour to aſcertain their nature and their differences, is a much more uſeful exerciſe, as well as more proper for a work of this kind, than to raiſe, as might eaſily be raiſed, new theories on this ſubject."

SECT. 6. *The Conjugation of the auxiliary verbs* TO HAVE *and* TO BE.

THE Conjugation of a verb, is the regular combination and arrangement of its ſeveral numbers, perſons, moods, and tenſes.

The Conjugation of an active verb is ſtyled the ACTIVE VOICE; and that of a paſſive verb, the PASSIVE VOICE.

The auxiliary and active verb TO HAVE, is conjugated in the following manner.

TO HAVE.

Indicative Mood.

Preſent Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. *Pers.* I have.	1. We have.
2. *Pers.* Thou haſt.	2. Ye *or* you have.*
3. *Pers.* He, ſhe, *or* it hath *or* has.*	3. They have.

Imperfect Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I had.	1. We had.
2. Thou hadſt.	2. Ye *or* you had.
3. He, &c. had.	3. They had.

* *Hath* is now uſed only in poetry, and on very ſerious ſubjects. *Ye* is nearly obſolete.

Perfect Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I have had.	1. We have had.
2. Thou haſt had.	2. Ye *or* you have had.
3. He has had.	3. They have had.

Pluperfect Tenſe.†

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I had had.	1. We had had.
2. Thou hadſt had.	2. Ye *or* you had had.
3. He had had.	3. They had had.

Firſt Future Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I ſhall *or* will have.	1. We ſhall *or* will have.
2. Thou ſhalt *or* wilt have.	2. Ye *or* you ſhall *or* will have.
3. He ſhall *or* will have.	3. They ſhall *or* will have.

Second Future Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I ſhall *or* will have had.	1. We ſhall *or* will have had.
2. Thou ſhalt *or* wilt have had.	2. Ye *or* you ſhall *or* will have had.
3. He ſhall *or* will have had.	3. They ſhall *or* will have had.

Imperative Mood.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. Let me have.	1. Let us have.
2. Have, *or* have thou, *or* do thou have.	2. Have, *or* have ye, *or* do ye *or* you have.
3. Let him have.	3. Let them have.

The imperative mood is not ſtrictly entitled to *three* perſons. The command is always addreſſed to the *ſecond*

† Some Grammarians diſtinguiſh the three paſt tenſes, by the names of the *firſt preterit*, the *ſecond preterit*, the *third preterit*; and the firſt and ſecond future tenſes, by the terms, *future imperfect*, and *future perfect*.

perſon, not to the firſt or third. For when we ſay, "Let me have," "Let him, or let them have," the meaning and conſtruction are, *do thou*, or *do ye*, let me, him, or them have. In philoſophical ſtrictneſs, both number and perſon might be entirely excluded from every verb. They are, in fact, the properties of ſubſtantives, not a part of the eſſence of a verb. Even the name of the *imperative* mood, does not always correſpond to its nature: for it ſometimes *petitions* as well as commands. But with reſpect to all theſe points, the practice of our grammarians is ſo uniformly fixed, and ſo analagous to the languages, ancient and modern, which our youth have to ſtudy, that it would be an unwarrantable degree of innovation, to deviate from the eſtabliſhed terms and arrangements. See the *advertiſement* at the end of the Introduction, page 8; and the quotation from the Encyclopædia Britannica, pages 85, 86..

Potential Mood.

Preſent Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I may *or* can have.	1. We may *or* can have.
2. Thou mayſt *or* canſt have.	2. Ye *or* you may or can have.
3. He may *or* can have.	3. They may *or* can have.

Imperfect Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I might, could, would, *or* ſhould have.	1. We might, could, would, *or* ſhould have.
2. Thou mightſt, couldſt, wouldſt, *or* ſhouldſt have.	2. Ye *or* you might, could, would *or* ſhould have.
3. He might, could, would, *or* ſhould have.	3. They might, could, would, *or* ſhould have.

Perfect Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I may *or* can have had.	1. We may *or* can have had.
2. Thou mayſt *or* canſt have had.	2. Ye *or* you may *or* can have had.
3. He may *or* can have had.	3. They may *or* can have had.

Pluperfect Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I might, could, would, *or* ſhould have had.	1. We might, could, would, *or* ſhould have had.
2. Thou mightſt, couldſt, wouldſt, *or* ſhouldſt have had.	2. Ye *or* you might, could, would, *or* ſhould have had.
3. He might, could, would, *or* ſhould have had.	3. They might, could, would, *or* ſhould have had.*

Subjunctive Mood.

Preſent Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. If I have.	1. If we have.
2. If thou have.	2. If ye *or* you have.
3. If he have.	3. If they have.

The remaining tenſes of the ſubjunctive mood are, in every reſpect, ſimilar to the correſpondent tenſes of the indicative mood; with the addition to the verb, of a conjunction, expreſſed or implied, denoting a condition, motive, wiſh, ſuppoſition, &c. It will be proper to direct the learner to repeat all the tenſes of this mood, with a conjunction prefixed to each of them. See, on this ſubject, the obſervations at page 102; and the notes on the nineteenth rule of Syntax.

Infinitive Mood.

Preſent. To have. *Perfect.* To have had.

---

* *Shall* and *will*, when they denote inclination, reſolution, promiſe, may be conſidered, as well as their relations *ſhould* and *would*, as belonging to the potential mood. But as they generally ſignify futurity, they have been appropriated, as helping verbs, to the formation of the future tenſes of the indicative and ſubjunctive moods.

Participles.

Preſent or Active.	Having.
Perfect.	Had.
Compound Perfect.	Having had.

As the ſubjunctive mood, in Engliſh, has no variation in the form of the verb, from the indicative, (except in the preſent tenſe of verbs generally, and the preſent and imperfect tenſes of the verb *to be*,) it would be ſuperfluous to conjugate it in this work, through every tenſe. But all the other moods and tenſes of the verbs, both in the active and paſſive voices, are conjugated at large, that the learners may have no doubts or miſapprehenſions reſpecting their particular forms. They to whom the ſubject of grammar is entirely new, and young perſons eſpecially, are much more readily and effectually inſtructed, by ſeeing the parts of a ſubject ſo eſſential as the verb, unfolded and ſpread before them, in all their varieties, than by being generally and curſorily informed of the manner in which they may be exhibited. The time employed by the ſcholars, in conſequence of this diſplay of the verbs, is of ſmall moment compared with the advantages, which they will probably derive from the plan.

It may not, however, be generally proper for young perſons beginning the ſtudy of grammar, to commit to memory all the tenſes of the verbs. If the *ſimple* tenſes, namely, the *preſent* and the *imperfect*, together with the *firſt future tenſe*, ſhould, in the firſt inſtance, be committed to memory, and the reſt carefully peruſed and explained, the buſineſs will not be tedious to the ſcholars, and their progreſs will be rendered more obvious and pleaſing. The general view of the ſubject, thus acquired and impreſſed, may afterwards be extended with eaſe and advantage.

It appears to be proper, for the information of the learners, to make a few obſervations in this place, on ſome of the tenſes, &c. The firſt is, that ſome grammarians confound the imperfect and perfect tenſes of the potential mood with the preſent tenſe: but that they are really diſtinct, and have an appropriate reference to time, cor-

reſpondent to the definitions of thoſe tenſes, will appear from a few examples: "I wiſhed him to ſtay, but he *would* not;" "I *could* not accompliſh the buſineſs in time;" "It was my direction that he *ſhould* ſubmit;" "He was ill, but I thought he *might* live;" "I *may have miſunderſtood* him;" "He *may have deceived* me;" "I *cannot have dreamed* it;" "He *cannot have obtained* it by force;" "*Can* we *have been deceived* in him?"—Theſe examples ſhow, that the imperfect and perfect tenſes of the potential mood, are eſſentially diſtinct from the pluperfect, as well as from the preſent tenſe of that mood.

The next remark is, that the auxiliary *will*, in the firſt perſon ſingular and plural of the ſecond future tenſe; and the auxiliary *ſhall*, in the ſecond and third perſons of that tenſe, in the indicative mood, appear to be incorrectly applied. The impropriety of ſuch aſſociations may be inferred from a few examples: "I *will* have had previous notice, whenever the event happens;" "Thou *ſhalt* have ſerved thy apprenticeſhip before the end of the year;" "He *ſhall* have completed his buſineſs when the meſſenger arrives." "I *ſhall* have had; thou *wilt* have ſerved; he *will* have completed," &c. would have been correct and applicable. The peculiar import of theſe auxiliaries, as explained in page 98, under ſection 7, ſeems to account for their impropriety in the applications juſt mentioned.

Some writers on Grammar object to the propriety of admitting the ſecond future, in both the indicative and ſubjunctive moods: but that this tenſe is applicable to both moods, will be manifeſt from the following examples. "John will have earned his wages the next new-year's day," is a ſimple declaration, and therefore in the indicative mood: "If he ſhall have finiſhed his work when the bell rings, he will be entitled to the reward," is conditional and contingent, and is therefore in the ſubjunctive mood.

We ſhall conclude theſe detached obſervations, with one remark which may be uſeful to the young ſcholar, namely, that as the indicative mood is converted into the ſubjunctive, by the expreſſion of a condition, ſuppoſition, wiſh, motive, &c. being ſuperadded to it; ſo the potential mood may, in like manner, be turned into the ſubjunctive; as

will be ſeen in the following examples: "If I could deceive him, I ſhould abhor it;" "Though he ſhould increaſe in wealth, he would not be charitable;" "Even in proſperity he would gain no eſteem, unleſs he ſhould conduct himſelf better."

The auxiliary and neuter verb *To be*, is conjugated as follows:

TO BE.

Indicative Mood.

Preſent Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I am.	1. We are.
2. Thou art.	2. Ye *or* you are.
3. He, ſhe, *or* it is.	3. They are.

Imperfect Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I was.	1. We were.
2. Thou waſt.	2. Ye *or* you were.
3. He was.	3. They were.

Perfect Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I have been.	1. We have been.
2. Thou haſt been.	2. Ye *or* you have been.
3. He hath *or* has been.	3. They have been.

Pluperfect Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I had been.	1. We had been.
2. Thou hadſt been.	2. Ye *or* you had been.
3. He had been.	3. They had been.

Firſt Future Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I ſhall *or* will be.	1. We ſhall *or* will be.
2. Thou ſhalt *or* wilt be.	2. Ye *or* you ſhall *or* will be.
3. He ſhall *or* will be.	3. They ſhall *or* will be.

Second Future Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I ſhall *or* will have been.	1. We ſhall *or* will have been.
2. Thou ſhalt *or* wilt have been.	2. Ye *or* you ſhall *or* will have been.
3. He ſhall *or* will have been.	3. They ſhall *or* will have been.

Imperative Mood.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. Let me be.	1. Let us be.
2. Be thou *or* do thou be.	2. Be ye or you, *or* do ye be.
3. Let him be.	3. Let them be.

Potential Mood.

Preſent Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I may *or* can be.	1. We may *or* can be.
2. Thou mayſt *or* canſt be.	2. Ye *or* you may *or* can be.
3. He may *or* can be.	3. They may *or* can be.

Imperfect Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I might, could, would, *or* ſhould be.	1. We might, could, would, *or* ſhould be.
2. Thou mightſt, couldſt, wouldſt, *or* ſhouldſt be.	2. Ye *or* you might, could, would, *or* ſhould be.
3. He might, could, would, *or* ſhould be.	3. They might, could, would, *or* ſhould be.

Perfect Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I may *or* can have been.	1. We may *or* can have been.
2. Thou mayſt *or* canſt have been.	2. Ye *or* you may *or* can have been.
3. He may *or* can have been.	3. They may *or* can have been.

Pluperfect Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I might, could, would, *or* ſhould have been.	1. We might, could, would, *or* ſhould have been.
2. Thou mightſt, couldſt, wouldſt, *or* ſhouldſt have been.	2. Ye *or* you might, could, would, *or* ſhould have been.
3. He might, could, would, *or* ſhould have been.	3. They might, could, would, *or* ſhould have been.

Subjunctive Mood.

Preſent Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. If I be.	1. If we be.
2. If thou be.	2. If ye *or* you be.
3. If he be.	3. If they be.

Imperfect Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. If I were.	1. If we were.
2. If thou wert.	2. If ye *or* you were.
3. If he were.	3. If they were.

The remaining tenſes of this mood are, in every reſpect, ſimilar to the correſpondent tenſes of the Indicative mood. See pages 90, 102, and the notes under the nineteenth rule of ſyntax.

Infinitive Mood.

Preſent Tenſe. To be. *Perfect.* To have been.

Participles.

Preſent. Being. *Perfect.* Been.
Compound Perfect. Having been.

SECT. 7. *The auxiliary Verbs conjugated in their ſimple form; with obſervations on their peculiar nature and force.*

THE learner will perceive that the preceding auxiliary verbs, *to have* and *to be*, could not be conjugated through all the moods and tenſes, without the help of other auxiliary verbs; namely, *may, can, will, ſhall,* and their variations.

That auxiliary verbs, in their ſimple ſtate, and unaſſiſted by others, are of a very limited extent, and chiefly uſeful from the aid which they afford in conjugating the principal verbs, will clearly appear to the ſcholar, by a diſtinct conjugation of each of them, uncombined with any other. They are exhibited for his inſpection; not to be committed to memory.

TO HAVE.

Preſent Tenſe.

Sing. 1. I have.	2. Thou haſt.	3. He hath *or* has.
Plur. 1. We have.	2. Ye *or* you have.	3. They have.

Imperfect Tenſe.

Sing. 1. I had.	2. Thou hadſt.	3. He had.
Plur. 1. We had.	2. Ye *or* you had.	3. They had.

Participles.

Preſent. Having. *Perfect.* Had.

TO BE.

Preſent Tenſe.

Sing. 1. I am.	2. Thou art.	3. He is.
Plur. 1. We are.	2. Ye *or* you are.	3. They are.

Imperfect. Tenſe.

Sing. 1. I was.	2. Thou waſt.	3. He was.
Plur. 1. We were.	2. Ye *or* you were.	3. They were.

Participles.

Preſent. Being. *Perfect.* Been.

SHALL.

Preſent Tenſe.

Sing.	1. I ſhall.*	2. Thou ſhalt.	3. He ſhall.
Plur.	1. We ſhall.	2. Ye *or* you ſhall.	3. They ſhall.

Imperfect Tenſe.

Sing.	1. I ſhould.	2. Thou ſhouldſt.	3. He ſhould.
Plur.	1. We ſhould.	2. Ye *or* you ſhould.	3. They ſhould.

WILL.

Preſent Tenſe.

Sing.	1. I will.	2. Thou wilt.	3. He will.
Plur.	1. We will.	2. Ye *or* you will.	3. They will.

Imperfect Tenſe.

Sing.	1. I would.	2. Thou wouldſt.	3. He would.
Plur.	1. We would.	2. Ye *or* you would.	3. They would.

MAY.

Preſent Tenſe.

Sing.	1. I may.	2. Thou mayſt.	3. He may.
Plur.	1. We may.	2. Ye *or* you may.	3. They may.

Imperfect Tenſe.

Sing.	1. I might.	2. Thou mightſt.	3. He might.
Plur.	1. We might.	2. Ye *or* you might.	3. They might.

---

* *Shall* is here properly uſed in the preſent tenſe, having the ſame analogy to *ſhould* that *can* has to *could*, *may* to *might*, and *will* to *would*.

CAN.

Preſent Tenſe.

Sing. 1. I can.	2. Thou canſt.	3. He can.
Plur. 1. We can.	2. Ye *or* you can.	3. They can.

Imperfect Tenſe.

Sing. 1. I could.	2. Thou couldſt.	3. He could.
Plur. 1. We could.	2. Ye *or* you could.	3. They could.

TO DO.

Preſent Tenſe.

Sing. 1. I do.	2. Thou doſt.	3. He doth *or* does.
Plur. 1. We do.	2. Ye *or* you do.	3. They do.

Imperfect Tenſe.

Sing. 1. I did.	2. Thou didſt.	3. He did.
Plur. 1. We did.	2. Ye *or* you did.	3. They did.

Participles.

Preſent. Doing. *Perfect.* Done.

The verbs *have*, *be*, *will*, and *do*, when they are unconnected with a principal verb, expreſſed or underſtood, are not auxiliaries, but principal verbs: as, "We *have* enough;" "I *am* grateful;" "He *wills* it to be ſo;" "They *do* as they pleaſe." In this view, they alſo have their auxiliaries: as, "I *ſhall have* enough;" "I *will be* grateful," &c.

The peculiar force of the ſeveral auxiliaries will appear from the following account of them.

Do and *did* mark the action itſelf, or the time of it, with greater energy and poſitiveneſs: as, "I *do* ſpeak truth;" "I *did* reſpect him;" "Here am I, for thou *didſt* call me." They are of great uſe in negative ſentences: as, "I *do not* fear;" "I *did not* write. They are almoſt univerſally employed in aſking queſtions: as, "*Does* he learn?" *Did* he not write?" They ſometimes alſo ſupply the place of another verb, and make the repetition of it, in the ſame or a ſubſequent ſentence, unneceſſary: as, "You attend not to your ſtudies as he *does*;" (i. e. as he

attends, &c.) "I ſhall come if I can; but if I *do not*, pleaſe to excuſe me;" (i. e. if I come not.)

Let not only expreſſes permiſſion, but entreating, exhorting, commanding: as, "Let us know the truth;" "Let me die the death of the righteous;" "Let not thy heart be too much elated with ſucceſs;" "Let thy inclination ſubmit to thy duty."

May and *might* expreſs the poſſibility or liberty of doing a thing; *can* and *could*, the power: as, "It may rain;" "I may write or read;" "He might have improved more than he has;" "He can write much better than he could laſt year."

Muſt is ſometimes called in for a helper, and denotes neceſſity: as, "We muſt ſpeak the truth, whenever we do ſpeak, and we muſt not prevaricate."

Will, in the firſt perſon ſingular and plural, intimates reſolution and promiſing; in the ſecond and third perſon, only foretels: as, "I will reward the good, and will puniſh the wicked;" "We will remember benefits, and be grateful;" "Thou wilt, or he will, repent of that folly;" "You or they will have a pleaſant walk."

Shall, on the contrary, in the firſt perſon, ſimply foretels; in the ſecond and third perſons, promiſes, commands, or threatens: as, "I ſhall go abroad;" "We ſhall dine at home;" "Thou ſhalt, or you ſhall, inherit the land;" "Ye ſhall do juſtice, and love mercy;" "They ſhall account for their miſconduct." The following paſſage is not tranſlated according to the diſtinct and proper meanings of the words *ſhall* and *will*: "Surely goodneſs and mercy ſhall follow me all the days of my life; and I will dwell in the houſe of the Lord for ever;" it ought to be, "*Will* follow me," and "I *ſhall* dwell."

Theſe obſervations reſpecting the import of the verbs *will* and *ſhall*, muſt be underſtood of explicative ſentences; for when the ſentence is interrogative, juſt the reverſe, for the moſt part, takes place: thus, "I *ſhall* go; you *will* go;" expreſs event only: but, "*will* you go?" imports

intention; and, "*ſhall* I go?" refers to the will of another. But, "He *ſhall* go," and "*ſhall* he go?" both imply will; expreſſing or referring to a command.

When the verb is put in the ſubjunctive mood, the meaning of theſe auxiliaries likewiſe undergoes ſome alteration; as the learners will readily perceive by a few examples: "If he *ſhall* proceed;" "If he *will* not deſiſt;" "unleſs he *ſhall* acknowledge;" "If you *ſhall* conſent;" "If you *will* perſiſt."

Would, primarily denotes inclination of will; and *ſhould* obligation: but they both vary their import, and are often uſed to expreſs ſimple event.

SECT. 8. *The Conjugation of regular Verbs.*

ACTIVE.

VERBS Active are called Regular, when they form their imperfect tenſe of the indicative mood, and their perfect participle, by adding to the verb, *ed*, or *d* only when the verb ends in *e*; as,

Preſent.	Imperfect.	Perf. Particip.
I favour.	I favoured.	Favoured.
I love.	I loved.	Loved.

A Regular Active Verb is conjugated in the following manner.

TO LOVE.

Indicative Mood.

Preſent Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I love.*	1. We love.
2. Thou loveſt.	2. Ye *or* you love.
3. He, ſhe, *or* it, loveth *or* loves.	3. They love.

* In the preſent and imperfect tenſes, we uſe a different form of the verb, when we mean to expreſs energy and poſitiveneſs: as "I *do* love; thou *doſt* love; he *does* love; I *did* love; thou *didſt* love; he *did* love."

Imperfect Tense.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I loved.	1. We loved.
2. Thou lovedſt.	2. Ye *or* you loved.
3. He loved.	3. They loved.

Perfect Tense.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I have loved.	1. We have loved.
2. Thou haſt loved.	2. Ye *or* you have loved.
3. He hath *or* has loved.	3. They have loved.

Pluperfect Tense.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I had loved.	1. We had loved.
2. Thou hadſt loved.	2. Ye *or* you had loved.
3. He had loved.	3. They had loved.

Firſt Future Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I ſhall *or* will love.	1. We ſhall *or* will love.
2. Thou ſhalt *or* wilt love.	2. Ye *or* you ſhall *or* will love.
3. He ſhall *or* will love.	3. They ſhall *or* will love.

Second Future Tense.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I ſhall *or* will have loved.	1. We ſhall *or* will have loved.
2. Thou ſhalt *or* wilt have loved.	2. Ye *or* you ſhall *or* will have loved.
3. He ſhall *or* will have loved.	3. They ſhall *or* will have loved.

Thoſe tenſes are called ſimple tenſes, which are formed of the verb itſelf, without the aſſiſtance of any other verb: as, "I love, I loved." The compound tenſes are ſuch as cannot be formed without the aſſiſtance of ſome other verb: as, "I *have* loved; I *had* loved; I *ſhall* or *will* love; I *may* love; I *may be* loved; I *may have been* loved;" &c. Theſe compounds are, however, to be conſidered as only different forms of the ſame verb.

Imperative Mood.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. Let me love.	1. Let us love.
2. Love, *or* love thou, *or* do thou love.	2. Love, *or* love ye *or* you, *or* do ye love.
3. Let him love.	3. Let them love.

Potential Mood.

Preſent Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I may *or* can love.	1. We may *or* can love.
2. Thou mayſt *or* canſt love.	2. Ye *or* you may *or* can love.
3. He may or can love.	3. They may *or* can love.

Imperfect Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I might, could, would, *or* ſhould love.	1. We might, could, would, *or* ſhould love.
2. Thou mightſt, couldſt, wouldſt, *or* ſhouldſt love.	2. Ye *or* you might, could, would, *or* ſhould love.
3. He might, could, would, *or* ſhould love.	3. They might, could, would, *or* ſhould love.

Perfect Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I may or can have loved.	1. We may *or* can have loved.
2. Thou mayſt *or* canſt have loved.	2. Ye *or* you may *or* can have loved.
3. He may *or* can have loved.	3. They may *or* can have loved.

Pluperfect Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I might, could, would, *or* ſhould have loved.	1. We might, could, would, *or* ſhould have loved.
2. Thou mightſt, couldſt, wouldſt, *or* ſhouldſt have loved.	2. Ye *or* you might, could, would, *or* ſhould have loved.
3. He might, could, would, *or* ſhould have loved.	3. They might, could, would, *or* ſhould have loved.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present Tense.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. If I love.	1. If we love.
2. If thou love.	2. If ye *or* you love.
3. If he love.	3. If they love.

The remaining tenses of this mood, are, in every respect, similar to the correspondent tenses of the indicative mood. See the following notes, and page 90.

Infinitive Mood.

Present. To love. *Perfect.* To have loved.

Participles.

Present. Loving. *Perfect.* Loved.
Compound Perfect. Having loved.

The active verb may be conjugated differently, by adding its present or active participle to the auxiliary verb *to be*, through all its moods and tenses; as, instead of "I teach, thou teacheſt, he teaches," &c.; we may say, "I am teaching, thou art teaching, he is teaching," &c.: and instead of "I taught," &c. "I was teaching," &c. and so on, through all the variations of the auxiliary. This mode of conjugation has, on particular occasions, a peculiar propriety; and contributes to the harmony and precision of the language. These forms of expression are adapted to particular acts, not to general habits, or affections of the mind. They are very frequently applied to neuter verbs; as, "I am musing; he is sleeping."*

Some grammarians apply, what is called the *conjunctive termination*, to the persons of the principal verb, and to its auxiliaries, through all the tenses of the subjunctive mood. But this is certainly contrary to the practice of

* As the participle, in this mode of conjugation, performs the office of a verb, through all the moods and tenses; and as it implies the idea of time, and governs the objective case of pronouns in the same manner as verbs do; is it not manifest, that it is a species or form of the verb, and that it cannot properly be considered as a distinct part of speech?

good writers. Johnſon applies this termination to the preſent and perfect tenſes only. Lowth reſtricts it entirely to the preſent tenſe; and Prieſtley confines it to the preſent and imperfect tenſes. This difference of opinion amongſt grammarians of ſuch eminence, may have contributed to that diverſity of practice, ſo obſervable in the uſe of the ſubjunctive mood. Uniformity in this point is highly deſirable. It would materially aſſiſt both teachers and learners; and would conſtitute a conſiderable improvement in our language.

On this ſubject we adopt the opinion of Doctor Lowth; and conceive we are fully warranted by his authority, and that of the moſt correct and elegant writers, in limiting the conjunctive termination to the ſecond and third perſons ſingular of the *preſent tenſe*. But, for the convenience of teachers who think that the perſons of all the three tenſes, in the ſubjunctive mood, are entitled to this diſtinctive termination, and for the inſpection of the curious ſtudent, we ſhall add here the form of conjugating thoſe three tenſes according to the views of ſuch tutors.

Subjunctive Mood.

Preſent Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. *If I love.*	1. *If we love.*
2. *If thou love.*	2. *If ye or you love.*
3. *If he love.*	3. *If they love.*

Imperfect Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. *If I loved.*	1. *If we loved.*
2. *If thou loved.*	2. *If ye* or *you loved.*
3. *If he loved.*	3. *If they loved.*

Perfect Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. *If I have loved.*	1. *If we have loved.*
2. *If thou have loved.*	2. *If ye* or *you have loved.*
3. *If he have loved.*	3. *If they have loved.*

Grammarians have not only differed in opinion, reſpecting the extent and variations of the ſubjunctive mood; but a few of them have even doubted the exiſtence of ſuch a mood in the Engliſh language. Theſe writers aſſert, that the verb has no variation from the indicative; and that a conjunction added to the verb, gives it no title to become a diſtinct mood; or, at moſt, no better than it would have, if any other particle were joined to it. To theſe obſervations it may be replied; 1ſt. It is evident, on inſpection, that the preſent tenſe of the principal verbs, and the preſent and imperfect tenſes of the verb *to be*, or at leaſt the two latter, admit of a variation from the form of the indicative mood. 2d. There appears to be as much propriety, in giving a conjunction the power of aſſiſting to form the ſubjunctive mood, as there is in allowing the particle *to* to have an effect in the formation of the infinitive mood.* 3d. A conjunction added to the verb, ſhows the manner of being, doing, or ſuffering, which other particles cannot ſhow: they do not coaleſce with the verb, and modify it, as conjunctions do. 4th. It may be ſaid, "If contingency conſtitutes the ſubjunctive mood, then it is the ſenſe of a phraſe, and not a conjunction, that determines this mood." But a little reflection will ſhow, that the contingent ſenſe lies in the meaning and force of the conjunction, expreſſed or underſtood. See the notes and obſervations on the nineteenth rule of ſyntax.

It may be of uſe to the ſcholar, to remark, in this place, that though only the conjunction *if* is affixed to the verb, any other conjunction proper for the ſubjunctive mood, may, with equal propriety, be occaſionally annexed. The inſtance given is ſufficient to explain the ſubject: more would be tedious, and tend to embarraſs the learner.

PASSIVE.

VERBS Paſſive are called regular, when they form their perfect participle by the addition of *d* or *ed*, to the verb: as, from the verb "To love,"

* "Conjunctions have an influence on the mood of the following verb."—*Dr. Beattie.*

is formed the paſſive, "I am loved, I was loved, I ſhall be loved," &c.

A regular paſſive verb is conjugated by adding the perfect participle to the auxiliary *to be*, through all its changes of number, perſon, mood, and tenſe, in the following manner :

TO BE LOVED.

Indicative Mood.

Preſent Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I am loved.	1. We are loved.
2. Thou art loved.	2. Ye *or* you are loved.
3. He is loved.	3. They are loved.

Imperfect Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I was loved.	1. We were loved.
2. Thou waſt loved.	2. Ye *or* you were loved.
3. He was loved.	3. They were loved.

Perfect Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I have been loved.	1. We have been loved.
2. Thou haſt been loved.	2. Ye *or* you have been loved.
3. He hath *or* has been loved.	3. They have been loved.

Pluperfect Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I had been loved.	1. We had been loved.
2. Thou hadſt been loved.	2. Ye *or* you had been loved.
3. He had been loved.	3. They had been loved.

Firſt Future Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I ſhall *or* will be loved.	1. We ſhall *or* will be loved.
2. Thou ſhalt *or* wilt be loved.	2. Ye *or* you ſhall *or* will be loved.
3. He ſhall *or* will be loved.	3. They ſhall *or* will be loved.

Second Future Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I ſhall *or* will have been loved.	1. We ſhall *or* will have been loved.
2. Thou ſhalt *or* wilt have been loved.	2. Ye *or* you ſhall *or* will have been loved.
3. He ſhall *or* will have been loved.	3. They ſhall *or* will have been loved.

Imperative Mood.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. Let me be loved.	1. Let us be loved.
2. Be thou loved, *or* do thou be loved.	2. Be ye *or* you loved, *or* do ye be loved.
3. Let him be loved.	3. Let them be loved.

Potential Mood.

Preſent Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I may *or* can be loved.	1. We may *or* can be loved.
2. Thou mayſt *or* canſt be loved.	2. Ye *or* you may *or* can be loved.
3. He may *or* can be loved.	3. They may *or* can be loved.

Imperfect Tenſe.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I might, could, would, *or* ſhould be loved.	1. We might, could, would, *or* ſhould be loved.
2. Thou mightſt, couldſt, wouldſt, *or* ſhouldſt be loved.	2. Ye *or* you might, could, would, *or* ſhould be loved.
3. He might, could, would, *or* ſhould be loved.	3. They might, could, would, *or* ſhould be loved.

Perfect Tense.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I may *or* can have been loved.	1. We may *or* can have been loved.
2. Thou mayſt *or* canſt have been loved.	2. Ye *or* you may *or* can have been loved.
3. He may *or* can have been loved.	3. They may *or* can have been loved.

Pluperfect Tense.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. I might, could, would, *or* ſhould have been loved.	1. We might, could, would, *or* ſhould have been loved.
2. Thou mightſt, couldſt, wouldſt, *or* ſhouldſt have been loved.	2. Ye *or* you might, could, would, *or* ſhould have been loved.
3. He might, could, would, *or* ſhould have been loved.	3. They might, could, would, *or* ſhould have been loved.

Subjunctive Mood.

Present Tense.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. If I be loved.	1. If we be loved.
2. If thou be loved.	2. If ye *or* you be loved.
3. If he be loved.	3. If they be loved.

Imperfect Tense.

Singular.	*Plural.*
1. If I were loved.	1. If we were loved.
2. If thou wert loved.	2. If ye *or* you were loved.
3. If he were loved.	3. If they were loved.

The remaining tenſes of this mood are, in every reſpect, ſimilar to the correſpondent tenſes of the indicative mood. See pages 90, 103, and the notes under the nineteenth rule of ſyntax.

Infinitive Mood.

Preſent Tenſe.	*Perfect.*
To be loved.	To have been loved.

Participles.

Preſent.	Being loved.
Perfect or *Paſſive.*	Loved.
Compound Perfect.	Having been loved.

When an auxiliary is joined to the participle of the principal verb, the auxiliary goes through all the variations of perſon and number, and the participle itſelf continues invariably the ſame. When there are two or more auxiliaries joined to the participle, the firſt of them only is varied according to perſon and number. The auxiliary *muſt* admits of no variation.

The neuter verb is conjugated like the active; but as it partakes ſomewhat of the nature of the paſſive, it admits in many inſtances, of the paſſive form, retaining ſtill the neuter ſignification: as, "I am arrived;" "I was gone;" "I am grown." The auxiliary verb *am*, *was*, in this caſe, preciſely defines the time of the action or event, but does not change the nature of it; the paſſive form ſtill expreſſing, not properly a paſſion, but only a ſtate or condition of being.

Sect. 9. *Obſervations on Paſſive Verbs.*

Some writers on grammar aſſert, that there are no Paſſive Verbs in the Engliſh language, becauſe we have no verbs of this kind with a peculiar termination, all of them being formed by the different tenſes of the auxiliary *to be*, joined to the paſſive participle of the verb. This is, however, to miſtake the true nature of the Engliſh verb; and to regulate it, not on the principles of our own tongue, but on thoſe of foreign languages. The conjugation, or the variation, of the Engliſh verb, to anſwer all the purpoſes

of verbs, is accompliſhed by the means of auxiliaries; and if it be alleged that we have no paſſive verbs, becauſe we cannot exhibit them without having recourſe to helping verbs, it may with equal truth be ſaid, that we have no *perfect, pluperfect,* or *future tenſe,* in the indicative or ſubjunctive mood; ſince theſe, as well as ſome other parts of the verb active, are formed by auxiliaries.

Even the Greek and Latin paſſive verbs require an auxiliary to conjugate ſome of their tenſes; namely, the former, in the preterit of the optative and ſubjunctive moods; and the latter, in the perfect and pluperfect of the indicative, the perfect, pluperfect, and future of the ſubjunctive mood, and the perfect of the infinitive. The deponent verbs, in Latin, require alſo an auxiliary to conjugate ſeveral of their tenſes. This ſtatement abundantly proves that the conjugation of a verb in the learned languages does not conſiſt ſolely in varying the form of the original verb. It proves that theſe languages, like our own language, ſometimes conjugate with an auxiliary, and ſometimes without it. There is, indeed, a difference. What the learned languages require to be done, in ſome inſtances, the peculiar genius of our own tongue obliges us to do, in active verbs, principally, and in paſſive ones, univerſally. In ſhort, the variation of the verb, in Greek and Latin, is generally accompliſhed by prefixes, or terminations, added to the verb itſelf; in Engliſh, by the addition of auxiliaries.

The Engliſh tongue is, in many reſpects, materially different from the learned languages. It is, therefore, very poſſible to be miſtaken ourſelves, and to miſlead and perplex others, by an undiſtinguiſhing attachment to the principles and arrangement of the Greek and Latin Grammarians. Much of the confuſion and perplexity, which we meet with in the writings of ſome Engliſh Grammarians, on the ſubject of verbs, moods, and conjugations, has ariſen from the miſapplication of names. We are apt to think, that the old names muſt always be attached to

the identical forms and things to which they were anciently attached. But if we rectify this miſtake, and properly adjuſt the names to the peculiar forms and nature of the things in our own language, we ſhall be clear and conſiſtent in our ideas; and, conſequently, better able to repreſent them intelligibly to thoſe whom we wiſh to inform.

The obſervations which we have made under this head, and on the ſubject of the moods in another place, will not apply to the declenſion and caſes of nouns, ſo as to require us to adopt names and diviſions ſimilar to thoſe of the Greek and Latin languages: for we ſhould then have more caſes than there are prepoſitions in connexion with the article and noun: and, after all, it would be a uſeleſs, as well as an unwieldy apparatus; ſince every Engliſh prepoſition points to, and governs, but one caſe, namely the objective; which is alſo true with reſpect to our governing verbs and participles. But the conjugation of an Engliſh verb in form, through all its moods and tenſes, by means of auxiliaries, ſo far from being uſeleſs or intricate, is a beautiful and regular diſplay of it, and indiſpenſably neceſſary to the language.

Some grammarians have alleged, that on the ſame ground that the voices, moods and tenſes, are admitted into the Engliſh tongue, in the forms for which we have contended, we ſhould alſo admit the dual number, the paulo poſt future tenſe, the middle voice, and all the moods and tenſes, which are to be found in Greek and Latin. But this objection, though urged with much reliance on its weight, is not well founded. If the arrangement of the moods, tenſes, &c. which we have adopted, is ſuited to the idiom of our tongue; and the principle, on which they are adopted, is extended as far as uſe and convenience require; where is the impropriety, in arreſting our progreſs, and fixing our forms at the point of utility? A principle may be warrantably adopted, and carried to a preciſe convenient extent, without ſubjecting its ſupporters to the charge of inconſiſtency, for not purſuing it beyond the line of uſe and propriety.

The importance of giving the ingenious student clear and juſt ideas of the nature of *our* verbs, moods, and tenſes, will apologize for the extent of the Author's remarks on theſe ſubjects, both here and elſewhere, and for his ſolicitude to ſimplify and explain them.—He thinks it has been proved, that the idiom of our tongue demands the arrangement he has given to the Engliſh verb; and that, though the learned languages, with reſpect to voices, moods, and tenſes, are, in general, differently conſtructed from the Engliſh tongue, yet, in ſome reſpects, they are ſo ſimilar to it, as to warrant the principle which he has adopted. See the obſervations at page 84.

SECT. 10. *Of Irregular Verbs.*

IRREGULAR Verbs are thoſe which do not form their imperfect tenſe, and their perfect participle, by the addition of *ed* to the verb: as,

Preſent.	Imperfect.	Perfect Part.
I begin,	I began,	begun.
I know,	I knew,	known.

IRREGULAR VERBS ARE OF VARIOUS SORTS.

1. Such as have the present and imperfect tenſes, and perfect participle, the ſame: as,

Preſent.	Imperfect.	Perfect Part.
Coſt,	coſt,	coſt.
Put,	put,	put.

2. Such as have the imperfect tenſe, and perfect participle, the ſame: as,

Preſent.	Imperfect.	Perfect Part.
Abide,	abode,	abode.
Sell,	ſold,	ſold.

3. Such as have the imperfect tenſe, and perfect participle, different. as,

Preſent.	Imperfect.	Perfect Part.
Ariſe,	aroſe,	ariſen.
Blow,	blew,	blown.

Many verbs become irregular by contraction; as, "feed, fed; leave, left:" others by the termination *en*; as, "fall, fell, fallen:" others by the termination *ght*; as, "buy, bought; teach, taught," &c.

The following is a pretty accurate liſt of the irregular verbs.

Preſent.	Imperfect.	Perf. or Paſs. Part.
Abide,	abode,	abode.
Am,	was,	been.
Ariſe,	aroſe,	ariſen.
Awake,	awoke, R.	awaked.
Bear, *to bring forth*,	bare,	born.
Bear, *to carry*,	bore,	borne.
Beat,	beat,	beat *or* beaten.
Begin,	began,	begun.
Bend,	bent, R.	bent, R.
Bereave,	bereft, R.	bereft, R.
Beſeech,	beſought,	beſought.
Bid,	bade, bid,	bidden, bid.
Bind,	bound,	bound.
Bite,	bit,	bitten, bit.
Bleed,	bled,	bled.
Blow,	blew,	blown.
Break,	broke,	broken.
Breed,	bred,	bred.
Bring,	brought,	brought.
Build,	built, R.	built.
Burſt,	burſt,	burſt.
Buy,	bought,	bought.
Caſt,	caſt,	caſt.
Catch,	caught, R.	caught, R.
Chide,	chid,	chidden, chid.
Chooſe,	choſe,	choſen.
Cleave, *to ſtick or adhere*,	clave, R.	cleaved.
Cleave, *to ſplit*.	clove, *or* cleft.	cleft, cloven.

Preſent.	Imperfect.	Perf. or Paſs. Part.
Cling,	clung,	clung.
Clothe,	clothed,	clad, R.
Come,	came,	come.
Coſt,	coſt,	coſt.
Crow,	crew, R.	crowed.
Creep,	crept,	crept.
Cut,	cut,	cut.
Dare, *to venture*,	durſt,	dared.
Dare, R. *to challenge*.		
Deal,	dealt, R.	dealt, R.
Dig,	dug, R.	dug, R.
Do,	did,	done.
Draw,	drew,	drawn.
Drive,	drove,	driven.
Drink,	drank,	drunk.
Dwell,	dwelt, R.	dwelt, R.
Eat,	eat, *or* ate,	eaten.
Fall,	fell,	fallen.
Feed,	fed,	fed.
Feel,	felt,	felt.
Fight,	fought,	fought.
Find,	found,	found.
Flee,	fled,	fled.
Fling,	flung,	flung.
Fly,	flew,	flown.
Forget,	forgot,	forgotten, forgot.
Forſake,	forſook,	forſaken.
Freeze,	froze,	frozen.
Get,	got,	got.*
Gild,	gilt, R.	gilt, R.
Gird,	girt, R,	girt, R.
Give,	gave,	given.
Go,	went,	gone.
Grave,	graved,	graven.

* *Gotten* is nearly obſolete. Its compound *forgotten* is ſtill in good uſe.

Present.	Imperfect.	Perf. or Paſſ. Part.
Grind,	ground,	ground.
Grow,	grew,	grown.
Have,	had,	had.
Hang,	hung,	hung *or* hanged.
Hear,	heard,	heard.
Hew,	hewed,	hewn, R.
Hide,	hid,	hidden, hid.
Hit,	hit,	hit.
Hold,	held,	held.
Hurt,	hurt,	hurt.
Keep,	kept,	kept.
Knit,	knit, R.	knit, *or* knitted.
Know,	knew,	known.
Lade,	laded,	laden.
Lay,	laid,	laid.
Lead,	led,	led.
Leave,	left,	left.
Lend,	lent,	lent.
Let,	let,	let.
Lie, *to lie down*,	lay,	lain.
Load,	loaded,	laden, R.
Loſe,	loſt,	loſt.
Make,	made,	made.
Meet,	met,	met.
Mow,	mowed,	mown.
Pay,	paid,	paid.
Put,	put,	put.
Read,	read,	read.
Rend,	rent,	rent.
Rid,	rid,	rid.
Ride,	rode,	rode, ridden.*
Ring,	rang, rung,	rung.
Riſe,	roſe,	riſen.
Rive,	rived,	riven.
Run,	ran,	run.
Saw,	ſawed,	ſawn, R.

* *Ridden* is nearly obſolete.

Present.	Imperfect.	Perf. or Paſs. Part.
Say,	ſaid,	ſaid.
See,	ſaw,	ſeen.
Seek,	ſought,	ſought.
Sell,	ſold,	ſold.
Send,	ſent,	ſent.
Set,	ſet,	ſet.
Shake,	ſhook,	ſhaken.
Shape,	ſhaped,	ſhapen, R.
Shave,	ſhaved,	ſhaven, R.
Shear,	ſheared,	ſhorn.
Shed,	ſhed,	ſhed.
Shine,	ſhone, R.	ſhone, R.
Show,	ſhowed,	ſhown.
Shoe,	ſhod,	ſhod.
Shoot,	ſhot,	ſhot.
Shrink,	ſhrunk,	ſhrunk.
Shred,	ſhred,	ſhred.
Shut,	ſhut,	ſhut.
Sing,	ſung,	ſung.
Sink,	ſunk,	ſunk.
Sit,	ſat,	ſat.
Slay,	ſlew,	ſlain.
Sleep,	ſlept,	ſlept.
Slide,	ſlid,	ſlidden.
Sling,	ſlung,	ſlung.
Slink,	ſlunk,	ſlunk.
Slit,	ſlit, R.	ſlit, *or* ſlitted.
Smite,	ſmote,	ſmitten.
Sow,	ſowed,	ſown, R.
Speak,	ſpoke,	ſpoken.
Speed,	ſped,	ſped.
Spend,	ſpent,	ſpent.
Spill,	ſpilt, R.	ſpilt, R.
Spin,	ſpun,	ſpun.
Spit,	ſpit, ſpat,	ſpit, ſpitten.*

* *Spitten* is nearly obſolete.

Preſent.	Imperfect.	Perf. or Paſſ. Part.
Split,	ſplit,	ſplit.
Spread,	ſpread,	ſpread.
Spring,	ſprang, ſprung,	ſprung.
Stand,	ſtood,	ſtood.
Steal,	ſtole,	ſtolen.
Stick,	ſtuck,	ſtuck.
Sting,	ſtung,	ſtung.
Stink,	ſtunk,	ſtunk.
Stride,	ſtrode, *or* ſtrid,	ſtridden.
Strike,	ſtruck,	ſtruck *or* ſtricken.
String,	ſtrung,	ſtrung.
Strive,	ſtrove,	ſtriven.
Strow *or* ſtrew,	ſtrowed *or* ſtrewed,	ſtrown, ſtrowed, ſtrewed.
Swear,	ſwore,	ſworn.
Sweat,	ſweat,	ſweat.
Swell,	ſwelled,	ſwollen, R.
Swim,	ſwam, ſwum,	ſwum.
Swing,	ſwung,	ſwung.
Take,	took,	taken.
Teach,	taught,	taught.
Tear,	tore,	torn.
Tell,	told,	told.
Think,	thought,	thought.
Thrive,	throve, R.	thriven.
Throw,	threw,	thrown.
Thruſt,	thruſt,	thruſt.
Tread,	trod,	trodden.
Wax,	waxed,	waxen, R.
Wear,	wore,	worn,
Weave,	wove,	woven.
Weep,	wept,	wept.
Win,	won,	won.
Wind,	wound,	wound.
Work,	wrought, R.	wrought *or* worked.
Wring,	wrung, R.	wrung *or* wringed.
Write,	wrote,	written.

In the preceding liſt, ſome of the verbs will be found to be conjugated regularly, as well as irregularly; and thoſe which admit of the regular form are marked with an R. There is a preference to be given to ſome of theſe, which cuſtom and judgment muſt determine. The Compiler has not inſerted ſuch as are irregular only in familiar writing or diſcourſe, and which are improperly terminated by *t*, inſtead of *ed*: as, learnt, ſpelt, ſpilt, &c. Theſe ſhould be avoided in every ſort of compoſition. It is, however, proper to obſerve, that ſome contractions of *ed* into *t*, are unexceptionable: and others, the only eſtabliſhed forms of expreſſion: as, crept, dwelt, gilt, &c.: and loſt, felt, ſlept, &c. Theſe allowable and neceſſary contractions muſt therefore be carefully diſtinguiſhed by the learner, from thoſe that are exceptionable. The words which are obſolete have alſo been omitted, that the learner might not be induced to miſtake them for words in preſent uſe. Such are, wreathen, drunken, holpen, molten, gotten, holden, bounden, &c.: and ſwang, wrang, ſlank, ſtrawed, gat, brake, tare, ware, &c.

SECT. 11. *Of Defective Verbs; and of the different ways in which verbs are conjugated.*

DEFECTIVE VERBS are thoſe which are uſed only in ſome of their moods and tenſes.

The principal of them are theſe.

Preſent.	Imperfect.	Perf. or Paſt. Part.
Can,	could,	———
May,	might,	———
Shall,	ſhould,	———
Will,	would,	———
Muſt,	muſt,	———
Ought,	ought,	———
———,	quoth,	———

That the verbs *muſt* and *ought* have both a preſent and paſt ſignification, appears from the following ſentences:

"I muſt own that I am to blame;" "He muſt have been miſtaken;" "Speaking things which they ought not;" "Theſe ought ye to have done."

In moſt languages there are ſome verbs which are defective with reſpect to perſons. Theſe are denominated *impersonal* verbs. They are uſed only in the third perſon, becauſe they refer to a ſubject peculiarly appropriated to that perſon; as, "It rains, it ſnows, it hails, it lightens, it thunders." But as the word *impersonal* implies a total abſence of perſons, it is improperly applied to thoſe verbs which have a perſon: and hence it is manifeſt, that there is no ſuch thing in Engliſh, nor indeed, in any language, as a ſort of verbs really impersonal.

The whole number of verbs in the Engliſh language, regular and irregular, ſimple and compounded, taken together, is about 4300. The number of irregular verbs, the defective included, is about 177.*

Some Grammarians have thought that the Engliſh verbs, as well as thoſe of the Greek, Latin, French, and other languages, might be claſſed into ſeveral conjugations; and that the three different terminations of the participle might be the diſtinguiſhing characteriſtics. They have accordingly propoſed three conjugations; namely, the firſt to conſiſt of verbs, the participles of which end in *ed*, or its contraction *t*; the ſecond, of thoſe ending in *ght*; and the third of thoſe in *en*. But as the verbs of the firſt conjugation, would ſo greatly exceed in number thoſe of both the others, as may be ſeen by the preceding account of them; and as thoſe of the third conjugation are ſo various in their form, and incapable of being reduced to one plain rule; it ſeems better in practice, as Dr. Lowth juſtly obſerves, to conſider the firſt in *ed* as the only regular form, and the other as deviations from it; after the example of the Saxon and German Grammarians.

---

* The whole number of words, in the Engliſh language, is about thirty-five thouſand.

Before we close the account of the verbs, it may afford inſtruction to the learners, to be informed, more particularly than they have been, that different nations have made uſe of different contrivances for marking the tenſes and moods of their verbs. The Greeks and Latins diſtinguiſh them, as well as the caſes of their nouns, adjectives, and participles, by varying the termination, or otherwiſe changing the form, of the word; retaining, however, thoſe radical letters, which prove the inflection to be of the ſame kindred with its root. The modern tongues, particularly the Engliſh, abound in auxiliary words, which vary the meaning of the noun, or the verb, without requiring any conſiderable varieties of inflection. Thus, *I do love, I did love, I have loved, I had loved, I ſhall love,* have the ſame import with *amo, amabam, amavi, amaveram, amabo.* It is obvious, that a language, like the Greek and Latin, which can thus comprehend in one word the meaning of two or three, muſt have ſome advantages over thoſe which cannot. Perhaps, indeed, it may not be more perſpicuous; but, in the arrangement of words, and conſequently in harmony and energy, as well as in conciſeneſs, it may be much more elegant.

CHAPTER VII.

Of ADVERBS.

AN Adverb is a part of ſpeech joined to a verb, an adjective, and ſometimes to another adverb, to expreſs ſome quality or circumſtance reſpecting it: as, "He reads *well*;" "A *truly* good man;" "He writes *very correctly*."

Some adverbs are compared, viz. "Soon, ſooner, ſooneſt;" "often, oftener, ofteneſt." And thoſe ending in *ly*, are compared by *more*, and *moſt*: as, "Wiſely, more wiſely, moſt wiſely."

Adverbs ſeem originally to have been contrived to expreſs compendiouſly in one word, what muſt otherwiſe have required two or more: as, "He acted wiſely," for he acted with wiſdom; "prudently," for, with prudence; "He did it here," for, he did it in this place; "exceedingly," for, to a great degree; "often and ſeldom," for, many and for few times; "very," for in an eminent degree, &c.

There are many words in the Engliſh language that are ſometimes uſed as adjectives, and ſometimes as adverbs: as, "more men than women were there;" or, "I am more diligent than he." In the former ſentence *more* is evidently an adjective, and in the latter, an adverb. There are others that are ſometimes uſed as ſubſtantives, and ſometimes as adverbs: as, "To-day's leſſon is longer than yeſterday's;" here *to-day* and *yeſterday* are ſubſtantives, becauſe they are words that make ſenſe of themſelves, and admit beſides of a genitive caſe: but in the phraſe, "He came home yeſterday, and ſets out again to-day," they are adverbs of time; becauſe they anſwer to the queſtion *when*. The adverb *much* is uſed as all three: as, "Where much is given, much is required;" "Much money has been expended;" "It is much better to go than to ſtay." In the firſt of theſe ſentences, *much* is a ſubſtantive; in the ſecond, it is an adjective; and in the third, an adverb. In ſhort, nothing but the ſenſe can determine what they are.

Adverbs, though very numerous, may be reduced to certain claſſes, the chief of which are thoſe of Number, Order, Place, Time, Quantity, Manner or Quality, Doubt, Affirmation, Negation, Interrogation, and Compariſon.

1. Of *number:* as, "Once, twice, thrice," &c.

2. Of *order:* as, "Firſt, ſecondly, thirdly, fourthly, fifthly, laſtly, finally," &c.

3. Of *place:* as, "Here, there, where, elſewhere, anywhere, ſomewhere, nowhere, herein, whither, hither, thither, upward, downward, forward, backward, whence, hence, thence, whitherſoever," &c.

4. Of *time.*

Of *time preſent:* as, "Now, to-day," &c.

Of *time paſt:* as, "Already, before, lately, yeſterday, heretofore, hitherto, long ſince, long ago," &c.

Of *time to come:* as, "To-morrow, not yet, hereafter, henceforth, henceforward, by and by, inſtantly, preſently, immediately, ſtraightways," &c.

Of *time indefinite:* as, "Oft, often, oft-times, often-times, ſometimes, ſoon, ſeldom, daily, weekly, monthly, yearly, always, when, then, ever, never, again," &c.

5. Of *quantity:* as, "Much, little, ſufficiently, how much, how great, enough, abundantly," &c.

6. Of *manner* or *quality:* as, "Wiſely, fooliſhly, juſtly, unjuſtly, quickly, ſlowly," &c. Adverbs of quality are the moſt numerous kind; and they are generally formed by adding the termination *ly* to an adjective or participle, or changing *le* into *ly:* as, "Bad, badly; cheerful, cheerfully; able, ably; admirable, admirably."

7. Of *doubt:* as, Perhaps, peradventure, poſſibly, perchance."

8. Of *affirmation:* as, "Verily, truly, undoubtedly, doubtleſs, certainly, yea, yes, ſurely, indeed, really," &c.

9. Of *negation:* as, "Nay, no, not, by no means, not at all, in no wiſe," &c.

10. Of *interrogation:* as, "How, why, wherefore, whether," &c.

11. Of *compariſon*: as, "More, moſt, better, beſt, worſe, worſt, leſs, leaſt, very, almoſt, little, alike," &c.

Beſides the adverbs already mentioned, there are many which are formed by a combination of ſeveral of the prepoſitions with the adverbs of place *here*, *there*, and *where:* as, "Hereof, thereof, whereof; hereto, thereto, whereto; hereby, thereby, whereby; herewith, therewith, wherewith; herein, therein, wherein; therefore, (i. e. there-for,) wherefore, (i. e. where-for,) hereupon or hereon, thereupon, or thereon, whereupon or whereon," &c. Except *therefore*, theſe are ſeldom uſed.

In ſome inſtances the prepoſition ſuffers no change, but becomes an adverb by nothing more than its application: as when we ſay, "he rides *about*;" "he was *near* falling;" "but do not *after* lay the blame on me."

There are alſo ſome adverbs, which are compoſed of nouns and the article *a*: as, "Aſide, athirſt, afoot, ahead, aſleep, aboard, aſhore, abed, aground, afloat," &c.

The words *when* and *where*, and all others of the ſame nature, ſuch as, *whence*, *whither*, *whenever*, *wherever*, &c. may be properly called *adverbial conjunctions*, becauſe they participate the nature both of adverbs and conjunctions: of conjunctions, as they conjoin ſentences; of adverbs, as they denote the attributes either of *time*, or of *place*.

It may be particularly obſerved with reſpect to the word *therefore*, that it is an adverb, when, without joining ſentences, it only gives the ſenſe of, *for that reaſon*. When it gives that ſenſe, and alſo connects, it is a conjunction: as, "He is good, *therefore* he is happy." The ſame obſervation may be extended to the words *conſequently*, *accordingly*, and the like. When theſe are ſubjoined to *and*, or joined to *if*, *ſince*, &c. they are adverbs, the connexion being made without their help: when they appear ſingle, and unſupported by any other connective, they may be called conjunctions.

The inquiſitive ſcholar may naturally aſk, what neceſſity there is for *adverbs of time*, when verbs are provided with *tenſes*, to ſhow that circumſtance. The anſwer is, though tenſes may be ſufficient to denote the greater diſtinctions of time, yet, to denote them all by the tenſes would be a perplexity without end. What a variety of forms muſt be given to the verb, to denote *yeſterday*, *to-day*, *to-morrow*, *formerly*, *lately*, *juſt now*, *now*, *immediately*, *preſently*, *ſoon*, *hereafter*, &c. It was this conſideration that made the adverbs of time neceſſary, over and above the tenſes.

CHAPTER VIII.

Of PREPOSITIONS.

PREPOSITIONS ſerve to connect words with one another, and to ſhow the relation between them. They are, for the moſt part, put before nouns and pronouns: as, "He went *from* London *to* York;" "She is *above* diſguiſe;" "They are inſtructed *by* him."

The following is a liſt of the principal prepoſitions:

Of	into	above	at	off
to	within	below	near	on *or* upon
for	without	between	up	among
by	over	beneath	down	after
with	under	from	before	about
in	through	beyond	behind	againſt

Verbs are often compounded of a verb and a prepoſition; as, to uphold, to inveſt, to overlook; and this compoſition ſometimes gives a new ſenſe to the verb; as, to underſtand, to withdraw, to forgive. But in Engliſh, the prepoſition is more frequently placed after the verb, and ſeparately from it, like an adverb, in which ſituation it is not leſs apt to affect the ſenſe of it, and to give it a new meaning; and may ſtill be conſidered as belonging to the verb, and as a part of it. As, *to caſt*, is to throw; but *to caſt up*, or to compute, *an account*, is quite a different thing: thus, to fall on, to bear out, to give over; &c. So that the meaning of the verb, and the propriety of the phraſe, depend on the prepoſition ſubjoined.

In the compoſition of many words, there are certain ſyllables employed, which Grammarians have called inſeparable prepoſitions: as, *be*, *con*, *mis*, &c. in bedeck, conjoin, miſtake: but as they are not words of any kind, they cannot properly be called a ſpecies of prepoſition.

One great uſe of prepoſitions, in Engliſh, is, to expreſs thoſe relations, which, in ſome languages, are chiefly marked by caſes, or the different endings of nouns. See page 53. The neceſſity and uſe of them will appear from the following examples. If we ſay, "he writes a pen," "they ran the river," "the tower fell the Greeks," "Lambeth is Weſtminſter-abbey," there is obſervable, in each of theſe expreſſions, either a total want of connexion, or ſuch a connexion as produces falſehood or nonſenſe: and it is evident, that, before they can be turned into ſenſe, the vacancy muſt be filled up by ſome connecting word: as thus, "He writes *with* a pen;" "they ran *towards* the river;" "the tower fell *upon* the Greeks;" "Lambeth is *over againſt* Weſtminſter-abbey." We ſee by theſe inſtances, how prepoſitions may be neceſſary to connect thoſe words, which in their ſignification are not naturally connected.

Prepoſitions, in their original and literal acceptation, ſeem to have denoted relations of place; but they are now uſed *figuratively* to expreſs other relations. For example, as they who are *above* have in ſeveral reſpects the advantage of ſuch as are *below*, prepoſitions expreſſing high and low places are uſed for ſuperiority and inferiority in general: as, "He is *above* diſguiſe;" "we ſerve *under* a good maſter;" "he rules *over* a willing people;" "we ſhould do nothing *beneath* our character."

The importance of the prepoſitions will be further perceived by the explanation of a few of them.

Of denotes poſſeſſion or belonging, an effect or conſequence, and other relations connected with theſe: as, "The houſe *of* my friend;" that is, "the houſe belonging to my friend;" "He died *of* a fever;" that is, "in conſequence of a fever."

To, or *unto*, is oppoſed to *from*; as, "He rode from Saliſbury *to* Wincheſter."

For indicates the cauſe or motive of any action or circumſtance, &c: as, "He loves her *for* (that is, on account of) her amiable qualities."

By is generally uſed with reference to the cauſe, agent, means, &c.; as "He was killed *by* a fall:" that is, "a fall was the cauſe of his being killed;" "This houſe was built *by* him;" that is, "he was the builder of it."

With denotes the act of accompanying, uniting, &c.: as, "We will go *with* you;" "They are on good terms *with* each other."——*With* alſo alludes to the inſtrument or means; as, "He was cut *with* a knife."

In relates to time, place, the ſtate or manner of being or acting, &c.: as, "He was born *in* (that is, during) the year 1720;" "He dwells *in* the city;" "She lives *in* affluence."

Into is uſed after verbs that imply motion of any kind: as, "He retired *into* the country;" "Copper is converted *into* braſs."

Within, relates to ſomething comprehended in any place or time: as, "They are *within* the houſe;" "He began and finiſhed his work *within* the limited time,"

The ſignification of *without* is oppoſite to that of *within*: as, "She ſtands *without* the gate:" But it is more frequently oppoſed to *with*; as, "You may go *without* me."

The import and force of the remaining prepoſitions will be readily underſtood, without a particular detail of them. We ſhall, therefore, conclude this head with obſerving, that there is a peculiar propriety in diſtinguiſhing the uſe of the prepoſitions *by* and *with*; which is obſervable in ſentences like the following: "He walks *with* a ſtaff *by* moonlight;" "He was taken *by* ſtratagem, and killed *with* a ſword." Put the one prepoſition for the other, and ſay, "he walks *by* a ſtaff *with* moonlight;" "he was taken *with* ſtratagem, and killed *by* a ſword;" and it will appear, that they differ in ſignification more than one, at firſt view, would be apt to imagine.

Some of the prepoſitions have the appearance and effect of conjunctions; as, "*After* their priſons were thrown open," &c. "*Before* I die;" "They made haſte to be prepared *againſt* their friends arrived:" but if the noun

time, which is underſtood, be added, they will loſe their conjunctive form: as, "After [the time when] their priſons," &c.

The prepoſitions *after*, *before*, *above*, *beneath*, and ſeveral others, ſometimes appear to be adverbs, and may be ſo conſidered: as, "They had their reward ſoon *after*;" "He died not long *before*;" "He dwells *above*:" but if the nouns *time* and *place* be added, they will loſe their adverbial form; as, "He died not long *before that time*," &c.

CHAPTER IX.

Of CONJUNCTIONS.

A CONJUNCTION is a part of ſpeech that is chiefly uſed to connect ſentences; ſo as, out of two, to make one ſentence. It ſometimes connects only words.

Conjunctions are principally divided into two ſorts, the COPULATIVE and the DISJUNCTIVE.

The Conjunction Copulative ſerves to connect or to continue a ſentence, by expreſſing an addition, a ſuppoſition, a cauſe, &c.: as, "He *and* his brother reſide in London;" "I will go *if* he will accompany me;" "You are happy, *becauſe* you are good."

The Conjunction Disjunctive ſerves, not only to connect and continue the ſentence, but alſo to expreſs oppoſition of meaning in different degrees: as, "*Though* he was frequently reproved, *yet* he did not reform;" "They came with her, *but* went away without her."

The following is a liſt of the principal Conjunctions.

The *Copulative*. And, if, that, both, then, ſince, for, becauſe, therefore, wherefore.

The *Disjunctive*. But, or, nor, as, than, leſt, though, unleſs, either, neither, yet, notwithſtanding.

The ſame word is occaſionally uſed both as a conjunction and as an adverb; and ſometimes, as a prepoſition. "I reſt *then* upon this argument;" *then* is here a conjunction: in the following phraſe, it is an adverb; "He arrived *then* and not before." "I ſubmitted; *for* it was vain to reſiſt:" in this ſentence, *for* is a conjunction; in the next, it is a prepoſition: "He contended *for* victory only." In the firſt of the following ſentences, *ſince* is a conjunction; in the ſecond, it is a prepoſition; and in the third, an adverb: "*Since* we muſt part, let us do it peaceably: "I have not ſeen him *ſince* that time:" "Our friendſhip commenced long *ſince*."

Relative pronouns, as well as conjunctions, ſerve to connect ſentences: as, "Bleſſed is the man *who* feareth the Lord, *and* keepeth his commandments."

A relative pronoun poſſeſſes the force both of a pronoun and a connective. Nay, the union by relatives is rather cloſer, than that by mere conjunctions. The latter may form two or more ſentences into one; but by the former, ſeveral ſentences may incorporate in one and the ſame *clauſe* of a ſentence. Thus, "thou ſeeſt a man, *and* he is called Peter," is a ſentence conſiſting of two diſtinct clauſes, united by the copulative *and*: but "the man *whom* thou ſeeſt is called Peter," is a ſentence of one clauſe, and not leſs comprehenſive than the other.

Conjunctions very often unite ſentences, when they appear to unite only words; as in the following inſtances: "Duty *and* intereſt forbid vicious indulgences;" "Wiſdom *or* folly governs us." Each of theſe forms of expreſſion contains two ſentences, namely; "Duty forbids vicious indulgences; intereſt forbids vicious indulgences;" "Wiſdom governs us, or folly governs us."

Though the conjunction is commonly uſed to connect ſentences together, yet on ſome occaſions, it merely connects words, not ſentences; as, "The king *and* queen are an amiable pair;" where the affirmation cannot refer to each; it being abſurd to ſay, that the *king* or the *queen only*

is an amiable pair. So in the inſtances, "two *and* two are four;" "the fifth *and* ſixth volumes will complete the ſet of books." Prepoſitions alſo, as before obſerved, connect words; but they do it to ſhow the relation which the connected words have to each other: conjunctions, when they unite words only, are deſigned to ſhow the relations, which thoſe words, ſo united, have to other parts of the ſentence.

As there are many conjunctions and connective phraſes appropriated to the coupling of ſentences, that are never employed in joining the members of a ſentence; ſo there are ſeveral conjunctions appropriated to the latter uſe, which are never employed in the former; and ſome that are equally adapted to both thoſe purpoſes: as, *again, further, beſides*, &c. of the firſt kind; *than, leſt, unleſs, that, ſo that*, &c. of the ſecond; and *but, and, for, therefore*, &c. of the laſt.

We ſhall cloſe this chapter with a few obſervations on the peculiar uſe and advantage of the conjunctions; a ſubject which will, doubtleſs, give pleaſure to the ingenious ſtudent, and expand his views of the importance of his grammatical ſtudies.

"Relatives are not ſo uſeful in language, as conjunctions. The former make ſpeech more conciſe; the latter make it more explicit. Relatives comprehend the meaning of a pronoun and conjunction *copulative*: conjunctions, while they *couple* ſentences, may alſo expreſs oppoſition, inference, and many other relations and dependences.

Till men began to think in a train, and to carry their reaſonings to a conſiderable length, it is not probable that they would make much uſe of conjunctions, or of any other connectives. Ignorant people, and children, generally ſpeak in ſhort and ſeparate ſentences. The ſame thing is true of barbarous nations: and hence uncultivated languages are not well ſupplied with connecting particles. The Greeks were the greateſt reaſoners that ever appeared in the world; and their language, accordingly, abounds more than any other in connectives.

Conjunctions are not equally neceſſary in all ſorts of writing. In poetry, where great conciſeneſs of phraſe is required, and every appearance of formality avoided, many of them would have a bad effect. In paſſionate language too, it may be proper to omit them: becauſe it is the nature of violent paſſion, to ſpeak rather in disjointed ſentences, than in the way of inference and argument. Books of aphoriſms, like the Proverbs of Solomon, have few connectives; becauſe they inſtruct, not by reaſoning, but in detached obſervations. And narrative will ſometimes appear very graceful, when the circumſtances are plainly told, with ſcarcely any other conjunction than the ſimple copulative *and*: which is frequently the caſe in the hiſtorical parts of Scripture.—When narration is full of images or events, the omiſſion of connectives may, by crowding the principal words upon one another, give a ſort of picture of hurry and tumult, and ſo heighten the vivacity of deſcription. But when facts are to be traced down through their conſequences, or upwards to their cauſes; when the complicated deſigns of mankind are to be laid open, or conjectures offered concerning them; when the hiſtorian argues either for the elucidation of truth, or in order to ſtate the pleas and principles of contending parties; there will be occaſion for every ſpecies of connective, as much as in philoſophy itſelf. In fact, it is in argument, inveſtigation, and ſcience, that this part of ſpeech is peculiarly and indiſpenſably neceſſary."

CHAPTER X.

Of INTERJECTIONS.

INTERJECTIONS are words thrown in between the parts of a ſentence, to expreſs the paſſions or emotions of the ſpeaker: as, "Oh! I have alienated my friend; alas! I fear for life:" "O virtue! how amiable thou art!"

litude or tendency to a character: as, "Child, childiſh; thief, thieviſh."

Some adjectives are formed from ſubſtantives or verbs, by adding the termination *able*; and thoſe adjectives ſignify capacity: as, "Anſwer, anſwerable; to change, changeable."

4. Subſtantives are derived from adjectives, ſometimes by adding the termination *neſs*: as, "White, whiteneſs; ſwift, ſwiftneſs:" ſometimes by adding *th* or *t*, and making a ſmall change in ſome of the letters: as, "Long, length; high, height."

5. Adverbs of quality are derived from adjectives, by adding *ly*, or changing *le* into *ly*; and denote the ſame quality as the adjectives from which they are derived: as, from "baſe," comes "baſely;" from "ſlow, ſlowly;" from "able, ably."

There are ſo many other ways of deriving words from one another, that it would be extremely difficult, and nearly impoſſible to enumerate them. The primitive words of any language are very few; the derivatives form much the greater number. A few more inſtances only can be given here.

Some ſubſtantives are derived from other ſubſtantives, by adding the terminations *hood* or *head*, *ſhip*, *ery*, *wick*, *rick*, *dom*, *ian*, *ment*, and *age*.

Subſtantives ending in *hood* or *head*, are ſuch as ſignify character or qualities; as, "Manhood, knighthood, falſehood," &c.

Subſtantives ending in *ſhip*, are thoſe that ſignify office, employment, ſtate, or condition: as, "Lordſhip, ſtewardſhip, partnerſhip," &c. Some ſubſtantives in *ſhip*, are derived from adjectives: as, "Hard, hardſhip," &c.

Subſtantives which end in *ery*, ſignify action or habit: as, "Slavery, foolery, prudery," &c. Some ſubſtantives of this ſort come from adjectives; as, "Brave, bravery," &c.

Subſtantives ending in *wick*, *rick*, and *dom*, denote do-

minion, juriſdiction, or condition: as, "Bailiwick, biſhoprick, kingdom, dukedom, freedom," &c.

Subſtantives which end in *ian*, are thoſe that ſignify profeſſion; as, "Phyſician, muſician," &c. Thoſe that end in *ment* and *age*, come from the French, and generally ſignify the act or habit; as, "Commandment, uſage."

Some ſubſtantives ending in *ard*, are derived from verbs or adjectives, and denote character or habit: as, "Drunk, drunkard; dote, dotard."

Some ſubſtantives have the form of diminutives; but theſe are not many. They are formed by adding the terminations, *kin*, *ling*, *ing*, *ock*, *el*, and the like, as, "Lamb, lambkin; gooſe, goſling; duck, duckling; hill, hillock; cock, cockerel," &c.

That part of derivation which conſiſts in tracing Engliſh words to the Saxon, Greek, Latin, French, and other languages, muſt be omitted, as the Engliſh ſcholar is not ſuppoſed to be acquainted with theſe languages. The beſt Engliſh dictionaries will, however, furniſh ſome information on this head, to thoſe who are deſirous of obtaining it. The learned Horne Tooke, in his "Diverſions of Purley," has given an ingenious account of the derivation and meaning of many of the adverbs, conjunctions, and prepoſitions.

It is highly probable that the ſyſtem of this acute grammarian, is founded in truth; and that adverbs, prepoſitions, and conjunctions, are corruptions or abbreviations of other parts of ſpeech. But as many of them are derived from obſolete words in our own language, or from words in kindred languages, the radical meaning of which is, therefore, either obſcure, or generally unknown; as the ſyſtem of this very able etymologiſt is not fully admitted and eſtabliſhed; and as, by long preſcription, whatever may have been their origin, the words in queſtion appear to have acquired a title to the rank of diſtinct ſpecies; it ſeems proper to conſider them, as ſuch, in an elementary treatiſe of grammar: eſpecially as this plan coincides with

that, by which other languages must be taught; and will render the study of them less intricate. It is of small moment, by what names and classification we distinguish these words, provided their meaning and use are well understood. A philosophical consideration of the subject, may, with great propriety, be entered upon by the grammatical student, when his knowledge and judgment become more improved.

Sect. 2. *A sketch of the steps by which the English Language has risen to its present state of refinement.*

Before we conclude the subject of derivation, it will probably be gratifying to the curious scholar, to be informed of some particulars respecting the origin of the English language, and the various nations to which it is indebted for the copiousness, elegance, and refinement, which it has now attained.

"When the ancient Britons were so harassed and oppressed by the invasions of their northern neighbours, the Scots, and Picts, that their situation was truly miserable, they sent an embassy (about the middle of the fifth century) to the Saxons, a warlike people inhabiting the north of Germany, with solicitations for speedy relief. The Saxons accordingly came over to Britain, and were successful in repelling the incursions of the Scots and Picts; but seeing the weak and defenceless state of the Britons, they resolved to take advantage of it; and at length established themselves in the greater part of South-Britain, after having dispossessed the original inhabitants.

"From these barbarians, who founded several petty kingdoms in this island, and introduced their own laws, language, and manners, is derived the groundwork of the English language; which, even in its present state of cultivation, and notwithstanding the successive augmentations and improvements, which it has received through various channels, displays very conspicuous traces of its Saxon original.

"The Saxons did not long remain in quiet poſſeſſion of the kingdom; for before the middle of the ninth century, the Danes, a hardy and adventurous nation, who had long infeſted the northern ſeas with their piracies, began to ravage the Engliſh coaſts. Their firſt attempts were, in general, attended with ſuch ſucceſs, that they were encouraged to a renewal of their ravages; till, at length, in the beginning of the eleventh century, they made themſelves maſters of the greater part of England.

"Though the period during which theſe invaders occupied the Engliſh throne, was very ſhort, not greatly exceeding half a century, it is highly probable that ſome change was introduced by them into the language ſpoken by thoſe whom they had ſubdued: but this change cannot be ſuppoſed to have been very conſiderable, as the Daniſh and Saxon languages aroſe from one common ſource, the Gothic being the parent of both.

"The next conquerors of this kingdom, after the Danes, were the Normans, who, in the year 1066, introduced their leader William to the poſſeſſion of the Engliſh throne. This prince, ſoon after his acceſſion, endeavoured to bring his own language (the Norman French) into uſe among his new ſubjects; but his efforts were not very ſucceſsful, as the Saxons entertained a great antipathy to theſe haughty foreigners. In proceſs of time, however, many Norman words and phraſes were incorporated into the Saxon language: but its general form and conſtruction ſtill remained the ſame.

"From the Conqueſt to the Reformation, the language continued to receive occaſional acceſſions of foreign words, till it acquired ſuch a degree of copiouſneſs and ſtrength, as to render it ſuſceptible of that poliſh, which it has received from writers of taſte and genius, in the laſt and preſent centuries. During this period the learned have enriched it with many ſignificant expreſſions, drawn from the treaſures of Greek and Roman literature; the ingenious and the faſhionable have imported occaſional ſupplies

of French, Spaniſh, Italian, and German words, gleaned during their foreign excurſions; and the connexions which we maintain, through the medium of government and commerce, with many remote nations, have made ſome additions to our native vocabulary.

"In this manner did the ancient language of the Anglo-Saxons proceed, through the various ſtages of innovation, and the ſeveral gradations of refinement, to the formation of the preſent Engliſh tongue."*

* Coote's Elements of Engliſh Grammar.

PART III.

SYNTAX.

THE third part of grammar is SYNTAX, which ſhows the agreement and right diſpoſition of words in a ſentence.

A ſentence is an aſſemblage of words, expreſſed in proper form, ranged in proper order, and concurring to make a complete ſenſe.

Sentences are of two kinds, ſimple and compound.

A ſimple ſentence has in it but one ſubject, and one finite* verb: as, "Life is ſhort."

A compound ſentence contains two or more ſimple ſentences, joined together by one or more connective words: as, "Life is ſhort, and art is long."

As ſentences themſelves are divided into ſimple and compound, ſo the members of ſentences may be divided likewiſe into ſimple and compound members: for whole ſentences, whether ſimple or compounded, may become members of other ſentences, by means of ſome additional connexion; as in the following example: "The ox knoweth his owner, and the aſs his maſter's crib; but Iſrael doth not know, my people do not conſider." This ſentence conſiſts of two compounded members, each of which is ſubdivided into two ſimple members, which are properly called clauſes.

There are three ſorts of ſimple ſentences; the *explicative*, or explaining; the *interrogative*, or aſking; the *imperative*, or commanding.

An explicative ſentence is when a thing is ſaid to be or not to be, to do or not to do, to ſuffer or not to ſuffer, in a

* *Finite* verbs are thoſe to which number and perſon appertain. Verbs in the *infinitive* mood have no reſpect to number or perſon.

direct manner: as, "I am; thou writeſt; Thomas is loved." If the ſentence be negative, the adverb *not* is placed after the auxiliary, or after the verb itſelf when it has no auxiliary: as, "I did not touch him;" or, "I touched him not."

In an interrogative ſentence, or when a queſtion is aſked, the nominative caſe follows the principal verb or the auxiliary: as, "Was it he?" "Did Alexander conquer the Perſians."

In an imperative ſentence, when a thing is commanded to be, to do, to ſuffer, or not, the nominative caſe likewiſe follows the verb or the auxiliary: as, "Go, thou traitor!" "Do thou go:" "Haſte ye away:" unleſs the verb *let* be uſed; as, "Let us be gone."

A phraſe is two or more words rightly put together, making ſometimes part of a ſentence, and ſometimes a whole ſentence.

The principal parts of a ſimple ſentence are, the ſubject, the attribute, and the object.

The ſubject is the thing chiefly ſpoken of; the attribute is the thing or action affirmed or denied of it; and the object is the thing affected by ſuch action.

The nominative denotes the ſubject, and uſually goes before the verb or attribute; and the word or phraſe, denoting the object, follows the verb; as, "A wiſe man governs his paſſions." Here, a *wiſe man* is the ſubject; *governs*, the attribute, or thing affirmed; and *his paſſions*, the object.

Syntax principally conſiſts of two parts, *Concord* and *Government*.

Concord is the agreement which one word has with another, in gender, number, caſe, or perſon.

Government is that power which one part of ſpeech has over another, in directing its mood, tenſe, or caſe.

To produce the agreement and right diſpoſition of words in a ſentence, many rules are neceſſary. The following, with the annexed obſervations, compriſe the chief of them.

RULE I.

A verb muſt agree with its nominative caſe, in number and perſon: as, "I learn;" "Thou art improved." "The birds ſing."

The following are a few examples of the violation of this rule. "What ſignifies good opinions, when our practice is bad?" "what *ſignify*." "The Normans, under which general term is comprehended the Danes, Norwegians, and Swedes, were accuſtomed to ſlaughter and rapine;" "*are* comprehended." "If thou would be eaſy and happy in thy family, be careful to obſerve diſcipline:" "if thou *wouldſt*." "Gold, whence came thou? whither goes thou? when will thou come again?" "*cameſt*, *goeſt*, *wilt*." "But thou, falſe promiſer, never ſhall obtain thy purpoſe:" it ought to be "*ſhalt*." "And wherefoe'er thou turns thy view;" "*turneſt*." There's two or three of us have ſeen the work:" "there *are*." "Great pains has been taken;" "*have* been." "I have conſidered what have been ſaid on both ſides in this controverſy;" "what *has* been ſaid." "One would think there was more ſophiſts than one;" "there *were* more." "The number of the names together were about one hundred and twenty;" "*was* about."

* 1. The infinitive mood, or part of a ſentence, is ſometimes put as the nominative caſe to the verb: as, "To ſee the ſun *is* pleaſant;" "To be good *is* to be happy;" "A deſire to excel others in learning and virtue *is* commendable;" "That warm climates ſhould accelerate the growth of the human body, and ſhorten its duration, *is* very rea-

* The chief practical notes under each Rule, are regularly numbered, in order to make them correſpond to the examples in the volume of Exerciſes.

ſonable to believe;" "To be temperate in eating and drinking, to uſe exerciſe in the open air, and to preſerve the mind free from tumultuous emotions, *are* the beſt preſervatives of health."

2. Every verb, except in the infinitive mood, or the participle, ought to have a nominative caſe, either expreſſed or implied: as, "Awake; ariſe;" that is, "Awake ye; ariſe ye."

We ſhall here add ſome examples of inaccuracy, in the uſe of the verb without its nominative caſe. "As it hath pleaſed him of his goodneſs to give you ſafe deliverance, and hath preſerved you in the great danger," &c. The verb "*hath preſerved*," has here no nominative caſe, for it cannot be properly ſupplied by the preceding word, "*him*," which is in the objective caſe. It ought to be, "and as *he hath preſerved* you;" or rather, "and *to preſerve* you." "If the calm in which he was born, and laſted ſo long, had continued;" "and *which* laſted," &c. "Theſe we have extracted from an hiſtorian of undoubted credit, and are the ſame that were practiſed," &c; "and *they are* the ſame." "A man whoſe inclinations led him to be corrupt, and had great abilities to manage the buſineſs;" "and *who* had," &c. "A cloud gathering in the north; which we have helped to raiſe, and may quickly break in a ſtorm upon our heads;" "and *which* may quickly."

3. Every nominative caſe, except the caſe abſolute, and when an addreſs is made to a perſon, ſhould belong to ſome verb, either expreſſed or implied: as, "Who wrote this book?" "James;" that is, "James wrote it." "To whom thus Adam," that is, "ſpoke."

One or two inſtances of the improper uſe of the nominative caſe, without any verb, expreſſed or implied, to anſwer it, may be ſufficient to illuſtrate the uſefulneſs of the preceding obſervation.

"*Which rule*, if it had been obſerved, a neighbouring prince would have wanted a great deal of that incenſe

which hath been offered up to him." The pronoun *it* is here the nominative case to the verb "observed;" and *which rule*, is left by itself, a nominative case without any verb following it. This form of expression, though improper, is very common. It ought to be, "*If this rule* had been observed," &c. "*Man*, though he has great variety of thoughts, and such from which others as well as himself might receive profit and delight, yet they are all within his own breast." In this sentence, the nominative *man* stands alone and unconnected with any verb, either expressed or implied. It should be, "*Though man* has great variety," &c.

4. When a verb comes between two nouns, either of which may be understood as the subject of the affirmation, it may agree with either of them; but some regard must be had to that which is more naturally the subject of it, as also to that which stands next to the verb: as, "His meat *was* locusts and wild honey;" "A great cause of the low state of industry *were* the restraints put upon it;" "The wages of sin *is* death."

5. When the nominative case has no personal tense of a verb, but is put before a participle, independently on the rest of the sentence, it is called the case absolute: as, "Shame being lost, all virtue is lost;" "That having been discussed long ago, there is no occasion to resume it."

As in the use of the case absolute, the case is, in English, always the nominative, the following example is erroneous, in making it the objective. "Solomon was of this mind; and I have no doubt he made as wise and true proverbs, as any body has done since; *him* only excepted, who was a much greater and wiser man than Solomon." It should be, "*he* only excepted."

The nominative case is commonly placed before the verb; but sometimes it is put after the verb, if it is a simple tense; and between the auxiliary, and the verb or participle, if a compound tense: as,

1st, When a question is asked, a command given, or a wish expressed: as, "Confidest thou in me?" "Read thou;" "Mayst thou be happy!" "Long live the King!"

2d, When a supposition is made without the conjunction *if*: as, "Were it not for this;" "Had I been there."

3d, When a verb neuter is used: as, "On a sudden appeared the king."

4th, When the verb is preceded by the adverbs, *here, there, then, thence, hence, thus*, &c.: as, "Here am I;" "There was he slain;" "Then cometh the end;" Thence ariseth his grief;" "Hence proceeds his anger;" "Thus was the affair settled."

5th, When a sentence depends on *neither* or *nor*, so as to be coupled with another sentence: as, "Ye shall not eat of it, neither shall ye touch it, lest ye die."

The phrases, *as follows, as appears*, form what are called impersonal verbs; and should, therefore, be confined to the singular number: as, "The arguments advanced were nearly *as follows*;" "The positions were *as appears* incontrovertible:" that is, "as it follows," "as it appears." If we give the sentence a different turn, and instead of *as*, say *such as*, the verb is no longer termed impersonal; but properly agrees with its nominative, in the plural number: as, "The arguments advanced were nearly *such as follow*;" "The positions were *such as appear* incontrovertible."*

They who are inclined to favour the opinion of Horne Tooke, "That *as*, however and whenever used in English,

---

* In our ideas on this subject, we are supported by general usage, and by the authority of an eminent critic on language and composition. "When a verb is used impersonally," says Dr. Campbell in his Philosophy of Rhetoric, "it ought undoubtedly to be in the singular number, whether the neuter pronoun be expressed or understood. For this reason, analogy and usage favour this mode of expression: "The conditions of the agreement were *as follows*;" and not, *as follow*. A few late writers have inconsiderately adopted this last form, through a mistake of the construction. For the same reason, we ought to say, "I shall consider his censures so far only *as concerns* my friend's conduct;" and not 'so far *as concern*.'"

means the same as *it*, or *that*, or *which*;" and who are not satisfied whether the verbs, in the sentences first mentioned, should be in the singular or the plural number, may vary the form of expression. Thus, the sense of the preceding sentences may be conveyed in the following terms. "The arguments advanced were nearly of the following nature;" "The following are nearly the arguments which were advanced;" "The arguments advanced were nearly those which follow:" "It appears that the positions were incontrovertible;" "That the positions were incontrovertible is apparent;" "The positions were apparently incontrovertible."

RULE II.

Two or more nouns, &c. in the singular number, joined together by one or more copulative conjunctions, expressed or understood, must have verbs, nouns, and pronouns, agreeing with them in the plural number: as, "Socrates and Plato *were* wise; *they* were the most eminent philosophers of Greece;" "The sun that rolls over our heads, the food that we receive, the rest that we enjoy, daily *admonish* us of a superior and superintending Power."

This rule is often violated; some instances of which are annexed. "And so was also James and John the sons of Zebedee, who were partners with Simon;" "and so *were* also." "All joy, tranquillity, and peace, even for ever and ever, doth dwell;" "*dwell* for ever." "By whose power all good and evil is distributed;" "*are* distributed." "Their love, and their hatred, and their envy, is now perished;" "*are* perished." "The thoughtless and intemperate enjoyment of pleasure, the criminal abuse of it, and the forgetfulness of our being accountable creatures, obliterates every serious thought of the proper business of

life, and effaces the ſenſe of religion and of God;" It ought to be, "*obliterate*," and "*efface*."

1. When the nouns are nearly related, or ſcarcely diſtinguiſhable in ſenſe, and ſometimes even when they are very different, ſome authors have thought it allowable to put the verbs, nouns, and pronouns, in the ſingular number: as, "Tranquillity and peace dwells there;" "Ignorance and negligence has produced the effect;" "The diſcomfiture and ſlaughter was very great." But it is evidently contrary to the firſt principles of grammar, to conſider two diſtinct ideas as one, however nice may be their ſhades of difference: and if there be no difference, one of them muſt be ſuperfluous, and ought to be rejected.

To ſupport the above conſtruction, it is ſaid, that the verb may be underſtood as applied to each of the preceding terms; as in the following example. "Sand, and ſalt, and a maſs of iron, *is* eaſier to bear than a man without underſtanding." But beſides the confuſion, and the latitude of application, which ſuch a conſtruction would introduce, it appears to be more proper and analogical, in caſes where the verb is intended to be applied to any one of the terms, to make uſe of the disjunctive conjunction, which grammatically refers the verb to one or other of the preceding terms in a ſeparate view. To preſerve the diſtinctive uſes of the copulative and disjunctive conjunctions, would render the rules preciſe, conſiſtent, and intelligible. Dr. Blair very juſtly obſerves, that "two or more ſubſtantives, joined by a copulative, muſt *always* require the verb or pronoun to which they refer, to be placed in the plural number."

2. In many complex ſentences, it is difficult for learners to determine, whether one or more of the clauſes are to be conſidered as the nominative caſe; and conſequently, whether the verb ſhould be in the ſingular or the plural number. We ſhall, therefore, ſet down a number of varied examples of this nature, which may ſerve as ſome govern-

ment to the ſcholar, with reſpect to ſentences of a ſimilar conſtruction. "Proſperity, with humility, *renders* its poſſeſſor truly amiable." "The ſhip, with all her furniture, *was* deſtroyed." "Not only his eſtate, his reputation too *has* ſuffered by his miſconduct." "The general alſo, in conjunction with the officers, *has* applied for redreſs." "He cannot be juſtified; for it is true, that the prince, as well as the people, *was* blameworthy." "The king, with his life-guard, *has* juſt paſſed through the village." "In the mutual influence of body and ſoul, there *is* a wiſdom, a wonderful art, which we cannot fathom." "Virtue, honour, nay, even ſelf-intereſt, *conſpire* to recommend the meaſure." "Patriotiſm, morality, every public and private conſideration, *demand* our ſubmiſſion to juſt and lawful government." "Nothing *delights* me ſo much as the works of nature."

In ſupport of ſuch forms of expreſſion as the following, we ſee the authority of Hume, Prieſtley, and other writers; and we annex them for the reader's conſideration. "A long courſe of time, with a variety of accidents and circumſtances, *are* requiſite to produce thoſe revolutions." "The king, with the lords and commons, *form* an excellent frame of government." "The ſide A, with the ſides B and C, *compoſe* the triangle." "The fire communicated itſelf to the bed, which, with the furniture of the room, and a valuable library, *were* all entirely conſumed." It is, however, proper to obſerve, that theſe modes of expreſſion do not appear to be warranted by the juſt principles of conſtruction. The words, "A long courſe of time," "The king," "The ſide A," and "which," are the true nominatives to the reſpective verbs. In the laſt example, the word *all* ſhould be expunged. As the prepoſition *with* governs the *objective* caſe of a pronoun, in Engliſh; and, if tranſlated into Latin, would govern the *ablative* caſe, it is manifeſt, from analogy, that the clauſes following *with*, in the preceding ſentences, cannot form any part of the *nominative* caſe. The following ſentence appears to be

unexceptionable; and may ſerve to explain the others. "The lords and commons are eſſential branches of the Britiſh conſtitution: the king, with them, *forms* an excellent frame of government."

3. If the ſingular nouns and pronouns, which are joined together by a copulative conjunction, be of ſeveral perſons, in making the plural pronoun agree with them in perſon, the ſecond perſon takes place of the third, and the firſt of both: as, "James, and thou, and I, *are* attached to *our* country." "Thou and he ſhared it between *you*."

RULE III.

The conjunction disjunctive has an effect contrary to that of the conjunction copulative; for as the verb, noun, or pronoun, is referred to the preceding terms taken ſeparately, it muſt be in the ſingular number: as, "Ignorance or negligence *has* cauſed this miſtake;" "John, James, or Joſeph, *intends* to accompany me;" "There *is*, in many minds, neither knowledge nor underſtanding."

The following ſentences are variations from this rule: "A man may ſee a metaphor or an allegory in a picture, as well as read them in a deſcription;" "read *it*." "Neither character nor dialogue were yet underſtood;" "*was* yet." "It muſt indeed be confeſſed that a lampoon or a ſatire do not carry in them robbery or murder;" "*does* not carry in *it*." "Death, or ſome worſe misfortune, ſoon divide them." It ought to be "*divides*."

1. When ſingular pronouns of different perſons are diſjunctively connected, the verb muſt agree with that perſon which is placed neareſt to it: as, "I or thou *art* to blame; "Thou or I *am* in fault;" "I, or thou, or he, *is* the author of it." But it would be better to ſay; "Either I am to blame, or thou art," &c.

2. When a disjunctive occurs between a singular noun, or pronoun, and a plural one, the verb is made to agree with the plural noun and pronoun: as, "Neither poverty nor riches *were* injurious to him;" "I or they *were* offended by it." But in this case, the plural noun or pronoun, when it can conveniently be done, should be placed next to the verb.

RULE IV.

A noun of multitude, or signifying many, may have a verb or pronoun agreeing with it, either of the singular or plural number; yet not without regard to the import of the word, as conveying unity or plurality of idea: as, "The meeting *was* large;" "The parliament *is* dissolved;" "The nation *is* powerful;" "My people *do* not consider: *they* have not known me;" "The multitude eagerly *pursue* pleasure, as *their* chief good;" "The council *were* divided in *their* sentiments."

We ought to consider whether the term will immediately suggest the idea of the number it represents, or whether it exhibits to the mind the idea of the whole as one thing. In the former case, the verb ought to be plural; in the latter, it ought to be singular. Thus, it seems improper to say, "The peasantry *goes* barefoot, and the middle sort *makes* use of wooden shoes." It would be better to say, "The peasantry *go* barefoot, and the middle sort *make* use," &c. because the idea in both these cases, is that of a number. On the contrary, there is a harshness in the following sentences, in which nouns of number have verbs plural; because the ideas they represent seem not to be sufficiently divided in the mind. "The court of Rome *were* not without solicitude." "The house of commons *were* of small weight." "The house of lords *were* so much influenced by these reasons." "Stephen's party

were entirely broken up by the captivity of their leader." "An army of twenty-four thouſand *were* aſſembled." "What reaſon *have* the church of Rome for proceeding in this manner?" "There is indeed no conſtitution ſo tame and careleſs of *their* own defence." "All the virtues of mankind are to be counted upon a few fingers, but *his* follies and vices are innumerable." Is not *mankind* in this place a noun of multitude, and ſuch as requires the pronoun referring to it to be in the plural number, *their*?

RULE V.

Pronouns muſt always agree with their antecedents, and the nouns for which they ſtand, in gender and number: as, "This is the friend *whom* I love;" "That is the vice *which* I hate;" "The king and the queen had put on *their* robes;" "The moon appears, and *ſhe* ſhines, but the light is not *her* own."

The relative is of the ſame perſon with the antecedent, and the verb agrees with it accordingly: as, "Thou *who loveſt* wiſdom;" "I *who ſpeak* from experience."

Of this rule there are many violations to be met with; a few of which may be ſufficient to put the learner on his guard. "*Each* of the ſexes ſhould keep within *its* particular bounds, and content *themſelves* with the advantages of *their* particular diſtricts:" better thus: "The ſexes ſhould keep within *their* particular bounds," &c. "Can any one, on their entrance into the world, be fully ſecure that they ſhall not be deceived?" "on *his* entrance," and "that *he* ſhall." "One ſhould not think too favourably of ourſelves;" "of *one's ſelf*." "He had one acquaintance which poiſoned his principles;" "*who* poiſoned."

Every relative muſt have an antecedent to which it refers, either expreſſed or implied: as, "Who is fatal to

others is ſo to himſelf;" that is, "*the man who* is fatal to others."

Who, *which*, *what*, and the relative *that*, though in the objective caſe, are always placed before the verb; as are alſo their compounds, *whoever*, *whoſoever*, &c.; as, "He whom ye ſeek;" "This is what, or the thing which, or that, you want;" "Whomſoever you pleaſe to appoint."

What is ſometimes applied, rather improperly, to the plural number; as, "All fevers, except what are called nervous," &c. It would be better to ſay, "except *thoſe which* are called nervous."

1. Perſonal pronouns being uſed to ſupply the place of the noun, are not employed in the ſame part of a ſentence with the noun which they repreſent; for it would be improper to ſay, "The king *he* is juſt;" "I ſaw *her* the queen;" "The men *they* were there;" "Many words *they* darken ſpeech;" "My banks *they* are furniſhed with bees." Theſe perſonals are ſuperfluous, as there is not the leaſt occaſion for a ſubſtitute in the ſame part where the principal word is preſent. The nominative caſe *they*, in the following ſentence, is alſo ſuperfluous; "Who, inſtead of going about doing good, *they* are perpetually intent upon doing miſchief."

2. The pronoun *that* is frequently applied to perſons as well as to things; but after an adjective in the ſuperlative degree, and after the pronominal adjective *ſame*, it is generally uſed in preference to *who* or *which*: as, "Charles XII. king of Sweden, was one of the greateſt madmen *that* the world ever ſaw;" "Catiline's followers were the moſt profligate *that* could be found in any city." "He is the ſame man *that* we ſaw before." There are caſes wherein we cannot conveniently diſpenſe with this relative as applied to perſons: as firſt, after *who* the interrogative; "Who *that* has any ſenſe of religion, would have argued thus?" Secondly, when perſons make but a part of the antecedent; "The woman, and the eſtate, *that* became his

portion were too much for his moderation." In neither of these examples could any other relative have been used.

3. The pronouns *whichsoever*, *whosoever*, and the like, are elegantly divided by the interposition of the corresponding substantives: thus, "On whichsoever side the king cast his eyes;" would have sounded better, if written, "On which side soever," &c.

4. Many persons are apt, in conversation, to put the objective case of the personal pronouns, in the place of *these* and *those*: as, "Give me them books;" instead of "*those* books." We may sometimes find this fault even in writing: as, "Observe *them* three there." We also frequently meet with *those* instead of *they*, at the beginning of a sentence, and where there is no particular reference to an antecedent; as, "*Those* that sow in tears, sometimes reap in joy." *They* that, or *they* who sow in tears.

It is not, however, always easy to say, whether a personal pronoun or a demonstrative is preferable, in certain constructions. "We are not unacquainted with the calumny of *them* [or those] who openly make use of the warmest professions."

5. In some dialects, the word *what* is improperly used for *that*, and sometimes we find it in this sense in writing: "They will never believe but *what* I have been entirely to blame." "I am not satisfied but what," &c. instead of "but *that*." The word *somewhat*, in the following sentence, seems to be used improperly. "These punishments seem to have been exercised in somewhat an arbitrary manner." Sometimes we read, "In somewhat of." The meaning is, "in a manner which is in some respects arbitrary."

6. The pronoun relative *who* is so much appropriated to persons, that there is generally harshness in the application of it, except to the proper names of persons, or the general terms *man*, *woman*, &c. A term which only implies the idea of persons, and expresses them by some circumstance

or epithet, will hardly authorize the uſe of it: as, "That faction in England *who* moſt powerfully oppoſed his arbitrary pretenſions." "That faction *which*," would have been better; and the ſame remark will ſerve for the following examples: "France, *who* was in alliance with Sweden." "The court, *who*," &c. "The cavalry, *who*," &c. "The cities *who* aſpired at liberty." "That party among us *who*," &c. "The family *whom* they conſider as uſurpers."

In ſome caſes it may be doubtful, whether this pronoun is properly applied or not: as, "The number of ſubſtantial inhabitants with *whom* ſome cities abound." For when a term directly and neceſſarily implies perſons, it may in many caſes claim the perſonal relative. "None of the company *whom* he moſt affected, could cure him of the melancholy under which he laboured." The word *acquaintance* may have the ſame conſtruction.

7. We hardly conſider little children as perſons, becauſe that term gives us the idea of reaſon and reflection: and therefore the application of the perſonal relative *who*, in this caſe, ſeems to be harſh: "A child *who*." It is ſtill more improperly applied to animals: "A lake frequented by that fowl *whom* nature has taught to dip the wing in water."

8. When the name of a perſon is uſed merely as a name, and does not refer to the perſon, the pronoun *which* ought to be uſed, and not *who*: as, "It is no wonder if ſuch a man did not ſhine at the court of queen Elizabeth, *who* was but another name for prudence and economy." The word *whoſe* begins likewiſe to be reſtricted to perſons; yet it is not done ſo generally, but that good writers, even in proſe, uſe it when ſpeaking of things. The conſtruction is not, however, generally pleaſing, as we may ſee in the following inſtances: "Pleaſure, *whoſe* nature," &c. "Call every production, *whoſe* parts and *whoſe* nature," &c.

In one caſe, however, cuſtom authorizes us to uſe *which*,

with reſpect to perſons: and that is when we want to diſtinguiſh one perſon of two, or a particular perſon among a number of others. We ſhould then ſay, "*Which* of the two," or "*Which* of them, is he or ſhe?"

9. As the pronoun relative has no diſtinction of number, we ſometimes find an ambiguity in the uſe of it; as when we ſay, "The diſciples of Chriſt, *whom* we imitate;" we may mean the imitation either of Chriſt, or of his diſciples. The accuracy and clearneſs of the ſentence, depend very much upon the proper and determinate uſe of the relative, ſo that it may readily preſent its antecedent to the mind of the hearer or reader, without any obſcurity or ambiguity.

The neuter pronoun, by an idiom peculiar to the Engliſh language, is frequently joined in explanatory ſentences, with a noun or pronoun of the maſculine or feminine gender: as, "It was I;" "It was the man or woman that did it."

The neuter pronoun *it* is ſometimes omitted and underſtood: thus, we ſay, "As appears, as follows;" for "As it appears, as it follows;" and "May be," for "It may be."

The neuter pronoun *it* is ſometimes employed to expreſs;

1ſt, The ſubject of any diſcourſe or inquiry: as, *It* happened on a ſummer's day;" "Who is *it* that calls on me?"

2d, The ſtate or condition of any perſon or thing: as, "How is *it* with you?"

3d, The thing, whatever it be, that is the cauſe of any effect or event, or any perſon conſidered merely as a cauſe: as, "We heard her ſay *it* was not he;" "The truth is, *it* was I that helped her."

10. *It is* and *it was*, are often, after the manner of the French, uſed in a plural conſtruction, and by ſome of our beſt writers: as, "*It is* either a few great men who decide for the whole, or *it is* the rabble that follow a ſeditious

ringleader;" "*It is* they that are the real authors, though the ſoldiers are the actors of the revolutions;" "*It was* the heretics that firſt began to rail," &c.; "*'Tis theſe* that early taint the female mind." This licenſe in the conſtruction of *it is*, (if it be proper to admit it at all,) has, however, been certainly abuſed in the following ſentence, which is thereby made a very awkward one. "*It is* wonderful the very few trifling accidents, which happen not once, perhaps, in ſeveral years."

11. The interjections *O! Oh!* and *Ah!* require the objective caſe of a pronoun in the firſt perſon after them: as, "O me! Oh me! Ah me!" But the nominative caſe in the ſecond perſon: as, "O thou perſecutor!" "Oh ye hypocrites!"

RULE VI.

THE relative is the nominative caſe to the verb, when no nominative comes between it and the verb: as, "The maſter *who* taught us;" "The trees *which* are planted."

When a nominative comes between the relative and the verb, the relative is governed by ſome word in its own member of the ſentence: as, "He *who* preſerves me, to *whom* I owe my being, *whoſe* I am, and *whom* I ſerve, is eternal."

In the ſeveral members of the laſt ſentence, the relative performs a different office. In the firſt member, it marks the agent; in the ſecond, it ſubmits to the government of the prepoſition; in the third, it repreſents the poſſeſſor; and in the fourth, the object of an action: and therefore it muſt be in the three different caſes, correſpondent to thoſe offices.

When both the antecedent and relative become nominatives, each to different verbs, the relative is the nominative to the former, and the antecedent to the latter verb: as,

"*True philoſophy, which is* the ornament of our nature, *conſiſts* more in the love of our duty, and the practice of virtue, than in great talents and extenſive knowledge."

A few inſtances of erroneous conſtruction, will illuſtrate both the branches of the ſixth rule. The three following refer to the firſt part. "How can we avoid being grateful to thoſe whom, by repeated kind offices, have proved themſelves our real friends?" "Theſe are the men whom, you might ſuppoſe, were the authors of the work:" "If you were here, you would find three or four, whom you would ſay paſſed their time agreeably:" in all theſe places it ſhould be *who* inſtead of *whom*. The two latter ſentences contain a nominative between the relative and the verb; and, therefore, ſeem to contravene the rule: but the ſtudent will reflect, that it is not the nominative of the verb with which the relative is connected. The remaining examples refer to the ſecond part of the rule. "Men of fine talents are not always the perſons who we ſhould eſteem." "The perſons who you diſpute with, are preciſely of your opinion." "Our tutors are our benefactors, who we owe obedience to, and who we ought to love." In theſe ſentences, *whom* ſhould be uſed inſtead of *who*.

1. When the relative pronoun is of the interrogative kind, the noun or pronoun containing the anſwer, muſt be in the ſame caſe as that which contains the queſtion: as, "*Whoſe* books are theſe? They are *John's*." "*Who* gave them to him? *We*." "Of *whom* did you buy them? Of a bookſeller; *him* who lives at the Bible and Crown." "*Whom* did you ſee there? Both *him* and the ſhopman." The learner will readily comprehend this rule, by ſupplying the words which are underſtood in the anſwers. Thus, to expreſs the anſwers at large, we ſhould ſay, "They are John's books." "We gave them to him." "We bought them of him who lives," &c. "We ſaw both him and the ſhopman."—As the relative pronoun, when uſed interrogatively, refers to the ſubſequent word or phraſe containing

the anſwer to the queſtion, that word or phraſe may properly be termed the *ſubſequent* to the interrogative.

RULE VII.*

WHEN the relative is preceded by two nominatives of different perſons, the relative and verb may agree in perſon with either, according to the ſenſe: as, "I am the man *who command* you;" or, "I am the man *who commands* you."

The form of the firſt of the two preceding ſentences, expreſſes the meaning rather obſcurely. It would be more perſpicuous to ſay; "I, who command you, am the man." Perhaps the difference of meaning, produced by referring the relative to different antecedents, will be more evident to the learner, in the following ſentences. "I am the general who *gives* the orders to-day;" "I am the general who *give* the orders to-day;" that is, "I, who give the orders to-day, am the general."

When the relative and the verb have been determined to agree with either of the preceding nominatives, that agreement muſt be preſerved throughout the ſentence; as in the following inſtance: "I am the Lord that *maketh* all things; that *ſtretcheth* forth the heavens alone." *Iſa.* xliv. 24. Thus far is conſiſtent: The *Lord*, in the third perſon, is the antecedent, and the verb agrees with the relative in the third perſon: "I am *the Lord*, which Lord, or he that *maketh* all things." If *I* were made the antecedent, the relative and verb ſhould agree with it in the firſt perſon: as, "*I* am the Lord, *that make* all things, *that ſtretch* forth the heavens alone." But ſhould it follow; "*That ſpreadeth* abroad the earth by myſelf;" there would ariſe a confuſion of perſons, and a manifeſt ſoleciſm.

* For the improvement of the ſeventh rule of Syntax, the author is indebted to the criticiſms of Dr. Crombie.

RULE VIII.

EVERY adjective belongs to a ſubſtantive, expreſſed or underſtood: as, "He is a *good*, as well as a *wiſe man*;" "*Few* are *happy*;" that is "*perſons*."

The adjective pronouns, *this* and *that*, &c. muſt agree, in number, with their ſubſtantive: as, "This book, theſe books; that ſort, thoſe ſorts; another road, other roads."

A few inſtances of the breach of this rule are here exhibited. "I have not travelled this twenty years;" "*theſe* twenty." "I am not recommending theſe kind of ſufferings;" "*this* kind." "Thoſe ſort of people fear nothing;" "*that* ſort."

1. The word *means* in the ſingular number, and the phraſes, "*By this means*," "*By that means*," are uſed by our beſt and moſt correct writers; namely, Bacon, Tillotſon, Atterbury, Addiſon, Steele, Pope, &c.* They are, indeed, in ſuch general and approved uſe, that it would appear awkward, if not affected, to apply the old ſingular form, and ſay, "By this *mean*; by that *mean*; it was by

* "*By this means*, he had them the more at vantage, being tired and haraſſed with a long march." *Bacon.*

"*By this means* one great reſtraint from doing evil, would be taken away."—"And *this* is an admirable *means* to improve men in virtue."—"*By that means* they have rendered their duty more difficult." *Tillotſon.*

"It renders us careleſs of approving ourſelves to God, and by *that means* ſecuring the continuance of his goodneſs."—"A good character, when eſtabliſhed, ſhould not be reſted in as an end, but employed as *a means* of doing ſtill further good." *Atterbury.*

"*By this means* they are happy in each other."—"He *by that means* preſerves his ſuperiority." *Addiſon.*

"Your vanity *by this means* will want its food." *Steele.*

"*By this means* alone, their greateſt obſtacles will vaniſh." *Pope.*

"Which *cuſtom* has proved the moſt effectual *means* to ruin the nobles." *Dean Swift.*

a *mean*;" although it is more agreeable to the general analogy of the language. "The word *means* (ſays Prieſtley) belongs to the claſs of words, which do not change their termination on account of number; for it is uſed alike in both numbers."

The word *amends* is uſed in this manner, in the following ſentences: "Though he did not ſucceed, he gained the approbation of his country; and with *this amends* he was content." "Peace of mind is *an* honourable *amends* for the ſacrifices of intereſt." "In return, he received the thanks of his employers, and the preſent of a large eſtate; *theſe* were ample *amends* for all his labours." "We have deſcribed the rewards of vice: the good man's *amends are* of a different nature."

It can ſcarcely be doubted, that this word *amends* (like the word *means*) had formerly its correſpondent form in the ſingular number, as it is derived from the French *amende*, though now it is excluſively eſtabliſhed in the plural form. If, therefore, it be alleged that *mean* ſhould be applied in the ſingular, becauſe it is derived from the French *moyen*, the ſame kind of argument may be advanced in favour of the ſingular *amende*; and the general analogy of the language may alſo be pleaded in ſupport of it.

"There *is* no *means* of eſcaping the perſecution."—"Faith is not only *a means* of obeying, but a principal act of obedience." *Dr. Young.*

"He looked on money as *a* neceſſary *means* of maintaining and increaſing power." *Lord Lyttelton's Henry II.*

"John was too much intimidated not to embrace *every means* afforded for his ſafety." *Goldſmith.*

"Leſt *this means* ſhould fail."—"By *means* of *ſhip-money*, the late king," &c.—"The *only means* of ſecuring a durable peace." *Hume.*

"*By this means* there was nothing left to the parliament of Ireland," &c. *Blackſtone.*

"*By this means* ſo many ſlaves eſcaped out of the hands of their maſters." *Dr. Robertſon.*

"*By this means* they bear witneſs to each other." *Burke.*

"*By this means* the wrath of man was made to turn againſt itſelf." *Dr. Blair.*

"A magazine, which has, by *this means*, contained," &c.—"Birds, in general, procure their food by *means* of their *beak*." *Dr. Paley.*

Campbell, in his "Philoſophy of Rhetoric," has the following remark on the ſubject before us: "No perſons of taſte will, I preſume, venture ſo far to violate the preſent uſage, and conſequently to ſhock the ears of the generality of readers, as to ſay, "By this *mean*, by that *mean*."

Lowth and Johnſon ſeem to be againſt the uſe of *means* in the ſingular number. They do not, however, ſpeak deciſively on the point; but rather dubiouſly, and as if they knew that they were queſtioning eminent authorities, as well as general practice. That they were not decidedly againſt the application of this word to the ſingular number, appears from their own language: "Whole ſentences, whether ſimple or compound, may become members of other ſentences by *means* of ſome additional *connexion*."—Dr. LOWTH's *Introduction to Engliſh Grammar*.

"There is no other method of teaching that of which any one is ignorant, but by *means* of *ſomething* already known."——Dr. JOHNSON. *Idler*.

It is remarkable that our preſent verſion of the Scriptures makes no uſe, as far as the Compiler can diſcover, of the word *mean*; though there are ſeveral inſtances to be found in it of the uſe of *means* in the ſenſe and connexion contended for. "By *this means* thou ſhalt have no portion on this ſide the river." Ezra iv. 16. "That by *means* of *death*," &c. Heb. ix. 15. It will ſcarcely be pretended, that the tranſlators of the ſacred volumes did not accurately underſtand the Engliſh language; or that they would have admitted one form of this word, and rejected the other, had not their determination been conformable to the beſt uſage. An attempt therefore to recover an old word, ſo long ſince diſuſed by the moſt correct writers, ſeems not likely to be ſucceſsful; eſpecially as the rejection of it is not attended with any inconvenience.

The practice of the beſt and moſt correct writers, or a great majority of them, corroborated by general uſage, forms, during its continuance, the ſtandard of language;

eſpecially, if, in particular inſtances, this practice continue, after objection and due conſideration. Every connexion and application of words and phraſes, thus ſupported, muſt therefore be proper, and entitled to reſpect, if not exceptionable in a moral point of view.

"Si volet usus
"Quem penes arbitrium est, et jus, et norma loquendi." HOR.

On this principle, many forms of expreſſion, not leſs deviating from the general analogy of the language, than thoſe before mentioned, are to be conſidered as ſtrictly proper and juſtifiable. Of this kind are the following. "*None* of them *are* varied to expreſs the gender;" and yet *none* originally ſignified *no one*. "He *himſelf* ſhall do the work:" here, what was at firſt appropriated to the objective, is now properly uſed as the nominative caſe. "*You* have behaved yourſelves well:" in this example, the word *you* is put in the nominative caſe plural, with ſtrict propriety; though formerly it was confined to the objective caſe, and *ye* excluſively uſed for the nominative.

With reſpect to anomalies and variations of language, thus eſtabliſhed, it is the grammarian's buſineſs to ſubmit, not to remonſtrate. In pertinaciouſly oppoſing the deciſion of proper authority, and contending for obſolete modes of expreſſion, he may, indeed, diſplay learning and critical ſagacity; and, in ſome degree, obſcure points that are ſufficiently clear and decided; but he cannot reaſonably hope, either to ſucceed in his aims, or to aſſiſt the learner, in diſcovering and reſpecting the true ſtandard and principles of language.

Caſes which cuſtom has left dubious, are certainly within the grammarian's province. Here, he may reaſon and remonſtrate on the ground of derivation, analogy, and propriety; and his reaſonings may refine and improve the language: but when authority ſpeaks out and decides the point, it were perpetually to unſettle the language, to admit of cavil and debate. Anomalies then, under the

limitation mentioned, become the law, as clearly as the plaineſt analogies.

The reader will perceive that, in the following ſentences, the uſe of the word *mean*, in the old form has a very uncouth appearance: "By the *mean* of adverſity we are often inſtructed." "He preſerved his health by *mean* of exerciſe." "Frugality is one *mean* of acquiring a competency." They ſhould be, "By *means* of adverſity," &c. "By *means* of exerciſe," &c. "Frugality is one *means*," &c.

Good writers do indeed make uſe of the ſubſtantive *mean* in the ſingular number, and in that number only, to ſignify mediocrity, middle rate, &c. as, "This is a *mean* between the two extremes." But in the ſenſe of inſtrumentality, it has been long diſuſed by the beſt authors, and by almoſt every writer.

This means and *that means* ſhould be uſed only when they refer to what is ſingular; *theſe means* and *thoſe means*, when they reſpect plurals: as, "He lived temperately, and by *this means* preſerved his health;" "The ſcholars were attentive, induſtrious, and obedient to their tutors; and by *theſe means*, acquired knowledge."

We have enlarged on this article that the young ſtudent may be led to reflect on a point ſo important, as that of aſcertaining the ſtandard of propriety in the uſe of language.

2. The diſtributive pronominal adjectives, *each*, *every*, *either*, agree with the nouns, pronouns, and verbs, of the ſingular number only: as, "The king of Iſrael, and Jehoſophat, the king of Judah, ſat *each* on *his* throne;" "*Every* tree *is* known by *its* fruit:' unleſs the plural noun convey a collective idea: as, "Every ſix months;" "Every hundred years."——The following phraſes are exceptionable. "Let *each* eſteem others better than themſelves:' It ought to be "*himſelf*." "It is requiſite that the language ſhould be both perſpicuous and correct: in proportion as *either* of

theſe two qualities are wanting, the language is imperfect :" it ſhould be "*is*." " 'Tis obſervable, that *every* one of the letters bear date after his baniſhment, and contain a complete narrative of all his ſtory afterwards ;" it ought to be " *bears*" and " *they contain*."

Either is often uſed improperly, inſtead of *each* : as, " The king of Iſrael, and Jehoſophat the king of Judah, ſat *either* of them on his throne ;" " Nadab and Abihu, the ſons of Aaron, took *either* of them his cenſer." *Each* ſignifies both of them taken diſtinctly or ſeparately ; *either* properly ſignifies only the one or the other of them taken disjunctively.

In the courſe of this work, ſome examples will appear of erroneous tranſlations from the Holy Scriptures, with reſpect to grammatical conſtruction : but it may be proper to remark, that notwithſtanding theſe verbal miſtakes, the Bible, for the ſize of it, is the moſt accurate grammatical compoſition that we have in the Engliſh language. The authority of ſeveral eminent grammarians might be adduced in ſupport of this aſſertion ; but it may be ſufficient to mention only that of Dr. Lowth, who ſays, " The preſent tranſlation of the Bible, is the beſt ſtandard of the Engliſh language."

3. Adjectives are ſometimes improperly applied as adverbs : as, " indifferent honeſt ; excellent well ; miſerable poor ;" inſtead of " Indifferently honeſt ; excellently well ; miſerably poor." " He behaved himſelf conformable to that great example ;" " *conformably*." " Endeavour to live hereafter ſuitable to a perſon in thy ſtation ;" " *ſuitably*." " I can never think ſo very mean of him ;" " *meanly*." " He deſcribes this river agreeable to the common reading :" " *agreeably*." " Agreeable hereunto, it may not be amiſs," &c. " *agreeably*." " Thy exceeding great reward :" When united to an adjective, or adverb not ending in *ly*, the word *exceeding* has *ly* added to it : as, " exceedingly dreadful, exceedingly great ;" " exceed-

ingly well, exceedingly more active:" but when it is joined to an adverb or adjective, having that termination, the *ly* is omitted: as, "Some men think exceeding clearly, and reaſon exceeding forcibly:" "She appeared, on this occaſion, exceeding lovely." "He acted in this buſineſs *bolder* than was expected:" "They behaved the *nobleſt*, becauſe they were diſintereſted." They ſhould have been, "*more boldly; moſt nobly.*"—The adjective pronoun *ſuch* is often miſapplied: as, "He was ſuch an extravagant young man, that he ſpent his whole patrimony in a few years:" it ſhould be, "*ſo extravagant a young man.*" "I never before ſaw ſuch large trees:" "*ſaw trees ſo large.*" When we refer to the ſpecies or nature of a thing, the word *ſuch* is properly applied: as, "Such a temper is ſeldom found:" but when degree is ſignified, we uſe the word *ſo*: as, "So bad a temper is ſeldom found."

Adverbs are likewiſe improperly uſed as adjectives: as, "The tutor addreſſed him in terms rather warm, but ſuitably to his offence;" "*ſuitable.*" "They were ſeen wandering about ſolitarily and diſtreſſed;" "*ſolitary.*" "He lived in a manner agreeably to the dictates of reaſon and religion;" "*agreeable.*" "The ſtudy of ſyntax ſhould be previouſly to that of punctuation;" "*previous.*"

4. Double comparatives and ſuperlatives ſhould be avoided: ſuch as, "A worſer conduct;" "On leſſer hopes;" "A more ſerener temper;" "The moſt ſtraiteſt ſect;" "A more ſuperior work." They ſhould be, "worſe conduct;" "leſs hopes;" "a more ſerene temper;" "the ſtraiteſt ſect;" "a ſuperior work."

5. Adjectives that have in themſelves a ſuperlative ſignification, do not properly admit of the ſuperlative or comparative form ſuperadded: ſuch as, "Chief, extreme, perfect, right, univerſal, ſupreme," &c.; which are ſometimes improperly written, "Chiefeſt, extremeſt, perfecteſt, righteſt, moſt univerſal, moſt ſupreme," &c. The follow-

ing expreſſions are therefore improper. "He ſometimes claims admiſſion to the *chiefeſt* offices." "The quarrel was become *ſo univerſal* and national;" "A method of attaining the *righteſt* and greateſt happineſs." The phraſes, ſo perfect, ſo right, ſo extreme, ſo univerſal, &c. are incorrect; becauſe they imply that one thing is leſs perfect, leſs extreme, &c. than another, which is not poſſible.

6. Inaccuracies are often found in the way in which the degrees of compariſon are applied and conſtrued. The following are examples of wrong conſtruction in this reſpect: "This noble nation hath, of all others, admitted fewer corruptions." The word *fewer* is here conſtrued preciſely as if it were the ſuperlative. It ſhould be, "This noble nation hath admitted fewer corruptions than any other." We commonly ſay, "This is the weaker of the two;" or, "The weakeſt of the two:" but the former is the regular mode of expreſſion, becauſe there are only two things compared. "The vice of covetouſneſs is what enters deepeſt into the ſoul of any other." "He celebrates the church of England as the moſt perfect of all others." Both theſe modes of expreſſion are faulty: we ſhould not ſay, "The beſt of any man," or, "The beſt of any other man," for "the beſt of men." The ſentences may be corrected by ſubſtituting the comparative in the room of the ſuperlative. "The vice, &c. is what enters deeper into the ſoul than any other." "He celebrates, &c. as more perfect than any other." It is alſo poſſible to retain the ſuperlative, and render the expreſſion grammatical. "Covetouſneſs, of all vices, enters the deepeſt into the ſoul." "He celebrates, &c. as the moſt perfect of all churches." Theſe ſentences contain other errors, againſt which it is proper to caution the learner. The words *deeper* and *deepeſt*, being intended for adverbs, ſhould have been *more deeply*, *moſt deeply*. The phraſes *more perfect*, and *moſt perfect*, are improper; becauſe perfection admits of no degrees of

compariſon. We may ſay *nearer* or *neareſt* to perfection, or more or leſs imperfect.

7. When two perſons or things are ſpoken of in a ſentence, and there is occaſion to mention them again for the ſake of diſtinction, *that* is uſed in reference to the former, and *this* in reference to the latter: as, "Self-love, which is the ſpring of action in the ſoul, is ruled by reaſon: but for *that*, man would be inactive; and but for *this*, he would be active to no end."

8. In ſome caſes, adjectives ſhould not be ſeparated from their ſubſtantives, even by words which modify their meaning, and make but one ſenſe with them: as, "A large enough number ſurely," It ſhould be, "A number large enough." "The lower ſort of people are good enough judges of one not very diſtant from them."

The adjective is uſually placed before its ſubſtantive: as, "A *generous* man;" "How *amiable* a woman!" The inſtances in which it comes after the ſubſtantive, are the following.

1ſt, When ſomething depends upon the adjective; and when it gives a better ſound, eſpecially in poetry: as, "A man *generous* to his enemies;" "Feed me with food *convenient* for me;" "A tree three feet *thick*." "A body of troops fifty thouſand *ſtrong*:" "The torrent tumbling through rocks *abrupt*."

2d, When the adjective is emphatical: as, "Alexander the *Great*:" "Lewis the *Bold*;" "Goodneſs *infinite*;" "Wiſdom *unſearchable*."

3d, When ſeveral adjectives belong to one ſubſtantive: as, "A man juſt, wiſe and charitable;" "A woman modeſt, ſenſible, and virtuous."

4th, When the adjective is preceded by an adverb: as, "a boy regularly ſtudious;" "A girl unaffectedly modeſt."

5th, When the verb *to be*, in any of its variations, comes between a ſubſtantive and an adjective, the adjective may

frequently either precede or follow it: as, "The man is *happy*;" or, "*happy* is the man who makes virtue his choice:" "The interview was *delightful*;" or, "*delightful* was the interview.

6th, When the adjective expreſſes ſome circumſtance of a ſubſtantive placed after an active verb: as, "Vanity often renders its poſſeſſor *deſpicable*." In an exclamatory ſentence, the adjective generally precedes the ſubſtantive; as, "How *deſpicable* does vanity often render its poſſeſſor!"

There is ſometimes great beauty, as well as force, in placing the adjective before the verb, and the ſubſtantive immediately after it: as, "Great is the Lord! juſt and true are thy ways, thou King of ſaints!"

Sometimes the word *all* is emphatically put after a number of particulars comprehended under it. "Ambition, intereſt, honour, *all* concurred." Sometimes a ſubſtantive, which likewiſe comprehends the preceding particulars, is uſed in conjunction with this adjective: as, "Royaliſts, republicans, churchmen, ſectaries, courtiers, patriots, *all parties*, concurred in the illuſion."

An adjective pronoun, in the plural number, will often properly aſſociate with a ſingular noun: as, "Our deſire, your intention, their reſignation." This aſſociation applies rather to things of an intellectual nature, than to thoſe which are corporeal.

A ſubſtantive with its adjective is reckoned as one compounded word, whence they often take another adjective, and ſometimes a third, and ſo on: as, "An old man; a good old man; a very learned, judicious, good old man."

Every adjective, adjective pronoun, and participle, relates to ſome ſubſtantive; and is, in many inſtances, put abſolutely, eſpecially where the noun has been mentioned before, or is eaſily underſtood, though not expreſſed: as, "I often ſurvey the green fields, as I am very fond of *green*;" "The wiſe, the virtuous, the honoured, famed, and great," that is, "perſons;" "The twelve," that is,

"apoſtles;" "Have compaſſion on the *poor;* be feet to the *lame*, and eyes to the *blind*."

Sometimes the ſubſtantive becomes a kind of adjective, and has another ſubſtantive joined to it by a hyphen: as, "A ſea-fiſh; a ſilver-tankard; a mahogany-table; an adjective-pronoun." The hyphen is not always uſed, but may be diſpenſed with, in caſes where the aſſociation has been long eſtabliſhed, and is become familiar. In ſome of theſe inſtances the two words coaleſce: as, "Icehouſe inkhorn, Yorkſhire," &c.

Sometimes the adjective becomes a ſubſtantive, and has another adjective joined to it: as, "The chief good;" "The vaſt immenſe of ſpace."

When an adjective has a prepoſition before it, the ſubſtantive being underſtood, it takes the nature of an adverb, and is conſidered as an adverb: as, "In general, in particular, in haſte," &c.; that is, "Generally, particularly, haſtily."

Enow was formerly uſed as the plural of *enough;* but it is now obſolete.

RULE IX.

The article *a* or *an* agrees with nouns in the ſingular number only, individually or collectively: as, "A chriſtian, an infidel, a ſcore, a thouſand."

The definite article *the* may agree with nouns in the ſingular and plural number: as, "The garden, the houſes, the ſtars."

The articles are often properly omitted: when uſed, they ſhould be juſtly applied, according to their diſtinct nature: as, "Gold is corrupting; the ſea is green; a lion is bold."

It is of the nature of both the articles to determine or limit the thing ſpoken of. *A* determines it to be one ſingle thing of the kind, leaving it ſtill uncertain which: *the* determines which it is, or of many, which they are.

The following paſſage will ſerve as an example of the different uſes of *a* and *the*, and of the force of the ſubſtantive, without any article. "*Man* was made for ſociety, and ought to extend his good will to all men: but *a man* will naturally entertain a more particular kindneſs for *the men*, with whom he has the moſt frequent intercourſe; and enter into a ſtill cloſer union with *the man* whoſe temper and diſpoſition ſuit beſt with his own."

As the articles are ſometimes miſapplied, it may be of ſome uſe to exhibit a few inſtances: "And I perſecuted this way unto *the* death." The apoſtle does not mean any particular ſort of death, but death in general: the definite article therefore is improperly uſed: it ought to be "unto death," without any article.

"When he, the Spirit of Truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth;" that is, according to this tranſlation, "into all truth whatſoever, into truth of all kinds;" very different from the meaning of the evangeliſt, and from the original, "into all *the* truth;" that is, "into all evangelical truth, all truth neceſſary for you to know."

"Who breaks a butterfly upon *a* wheel?" it ought to be "*the* wheel," uſed as an inſtrument for the particular purpoſe of torturing criminals. "The Almighty hath given reaſon to *a* man to be a light unto him:" it ſhould rather be, "to *man*," in general. "This day is ſalvation come to this houſe, forasmuch as he alſo is *the* ſon of Abraham:" it ought to be, "*a* ſon of Abraham."

Theſe remarks may ſerve to ſhow the great importance of the proper uſe of the article, and the excellence of the Engliſh language in this reſpect: which by means of its two articles, does moſt preciſely determine the extent of ſignification of common names.

1. A nice diſtinction of the ſenſe is ſometimes made by the uſe or omiſſion of the article *a*. If I ſay; "He behaved with *a* little reverence;" my meaning is poſitive. If I ſay, "He behaved with little reverence;" my mean-

ing is negative. And theſe two are by no means the ſame, or to be uſed in the ſame caſes. By the former, I rather praiſe a perſon; by the latter, I diſpraiſe him. For the ſake of this diſtinction, which is a very uſeful one, we may better bear the ſeeming impropriety of the article *a* before nouns of number. When I ſay, "There were few men with him;" I ſpeak diminutively, and mean to repreſent them as inconſiderable: whereas, when I ſay; "There were *a* few men with him;" I evidently intend to make the moſt of them.

The article *the* has ſometimes a good effect in diſtinguiſhing a perſon by an epithet. "In the hiſtory of Henry the fourth, by Father Daniel, we are ſurpriſed at not finding him *the* great man." "I own I am often ſurpriſed that he ſhould have treated ſo coldly, a man ſo much *the* gentleman."

This article is often elegantly put, after the manner of the French, for the pronoun poſſeſſive: as, "He looks him full in *the* face;" that is, "in *his* face." "In his preſence they were to ſtrike *the* forehead on the ground;" that is, "*their foreheads.*"

2. In general, it may be ſufficient to prefix the article to the former of two words in the ſame conſtruction; though the French never fail to repeat it in this caſe. "There were many hours, both of the night and day, which he could ſpend, without ſuſpicion, in ſolitary thought." It might have been "of *the* night and *of the* day." And, for the ſake of emphaſis, we often repeat the article in a ſeries of epithets. "He hoped that this title would ſecure him *an* ample and *an* independent authority."

We ſometimes, after the manner of the French, repeat the ſame article, when the adjective, on account of any clauſe depending upon it, is put after the ſubſtantive. "Of all the conſiderable governments among the Alps, a commonwealth is a conſtitution *the* moſt adapted of any to the poverty of thoſe countries." "With ſuch a ſpecious title

as that of blood, which with the multitude is always a claim, *the* ſtrongeſt, and *the* moſt eaſily comprehended." "They are not the men in the nation *the* moſt difficult to be replaced."

3. In common converſation, and in familiar ſtyle, we frequently omit the articles, which might be inſerted with propriety in writing, eſpecially in a grave ſtyle. "At worſt, time might be gained by this expedient." "At *the* worſt," would have been better in this place. "Give me here John Baptiſt's head." There would have been more dignity in ſaying, "John *the* Baptiſt's head:" or, "The head of John the Baptiſt."

RULE X.

One ſubſtantive governs another, ſignifying a different thing, in the poſſeſſive or genitive caſe: as, "My father's houſe;" "Man's happineſs;" "Virtue's reward."

When the annexed ſubſtantive ſignifies the ſame thing as the firſt, there is no variation of caſe: as, "George, king of Great Britain, elector of Hanover," &c.; "Pompey contended with Cæſar, the greateſt general of his time;" "Religion, the ſupport of adverſity, adorns proſperity." Nouns thus circumſtanced are ſaid to be *in oppoſition* to each other; and will admit a relative and verb to be inſerted between them: as we may ſay, "George, *who is* king," &c.; "Cæſar, *who was* the greateſt," &c.; "Religion, *which is* the ſupport of adverſity," &c.

The prepoſition *of* joined to a ſubſtantive, is not always equivalent to the poſſeſſive caſe. It is only ſo, when the expreſſion can be converted into the regular form of the poſſeſſive caſe. We can ſay, "The reward of virtue," and "Virtue's reward:" but though it is proper to ſay "A crown of gold," we cannot convert the expreſſion into the poſſeſſive caſe, and ſay, "Gold's crown."

Subſtantives govern pronouns as well as nouns, in the poſſeſſive caſe: as, "Every tree is known by *its* fruit;" "Goodneſs brings *its* reward;" "That deſk is *mine*."

The genitive *its* is often improperly uſed for *'tis* or *it is*; as, "Its my book."

The pronoun *his*, when detached from the noun to which it relates, is to be conſidered, not as a poſſeſſive pronoun, but as the genitive caſe of the perſonal pronoun: as, "This compoſition is *his*." "Whoſe book is that?" "*His*." If we uſed the noun itſelf, we ſhould ſay, "This compoſition is John's." "Whoſe book is that?" "Eliza's." The poſition will be ſtill more evident, when we conſider that both the pronouns in the following ſentence muſt have a ſimilar conſtruction: Is it *her* or *his* honour that is tarniſhed?" "It is not *hers*, but *his*."

Sometimes a ſubſtantive in the genitive or poſſeſſive caſe ſtands alone, the latter one by which it is governed being underſtood: as, "I called at the bookſeller's," that is, "at the bookſeller's *ſhop*."

1. If ſeveral nouns come together in the genitive caſe, the apoſtrophe with *s* is annexed to the laſt, and underſtood to the reſt: as, "John and Eliza's books;" "This was my father, mother, and uncle's advice." But when any words intervene, perhaps on account of the increaſed pauſe, the ſign of the poſſeſſive ſhould be annexed to each: as, "They are John's as well as Eliza's books;" "I had the phyſician's, the ſurgeon's, and the apothecary's aſſiſtance."

2. In poetry, the additional *s* is frequently omitted, but the apoſtrophe retained, in the ſame manner as in ſubſtantives of the plural number ending in *s*: as, "The wrath of Peleus' ſon." This ſeems not ſo allowable in proſe; which the following examples will demonſtrate: "Moſes' miniſter;" "Phinehas' wife?" "Feſtus came into Felix' room." "Theſe anſwers were made to the witneſs' queſtions." But in caſes which would give too

much of the hiſſing ſound, or increaſe the difficulty of pronunciation, the omiſſion takes place even in proſe: as, "For righteouſneſs' ſake;" "For conſcience' ſake."

3. Little explanatory circumſtances are particularly awkward between a genitive caſe and the word which uſually follows it; as, "She began to extol the farmer's, as ſhe called him, excellent underſtanding;" "the excellent underſtanding of the farmer, as ſhe called him."

4. When a ſentence conſiſts of terms ſignifying a name and an office, or of any expreſſions by which one part is deſcriptive or explanatory of the other, it may occaſion ſome doubt to which of them the ſign of the genitive caſe ſhould be annexed; or whether it ſhould be ſubjoined to them both. Thus ſome would ſay; "I left the parcel at Smith's the bookſeller;" others, "at Smith the bookſeller's;" and perhaps others, "at Smith's the bookſeller's." The firſt of theſe forms is moſt agreeable to the Engliſh idiom; and if the addition conſiſts of two or more words, the caſe ſeems to be leſs dubious; as, "I left the parcel at Smith's, the bookſeller and ſtationer." But as this ſubject requires a little further explanation to make it intelligible to the learners, we ſhall add a few obſervations tending to unfold its principles.

A phraſe in which the words are ſo connected and dependent, as to admit of no pauſe before the concluſion, neceſſarily requires the genitive ſign at or near the end of the phraſe: as, "Whoſe prerogative is it? It is the king of Great Britain's;" "That is the duke of Bridgewater's canal;" "The biſhop of Landaff's excellent book;" "The Lord mayor of London's authority;" "The captain of the guard's houſe."

When words in appoſition follow each other in quick ſucceſſion, it ſeems alſo moſt agreeable to our idiom, to give the ſign of the genitive a ſimilar ſituation; eſpecially if the noun which governs the genitive be expreſſed: as, "The emperor Leopold's;" "Dionyſius the tyrant's;"

"For David my *ſervant's* ſake;" "Give me John the *Baptiſt's* head;" "Paul the *apoſtle's* advice." But when a pauſe is proper, and the governing noun not expreſſed; and when the latter part of the ſentence is extended; it appears to be requiſite that the ſign ſhould be applied to the firſt genitive, and underſtood to the other: as, "I reſide at lord Stormont's, my old patron and benefactor;" "Whoſe glory did he emulate? He emulated Cæſar's, the greateſt general of antiquity." In the following ſentences, it would be very awkward to place the ſign, either at the end of each of the clauſes, or at the end of the latter one alone: "Theſe pſalms are David's, the king, prieſt, and prophet of the Jewiſh people;" "We ſtaid a month at lord Lyttelton's, the ornament of his country, and the friend of every virtue. The ſign of the genitive caſe may very properly be underſtood at the end of theſe members, an ellipſis at the latter part of ſentences being a common conſtruction in our language; as the learner will ſee by one or two examples: "They wiſhed to ſubmit, but he did not;" that is, "he did not *wiſh to ſubmit;*" "He ſaid it was their concern, but not his;" that is, "*not his concern.*"

If we annex the ſign of the genitive to the end of the laſt clauſe only, we ſhall perceive that a reſting place is wanted, and that the connecting circumſtance is placed too remotely, to be either perſpicuous or agreeable: as, "Whoſe glory did he emulate?" "He emulated Cæſar, the greateſt general of *antiquity's;*" "Theſe pſalms are David, the king, prieſt, and prophet of the Jewiſh *people's.*" It is much better to ſay, "This is *Paul's* advice, the chriſtian hero, and great apoſtle of the gentiles," than, "This is Paul, the chriſtian hero, and great apoſtle of the *gentiles'* advice." On the other hand, the application of the genitive ſign to both or all of the nouns in appoſition, would be generally harſh and diſpleaſing, and perhaps in ſome caſes incorrect: as, "The emperor's Leopold's;" "King's George's:" "Charles's the ſecond's;" "The parcel was

left at Smith's the bookſeller's and ſtationer's." The rules which we have endeavoured to elucidate, will prevent the inconvenience of both theſe modes of expreſſion; and they appear to be ſimple, perſpicuous, and conſiſtent with the idiom of the language.

5. The Engliſh genitive has often an unpleaſant ſound; ſo that we daily make more uſe of the particle *of* to expreſs the ſame relation. There is ſomething awkward in the following ſentences, in which this method has not been taken. "The general, in the army's name, publiſhed a declaration." "The commons' vote." "The Lords' houſe." "Unleſs he is very ignorant of the kingdom's condition." It were certainly better to ſay, "In the name of the army;" "The votes of the commons;" "The houſe of lords;" "The condition of the kingdom." It is alſo rather harſh to uſe two Engliſh genitives with the ſame ſubſtantive; as, "Whom he acquainted with the pope's and the king's pleaſure." "The pleaſure of the pope and the king," would have been better.

We ſometimes meet with three ſubſtantives dependent on one another, and connected by the prepoſition *of* applied to each of them; as, "The ſeverity of the diſtreſs of the ſon of the king, touched the nation;" but this mode of expreſſion is not to be recommended. It would be better to ſay, "The ſevere diſtreſs of the king's ſon, touched the nation." We have a ſtriking inſtance of this laborious mode of expreſſion, in the following ſentence: "*Of* ſome *of* the books *of* each *of* theſe claſſes *of* literature, a catalogue will be given at the end of the work."

6. In ſome caſes, we uſe both the genitive termination and the prepoſition *of*; as, "It is a diſcovery of Sir Iſaac Newton's." Sometimes indeed, unleſs we throw the ſentence into another form, this method is abſolutely neceſſary, in order to diſtinguiſh the ſenſe, and to give the idea of property, ſtrictly ſo called, which is the moſt important of the relations expreſſed by the genitive caſe: for the ex-

preſſions, "This picture of my friend," and "This picture of my friend's," ſuggeſt very different ideas. The latter only is that of property in the ſtricteſt ſenſe. The idea would, doubtleſs, be conveyed in a better manner, by ſaying, "This picture belonging to my friend."

When this double genitive, as it may be called, is not neceſſary to diſtinguiſh the ſenſe, and eſpecially in a grave ſtyle, it is generally omitted. Except to prevent ambiguity, it ſeems to be allowable only in caſes which ſuppoſe the exiſtence of a plurality of ſubjects of the ſame kind. In the expreſſions, "A ſubject of the emperor's;" "A ſentiment of my brother's;" more than one ſubject, and one ſentiment, are ſuppoſed to belong to the poſſeſſor. But when this plurality is neither intimated, nor neceſſarily ſuppoſed, the double genitive, except as before mentioned, ſhould not be uſed: as, "This houſe of the governor is very commodious;" "The crown of the king was ſtolen;" "That privilege of the ſcholar was never abuſed." (See page 56.) But after all that can be ſaid for this double genitive, ſome grammarians think that it would be better to avoid the uſe of it altogether, and to give the ſentiment another form of expreſſion.

7. When an entire clauſe of a ſentence, beginning with a participle of the preſent tenſe, is uſed as one name, or to expreſs one idea or circumſtance, the noun on which it depends may be put in the genitive caſe; thus, inſtead of ſaying, "What is the reaſon of this perſon diſmiſſing his ſervant ſo haſtily?" that is, "What is the reaſon of this perſon in diſmiſſing his ſervant ſo haſtily?" we may ſay, and perhaps ought to ſay, "What is the reaſon of this perſon's diſmiſſing of his ſervant ſo haſtily?" Juſt as we ſay, "What is the reaſon of this perſon's haſty diſmiſſion of his ſervant?" So alſo, we ſay, "I remember it being reckoned a great exploit;" or more properly, "I remember its being reckoned," &c. The following ſentence is correct and proper: "Much will depend on the *pupil's compoſing*, but more on *his reading* frequently." It would not be ac-

curate to ſay, "Much will depend on the *pupil compoſing*," &c. We alſo properly ſay; "This will be the effect *of the pupil's compoſing* frequently;" inſtead of, "*Of the pupil compoſing* frequently."

RULE XI.

Active verbs govern the objective caſe: as, "Truth ennobles *her*;" "She comforts *me*;" "They ſupport *us*;" "Virtue rewards *them* that follow *her*."

In Engliſh, the nominative caſe, denoting the ſubject, uſually goes before the verb; and the objective caſe, denoting the object, follows the verb active; and it is the order that determines the caſe in *nouns*; as, "Alexander conquered the Perſians." But the *pronoun* having a proper form for each of thoſe caſes, is ſometimes, when it is in the objective caſe, placed before the verb; and, when it is in the nominative caſe, follows the object and verb; as, "*Whom* ye ignorantly worſhip, *him* declare I unto you."

This poſition of the pronoun ſometimes occaſions its proper caſe and government to be neglected: as in the following inſtances: "Who ſhould I eſteem more than the wiſe and good?" "By the character of thoſe who you chooſe for your friends, your own is likely to be formed." "Thoſe are the perſons who he thought true to his intereſts." "Who ſhould I ſee the other day but my old friend?" "Whoſoever the court favours." In all theſe places it ought to be *whom*, the relative being governed in the objective caſe by the verbs "eſteem, chooſe, thought," &c. "He, who under all proper circumſtances, has the boldneſs to ſpeak truth, chooſe for thy friend;" It ſhould be "*him* who," &c.

Verbs neuter do not act upon, or govern, nouns and pronouns. "He *ſleeps*; they *muſe*;" &c. are not tranſitive. They are, therefore, not followed by an objective caſe, ſpecifying the object of an action. But when this caſe, or an

object of action, comes after such verbs, though it may carry the appearance of being governed by them, it is affected by a preposition or some other word understood: as, "He resided many years [that is, *for* or *during* many years] in that street;" "He rode several miles [that is, *for* or *through* the space of several miles] on that day;" "He lay an hour [that is, *during* an hour] in great torture." In the phrases, "To dream a dream," "To live a virtuous life," &c. it appears that the noun expresses the same notion with the verb, and that it is no object of an action.

1. Some writers, however, use certain neuter verbs as if they were transitive, putting after them the objective case of the pronoun which was the nominative case to it, agreeably to the French construction of reciprocal verbs; but this custom is so foreign to the idiom of the English tongue, that it ought not to be adopted or imitated. The following are some instances of this practice. "*Repenting* him of his design." "The king soon found reason *to repent* him of his provoking such dangerous enemies." "The popular lords did not fail to *enlarge* themselves on the subject." "The nearer his successes *approached* him to the throne." "Go *flee* thee away into the land of Judah.' "I think it by no means a fit and decent thing to *vie* charities," &c. "They have spent their whole time and pains to *agree* the sacred with the profane chronology."

2. Active verbs are sometimes as improperly made neuter; as, "I must *premise* with three circumstances." "Those that think to *ingratiate with* him by calumniating me."

3. The neuter verb is varied like the active; but, having in some degree the nature of the passive, it admits, in many instances, of the passive form, retaining still the neuter signification, chiefly in such verbs as signify some sort of motion, or change of place or condition: as, "I am come; I was gone; I am grown; I was fallen." The following examples, however, appear to be erroneous, in

giving the neuter verbs a paſſive form, inſtead of an active one. "The rule of our holy religion, from which we *are* infinitely *ſwerved*." "The whole obligation of that law and covenant *was* alſo *ceaſed*." "Whoſe number *was* now *amounted* to three hundred." "This mareſchal, upon ſome diſcontent, *was entered* into a conſpiracy againſt his maſter." "At the end of a campaign, when half the men *are deſerted* or killed." It ſhould be, "*have* ſwerved, *had* ceaſed," &c.

4. The verb *to be*, through all its variations, has the ſame caſe after it, as that which next precedes it: "*I* am *he* whom they invited;" "*It* may be (or might have been) *he*, but *it* cannot be (or could not have been) *I*;" "*It* is impoſſible to be *they*;" "*It* ſeems to have been *he*, who conducted himſelf ſo wiſely;" "*It* appeared to be *ſhe* that tranſacted the buſineſs;" "I underſtood *it* to be *him*;" "I believe *it* to have been *them*;" "We at firſt took it to be *her*; but were afterwards convinced that *it* was not *ſhe*." "He is not the perſon *who* it ſeemed he was." "He is really the perſon *who* he appeared to be." "She is not now the woman *whom* they repreſented *her* to have been." "*Whom* do you fancy *him* to be?" By theſe examples, it appears that this ſubſtantive verb has no government of caſe, but ſerves, in all its forms, as a conductor to the caſes; ſo that the two caſes which, in the conſtruction of the ſentence, are the *next* before and after it, muſt always be alike. Perhaps this ſubject will be more intelligible to the learner, by obſerving, that the words in the caſes preceding, and following the verb *to be*, may be ſaid to be *in appoſition* to each other. Thus, in the ſentence, "I underſtood it to be him," the words *it* and *him* are in appoſition; that is, they refer to the ſame thing, and are in the ſame caſe."

The following ſentences contain deviations from the rule, and exhibit the pronoun in a wrong caſe: "It might have been *him*, but there is no proof of it;" "Though I

was blamed, it could not have been *me*;" "I saw one whom I took to be *she*;" "She is the person *who* I understood it to have been:" "*Who* do you think me to be?" "*Whom* do men say that I am?" "And *whom* think ye that I am?"

5. The auxiliary *let* governs the objective case: as, "Let *him* beware;" "Let *us* judge candidly;" "Let *them* not presume;" "Let *me* die the death of the righteous."

RULE XII.

One verb governs another that follows it, or depends upon it, in the infinitive mood: as, "Cease *to do* evil; learn *to do* well;" "We should be prepared *to render* an account of our actions."

The preposition *to*, though generally used before the latter verb, is sometimes properly omitted: as, "I heard him say it; instead of "*to* say it."

The verbs which have commonly other verbs following them in the infinitive mood, without the sign *to*, are Bid, dare, need, make, see, hear, feel; and also, let, not used as an auxiliary; and perhaps a few others: as, "I bade him do it;" "Ye dare not do it;" "I saw him do it;" "I heard him say it:" "Thou letteſt him go."

1. In the following passages, the word *to*, the sign of the infinitive mood, where it is distinguished by Italic characters, is superfluous and improper. "I have observed some satirists *to* use," &c. "To see so many *to* make so little conscience of so great a sin." "It cannot but be a delightful spectacle to God and angels, to see a young person, besieged by powerful temptations on every side, *to* acquit himself gloriously, and resolutely *to* hold out against the most violent assaults; to behold one in the prime and flower of his age, that is courted by pleasures and honours, by the devil, and all the bewitching vanities of the world, *to* reject all these, and *to* cleave steadfastly unto God."

This mood has alſo been improperly uſed in the following places: "I am not like other men, *to* envy the talents I cannot reach." "Grammarians have denied, or at leaſt doubted, them *to be* genuine." "That all our doings may be ordered by thy governance, *to do* always what is righteous in thy ſight."

Adjectives, ſubſtantives, and participles, frequently govern the infinitive mood after them: as, "He is eager to learn;" "She is worthy to be loved;" "They have a deſire to improve;" "Endeavouring to perſuade."

The infinitive mood has much of the nature of a ſubſtantive, expreſſing the action itſelf which the verb ſignifies, as the participle has the nature of an adjective. Thus the infinitive mood does the office of a ſubſtantive in different caſes: in the nominative; as, "To *play* is pleaſant:" in the objective: as, "Boys love to *play*;" "For *to will* is preſent with me; but *to perform* that is, which is good, I find not."

The infinitive mood is often made abſolute, or uſed independently on the reſt of the ſentence, ſupplying the place of the conjunction *that* with the ſubjunctive mood: as, "To confeſs the truth, I was in fault;" "To begin with the firſt;" "To proceed;" "To conclude;" that is, "That I may confeſs," &c.

RULE XIII.

In the uſe of verbs and words, that, in point of time, relate to each other, the order of time muſt be obſerved. Inſtead of ſaying, "The Lord *hath given*, and the Lord hath taken away;" we ſhould ſay, "The Lord *gave*," &c. Inſtead of, "I *remember* him theſe many years;" it ſhould be, "I *have remembered* him," &c.

It is not eaſy to give particular rules for the management of the moods and tenſes of verbs with reſpect to one another, ſo that they may be proper and conſiſtent; but the

beſt rule that can be given, is this very general one, "To obſerve what the ſenſe neceſſarily requires." It may, however, be of uſe to give a few examples that ſeem faulty in theſe reſpects. "The laſt week I intended *to have written*," is a very common phraſe; the infinitive being in the paſt time, as well as the verb which it follows. But it is certainly wrong: for how long ſoever it now is ſince I thought of writing, "to write" was then preſent to me, and muſt ſtill be conſidered as preſent, when I bring back that time, and the thoughts of it. It ought, therefore, to be, "The laſt week I intended *to write*." The following ſentences are alſo erroneous: "I cannot excuſe the remiſsneſs of thoſe whoſe buſineſs it ſhould have been, as it certainly was their intereſt, to *have interpoſed* their good offices." "There were two circumſtances which made it neceſſary for them to *have loſt* no time." "Hiſtory painters would have found it difficult to *have invented* ſuch a ſpecies of beings." "It ought to be, "*to interpoſe, to loſe, to invent*." "On the morrow, becauſe he ſhould have known the certainty, wherefore he was accuſed of the Jews, he looſed him." It ought to be, "becauſe he *would know*," or rather "*being willing to know*." "The blind man ſaid unto him, Lord, that I *might* receive my ſight." "If by any means I *might* attain unto the reſurrection of the dead;" "*may*," in both places, would have been better. "From his biblical knowledge, he appears to ſtudy the Scriptures with great attention;" "*to have ſtudied*," &c. "I feared that I ſhould have loſt it, before I arrived at the city;" "*ſhould loſe it*." "I had rather walk;" It ſhould be, "I *would* rather walk." "It would have afforded me no ſatisfaction, if I could perform it:" it ſhould be, "if I *could have* performed it;" or "It *would afford* me no ſatisfaction, if I *could perform* it,"

To preſerve conſiſtency in the time of verbs, we muſt recollect that, in the ſubjunctive mood, the preſent and imperfect tenſes often carry with them a future tenſe; and that the auxiliaries *ſhould* and *would*, in the imperfect times,

are uſed to expreſs the preſent and future as well as the paſt: for which ſee page 83.

1. It is proper further to obſerve, that verbs of the infinitive mood, in the following form; "to write," "to be writing," and "to be written," always denote ſomething *contemporary with* the time of the governing verb, or *ſubſequent to it:* but when verbs of that mood are expreſſed as follows; "To have been writing," "to have written," and "to have been written," they always denote ſomething *antecedent* to the time of the governing verb. This remark is thought to be of importance; for if duly attended to, it will, in moſt caſes, be ſufficient to direct us in the relative application of theſe tenſes.

The following ſentence is properly and analogically expreſſed: "I found him better than I expected to find him." "Expected *to have found* him," is irreconcilable alike to grammar and to ſenſe. Indeed, all verbs expreſſive of hope, deſire, intention, or command, muſt invariably be followed by the preſent, and not the perfect of the infinitive. Every perſon would perceive an error in this expreſſion: "It is long ſince I commanded him *to have done* it:" Yet "expected to *have found*," is no better. It is as clear that the *finding* muſt be poſterior to the expectation as that the *obedience* muſt be poſterior to the command.

In the ſentence which follows, the latter verb is with propriety put in the perfect tenſe of the infinitive mood: "It would have afforded me great pleaſure, *to have been* the meſſenger of ſuch intelligence." As the meſſage muſt have preceded the pleaſure, the infinitive which expreſſes it, muſt alſo be precedent in time. But in this ſentence, "It was truly comfortable *to ſee* him ſo affectionate and dutiful to his parents," the verb is properly put in the preſent of the infinitive; becauſe the *comfort* and the *ſeeing* were contemporary.

It is proper to inform the learner, that, in order to expreſs the paſt time with the defective verb *ought*, the perfect of the infinitive muſt always be uſed: as, "He ought

to have done it." When we uſe this verb, this is the only poſſible way to diſtinguiſh the paſt from the preſent.

In ſupport of the poſitions advanced under this rule, we can produce the ſentiments of eminent grammarians: amongſt whom are Lowth and Campbell. But there are ſome writers on grammar, who ſtrenuouſly maintain, that the governed verb in the infinitive ought to be in the paſt tenſe, when the verb which governs it, is in the paſt time. Though this cannot be admitted, in the inſtances which we have already given under this rule, or in any inſtances of a ſimilar nature, yet there can be no doubt that, in many caſes, in which the thing referred to preceded the governing verb, it would be proper and allowable. We may ſay; "From a converſation I once had with him, he *appeared to have ſtudied* Homer with great care and judgment." It would be proper alſo to ſay, "From his converſation, he *appears to have ſtudied* Homer with great care and judgment;" "That unhappy man *is ſuppoſed to have died* by violence." Theſe examples are not only conſiſtent with our rule, but they confirm and illuſtrate it. It is the tenſe of the governing verb only, that marks what is called the abſolute time: the tenſe of the verb governed, marks ſolely its relative time with reſpect to the other.

To aſſert, as ſome writers do, that verbs in the infinitive mood have no tenſes, no relative diſtinctions of preſent, paſt, and future, is inconſiſtent with juſt grammatical views of the ſubject. That theſe verbs aſſociate with verbs in all the tenſes, is no proof of their having no peculiar time of their own. Whatever period the governing verb aſſumes, whether preſent, paſt, or future, the governed verb in the infinitive always reſpects that period, and its time is calculated from it. Thus, the time of the infinitive may be before, after, or the ſame as, the time of the governing verb, according as the thing ſignified by the infinitive is ſuppoſed to be before, after, or preſent with, the thing denoted by the governing verb. It is, therefore, with great propriety, that tenſes are aſſigned to verbs of the infinitive

mood. The point of time from which they are computed, is of no conſequence; ſince preſent, paſt, and future, are completely applicable to them. Our limits do not permit us to diſcuſs this point at large; or we might further evince the truth of our poſitions, by ſhowing how far all the tenſes of verbs denote *relative time;* and by elucidating the ſubject with a variety of examples. See the remarks on the participles, and the note at page 77.

We ſhall conclude our obſervations under this rule, by remarking, that though it may ſometimes be proper to uſe the paſt infinitive *immediately* after the governing verb, yet it is generally better to give the ſentence a different turn. Thus, inſtead of ſaying, "I wiſh to have written to him ſooner," "I then wiſhed to have written to him ſooner," "He will one day wiſh to have written ſooner;" it would be more perſpicuous and forcible, as well as more agreeable to the practice of good writers, to ſay, "I wiſh that I had written to him ſooner," "I then wiſhed that I had written to him ſooner," "He will one day wiſh that he had written ſooner." Should the juſtneſs of theſe ſtrictures be admitted, there would ſtill be numerous occaſions for the uſe of the paſt infinitive; as we may perceive by a few examples. "It would have made me happy to have found him wiſe and virtuous." "To have deferred his repentance longer, would have diſqualified him from repenting at all." "They will then ſee, that to have faithfully performed their duty, would have been their greateſt conſolation."

RULE XIV.

Participles have the ſame government as the verbs have from which they are derived: as, "I am weary with *hearing him;* "She is *inſtructing us;*" "He was *admoniſhing them.*"

1. Participles are ſometimes governed by the article; for the preſent participle, with the definite article *the* before it, becomes a ſubſtantive, and muſt have the prepoſi-

tion *of* after it: as, "Theſe are the rules of Grammar, by the obſerving of which, you may avoid miſtakes." It would not be proper to ſay, "by the obſerving which;" nor, "by obſerving of which;" but the phraſe, without either article or prepoſition, would be right: as, "by obſerving which." The article *a* or *an* has the ſame effect: as, "This was a betraying of the truſt repoſed in him."

This rule ariſes from the nature and idiom of our language, and from as plain a principle as any on which it is founded; namely, that a word which has the article before it, and the poſſeſſive prepoſition *of* after it, muſt be a noun; and, if a noun, it ought to follow the conſtruction of a noun, and not to have the regimen of a verb. It is the participial termination of this ſort of words that is apt to deceive us, and make us treat them as if they were of an amphibious ſpecies, partly nouns and partly verbs.

The following are a few examples of the violation of this rule. "He was ſent to prepare the way, by preaching of repentance;" it ought to be, "by *the* preaching of repentance;" or, "by preaching repentance." "By the continual mortifying our corrupt affections;" it ſhould be, "by the continual mortifying *of*," or, "by continually mortifying our corrupt affections." "They laid out themſelves towards *the* advancing and promoting the good of it;" "towards advancing and promoting the good." "It is *an* overvaluing ourſelves, to reduce every thing to the narrow meaſure of our capacities;" "it is overvaluing ourſelves," or, "*an* overvaluing *of* ourſelves." "Keeping of one day in ſeven," &c. it ought to be, "*the* keeping *of* one day;" or, "keeping one day."

A phraſe in which the article precedes the preſent participle and the poſſeſſive prepoſition follows it, will not, in every inſtance, convey the ſame meaning, as would be conveyed by the participle without the article and prepoſition. "He expreſſed the pleaſure he had in the hearing of the philoſopher," is capable of a different ſenſe from,

"He expreſſed the pleaſure he had in hearing the philoſopher." When therefore, we wiſh, for the ſake of harmony or variety, to ſubſtitute one of theſe phraſeologies for the other, we ſhould previouſly conſider whether they are perfectly ſimilar in the ſentiments they convey.

2. The ſame obſervations which have been made reſpecting the effect of the article and participle, appear to be applicable to the pronoun and participle when they are ſimilarly aſſociated: as, "Much depends on *their obſerving of* the rule, and error will be the conſequence of *their neglecting of* it," inſtead of "*their obſerving* the rule, and *their neglecting* it." We ſhall perceive this more clearly, if we ſubſtitute a noun for the pronoun; as, "Much depends upon *Tyro's obſerving of* the rule," &c. But, as this conſtruction ſounds rather harſhly, it would, in general, be better to expreſs the ſentiment in the following, or ſome other form: "Much depends on the *rule's being obſerved;* and error will be the conſequence of *its being neglected.*" This remark may be applied to ſeveral other modes of expreſſion to be found in this work; which, though they are contended for as ſtrictly correct, are not always the moſt eligible, on account of their unpleaſant ſound. See pages 56, 77, 171—175.

We ſometimes meet with expreſſions like the following: "*In forming of* his ſentences, he was very exact;" "*From calling of* names, he proceeded to blows. But this is incorrect language; for prepoſitions do not, like articles and pronouns, convert the participle into the nature of a ſubſtantive; as we have ſhown above in the phraſe, "By obſerving which."

3. As the perfect participle and the imperfect tenſe are ſometimes different in their form, care muſt be taken that they be not indiſcriminately uſed. It is frequently ſaid, "He begun," for "he began;" "he run," for "he ran;" "he drunk," for he drank;" the participle being here uſed inſtead of the imperfect tenſe: and much more fre

quently the imperfect tenſe inſtead of the participle: as, "I had wrote," for "I had written;" "I was choſe," for, "I was choſen;" "I have eat," for "I have eaten," "His words were interwove with ſighs;" "were *interwoven*." "He would have ſpoke;" "*ſpoken*." "He hath bore witneſs to his faithful ſervants;" "*borne*." "By this means he over-run his guide;" "*over-ran*." "The ſun has roſe;" "*riſen*." "His conſtitution has been greatly ſhook, but his mind is too ſtrong to be ſhook by ſuch cauſes;" "*ſhaken*," in both places. "They were verſes wrote on glaſs," "*written*." "Philoſophers have often miſtook the ſource of true happineſs:" it ought to be "*miſtaken*."

The participle ending in *ed* is often improperly contracted by changing *ed* into *t*: as, "In good behaviour, he is not *ſurpaſt* by any pupil of the ſchool." It ought to be "*ſurpaſſed*."

RULE XV.

Adverbs, though they have no government of caſe, tenſe, &c. require an appropriate ſituation in the ſentence, viz. for the moſt part, before adjectives after verbs active or neuter, and frequently between the auxiliary and the verb: as, "He made a *very ſenſible* diſcourſe; he *ſpoke unaffectedly* and *forcibly*, and *was attentively heard* by the whole aſſembly."

A few inſtances of erroneous poſitions of adverbs may ſerve to illuſtrate the rule. "He muſt not expect to find ſtudy agreeable always;" "*always* agreeable." "We always find them ready when we want them;" "we find them *always* ready," &c. "Diſſertations on the prophecies which have remarkably been fulfilled;" "which have been *remarkably*." "Inſtead of looking contemptuouſly down on the crooked in mind or in body, we ſhould look up thankfully to God, who hath made us better;" "inſtead of looking down *contemptuouſly*, &c. we ſhould *thank-*

fully look up," &c. "If thou art bleſſed naturally with a good memory, continually exerciſe it;" "*naturally bleſſed*," &c. "exerciſe it *continually*."

Sometimes the adverb is placed with propriety before the verb, or at ſome diſtance after it; ſometimes between the two auxiliaries; and ſometimes after them both; as in the following examples. "Vice *always* creeps by degrees, and *inſenſibly* twines around us thoſe concealed fetters, by which we are at laſt *completely* bound." "He encouraged the Engliſh Barons to carry their oppoſition *farther*." "They compelled him to declare that he would abjure the realm *for ever*;" inſtead of "to carry farther their oppoſition;" and "to abjure for ever the realm.' "He has *generally* been reckoned an honeſt man:" "The book may *always* be had at ſuch a place:" in preference to "has been generally;" and "may be always." "Theſe rules will be *clearly* underſtood, after they have been *diligently* ſtudied," are preferable to, "Theſe rules will *clearly* be underſtood, after they have *diligently* been ſtudied."

From the preceding remarks and examples, it appears that no exact and determinate rule can be given for the placing of adverbs on all occaſions. The general rule may be of conſiderable uſe; but the eaſy flow and perſpicuity of the phraſe, are the things which ought to be chiefly regarded.

The adverb *there* is often uſed as an expletive, or as a word that adds nothing to the ſenſe; in which caſe it precedes the verb and the nominative noun: as, "There is a perſon at the door;" "There are ſome thieves in the houſe;" which would be as well, or better, expreſſed by ſaying, "A perſon is at the door;" "Some thieves are in the houſe." Sometimes it is made uſe of to give a ſmall degree of emphaſis to the ſentence: as, "*There* was a man ſent from God, whoſe name was John." When it is applied in its ſtrict ſenſe, it principally follows the verb and the nominative caſe: as, "The man ſtands *there*."

1. The adverb *never* generally precedes the verb: as, "I never was there;" "He never comes at a proper time."

When an auxiliary is uſed, it is placed indifferently, either before or after this adverb: as, "He was never ſeen (or never was ſeen) to laugh from that time." *Never* ſeems to be improperly uſed in the following paſſages. "Aſk me never ſo much dowry and gift." "If I make my hands never ſo clean." "Charm he never ſo wiſely." The word "*ever*" would be more ſuitable to the ſenſe.

2. In imitation of the French idiom, the adverb of place *where*, is often uſed inſtead of the pronoun relative and a prepoſition. "They framed a proteſtation, *where* they repeated all their former claims; i. e. "*in which* they repeated." "The king was ſtill determined to run forwards, in the ſame courſe *where* he was already, by his precipitate career, too fatally advanced;" i. e. "*in which* he was." But it would be better to avoid this mode of expreſſion.

The adverbs *hence*, *thence* and *whence*, imply a prepoſition; for they ſignify, "from this place, from that place, from what place." It ſeems, therefore, ſtrictly ſpeaking, to be improper to join a prepoſition with them, becauſe it is ſuperfluous: as, "This is the leviathan, from whence the wits of our age are ſaid to borrow their weapons;" "An ancient author propheſies from hence." But the origin of theſe words is little attended to, and the prepoſition *from* ſo often uſed in conſtruction with them, that the omiſſion of it, in many caſes, would ſeem ſtiff, and be diſagreeable.

The adverbs *here*, *there*, *where*, are often improperly applied to verbs ſignifying motion, inſtead of the adverbs *hither*, *thither*, *whither*: as, "He came *here* haſtily;" "They rode *there* with ſpeed." They ſhould be, "He came *hither*:" "They rode *thither*," &c.

3. We have ſome examples of adverbs being uſed for ſubſtantives: "In 1687, he erected it into a community of regulars, ſince *when*, it has begun to increaſe in thoſe countries as a religious order;" i. e. "ſince *which time*." "A little while and I ſhall not ſee you;" i. e. "a *ſhort time*." "It is worth their while;" i. e. "it deſerves their time and

pains." But this uſe of the word rather ſuits familiar than grave ſtyle. The ſame may be ſaid of the phraſe, "To do a thing *anyhow*;" i. e. "in any manner;" or, "*ſomehow*;" i. e. "in ſome manner." "Somehow, worthy as theſe people are, they look upon public penance as diſreputable."

RULE XVI.

Two negatives, in Engliſh, deſtroy one another, or are equivalent to an affirmative: as, "*Nor* did they *not* perceive him;" that is, "they did perceive him." "His language, though inelegant, is *not ungrammatical*;" that is, "it is grammatical."

It is better to expreſs an affirmation, by a regular affirmative, than by two ſeparate negatives, as in the former ſentence: but when one of the negatives is joined to another word, as in the latter ſentence, the two negatives form a pleaſing and delicate variety of expreſſion.

Some writers have improperly employed two negatives inſtead of one; as in the following inſtances: "I never did repent for doing good, nor ſhall not now:" "*nor ſhall I now.*" "Never no imitator ever grew up to his author:" "*never did any*," &c. "I cannot by no means allow him what his argument muſt prove:" "I cannot by *any* means," &c. or, "I *can by no means*." "Nor let no comforter approach me;" "nor let *any* comforter," &c. "Nor is danger ever apprehended in ſuch a government, no more than we commonly apprehend danger from thunder or earthquakes:" it ſhould be, "*any more.*" "Arioſto, Taſſo, Galileo, *no more* than Raphael, were *not* born in republics." "Neither Arioſto, Taſſo, nor Galileo, any more than Raphael, was born in a republic."

RULE XVII.

Prepoſitions govern the objective caſe: as, "I have heard a good character *of her*;" "*From him* that is needy turn not away;" "A word to the

wiſe is ſufficient *for them*;" "Strength of mind is *with them* that are pure in heart."

The following are examples of the nominative caſe being uſed inſtead of the objective. "Who ſerveſt thou under?" "Who do you ſpeak to?" "We are ſtill much at a loſs who civil power belongs to?" "Who doſt thou aſk for?" "Aſſociate not with thoſe who none can ſpeak well of." In all theſe places it ought to be "*whom*."

The prepoſitions *to* and *for* are often underſtood, chiefly before the pronouns: as, "Give me the book;" "Get me ſome paper;" that is, "*to* me; *for* me." "Wo is me;" i. e. "*to* me." "He was baniſhed England;" i. e. "*from* England."

1. The prepoſition is often ſeparated from the relative which it governs: as, "Whom wilt thou give it to?" inſtead of, "*To whom* wilt thou give it?" "He is an author whom I am much delighted with;" "The world is too polite to ſhock authors with a truth, which generally their bookſellers are the firſt that inform them of." This is an idiom to which our language is ſtrongly inclined; it prevails in common converſation, and ſuits very well with the familiar ſtyle in writing: but the placing of the prepoſition before the relative, is more graceful, as well as more perſpicuous, and agrees much better with the ſolemn and elevated ſtyle.

2. Some writers ſeparate the prepoſition from its noun, in order to connect different prepoſitions with the ſame noun: as, "To ſuppoſe the zodiac and planets to be efficient *of*, and antecedent *to*, themſelves." This, whether in the familiar or the ſolemn ſtyle, is always inelegant, and ſhould generally be avoided. In forms of law, and the like, where fulneſs and exactneſs of expreſſion muſt take place of every other conſideration, it may be admitted.

3. Different relations, and different ſenſes, muſt be expreſſed by different prepoſitions, though in conjunction

with the ſame verb or adjective. Thus we ſay, "to converſe *with* a perſon, *upon* a ſubject, *in* a houſe," &c. We alſo ſay, "We are diſappointed *of* a thing," when we cannot get it, "and diſappointed *in* it," when we have it, and find it does not anſwer our expectations. But two different prepoſitions muſt be improper in the ſame conſtruction, and in the ſame ſentence: as, "The combat *between* thirty Britons *againſt* twenty Engliſh."

In ſome caſes it is difficult to ſay, to which of two prepoſitions the preference is to be given, as both are uſed promiſcuouſly, and cuſtom has not decided in favour of either of them. We ſay, "Expert at," and "expert in a thing." "Expert at finding a remedy for his miſtakes;" "Expert in deception."

When prepoſitions are ſubjoined to nouns, they are generally the ſame that are ſubjoined to the verbs from which the nouns are derived: as, "A compliance *with*," "to comply *with*;" "A diſpoſition *to* tyranny," "diſpoſed *to* tyranniſe."

4. As an accurate and appropriate uſe of the prepoſition is of great importance, we ſhall ſelect a conſiderable number of examples of impropriety, in the application of this part of ſpeech.

1ſt, With reſpect to the prepoſition *of*—"He is reſolved of going to the Perſian court;" "*on* going," &c. "He was totally dependent of the Papal crown;" "*on* the Papal," &c. "To call of a perſon," and to wait of him;" "*on* a perſon," &c. "He was eager of recommending it to his fellow citizens," "*in* recommending," &c. *Of* is ſometimes omitted, and ſometimes inſerted, after *worthy*: as, "It is worthy obſervation," or, "of obſervation." But it would have been better omitted in the following ſentences. "The emulation who ſhould ſerve their country beſt, no longer ſubſiſts among them, but *of* who ſhould obtain the moſt lucrative command." "The rain hath been falling *of* a long time;" "falling a long time." "It is

ſituation chiefly which decides of the fortune and characters of men :" "decides the fortune," or, "*concerning* the fortune." "He found the greateſt difficulty of writing ;" "*in* writing." "It might have given me a greater taſte of its antiquities." A taſte *of* a thing implies actual enjoyment of it ; but a taſte *for* it, implies only a capacity for enjoyment. "This had a much greater ſhare of inciting him, than any regard after his father's commands ;" "ſhare *in* inciting," and "regard *to* his father's" &c.

2d, With reſpect to the prepoſitions *to* and *for*.—"You have beſtowed your favours to the moſt deſerving perſons ;" "*upon* the moſt deſerving," &c. "He accuſed the miniſters for betraying the Dutch :" "*of* having betrayed." "His abhorrence to that ſuperſtitious figure ;" "*of* that," &c. "A great change to the better ;" "*for* the better." "Thy prejudice to my cauſe ;" "*againſt*." "The Engliſh were very different people then to what they are at preſent ;" "*from* what," &c. "In compliance to the declaration ;" "*with*," &c. "It is more than they thought for ;" "thought *of*." "There is no need for it ;" "*of* it." *For* is ſuperfluous in the phraſe, "More than he knows *for*." "No diſcouragement for the authors to proceed ;" "*to* the authors," &c. "It was perfectly in compliance to ſome perſons ;" "*with*." "The wiſeſt princes need not think it any diminution to their greatneſs, or derogation to their ſufficiency, to rely upon counſel ;" "diminution *of*," and "derogation *from*."

3d, With reſpect to the prepoſitions *with* and *upon*.—"Reconciling himſelf with the king." "Thoſe things which have the greateſt reſemblance with each other, frequently differ the moſt." "That ſuch rejection ſhould be conſonant with our common nature." "Conformable with," &c. "The hiſtory of Peter is agreeable with the ſacred texts." In all the above inſtances, it ſhould be, "*to*," inſtead of "*with*." "It is a uſe that perhaps I ſhould not have thought on ;" "thought *of*." "A greater quantity may be taken from the heap, without making any ſenſible

alteration upon it;" "*in* it." "Intruſted to perſons on whom the parliament could confide;" "*in* whom." "He was made much on at Argos;" "much *of*." "If policy can prevail upon force;" "*over* force." "I do likewiſe diſſent with the examiner;" "*from*."

4th, With reſpect to the prepoſitions *in*, *from*, &c.—"They ſhould be informed in ſome parts of his character;" "*about*," or "*concerning*." "Upon ſuch occaſions as fell into their cognizance;" "*under*." "That variety of factions into which we are ſtill engaged;" "*in* which." "To reſtore myſelf into the favour;" "*to* the favour." "Could he have profited from repeated experiences;" *by*." *From* ſeems to be ſuperfluous after *forbear*: as, "He could not forbear from appointing the pope," &c. "A ſtrict obſervance after times and faſhions;" "*of* times." "The character which we may now value ourſelves by drawing;" "*upon* drawing." "Neither of them ſhall make me ſwerve out of the path;" "*from* the path." "Ye blind guides, which ſtrain *at* a gnat, and ſwallow a camel;" it ought to be, "which ſtrain *out* a gnat, or, take a gnat out of the liquor by ſtraining it." The impropriety of the prepoſition has wholly deſtroyed the meaning of the phraſe.

The prepoſition *among* always implies a number of things; and therefore cannot be uſed in conjunction with the word *every*, which is in the ſingular number: as, "Which is found among every ſpecies of liberty;" "The opinion ſeems to gain ground among every body."

5. The prepoſition *to* is made uſe of before nouns of place, when they follow verbs and participles of motion: as "I went *to* London;" "I am going *to* town." But the prepoſition *at* is uſed after the neuter verb *to be*: as, "I have been *at* London;" "I was at the place appointed;" "I ſhall be *at* Paris." We likewiſe ſay; "He touched, arrived *at* any place." The prepoſition *in* is ſet before countries, cities, and large towns: as, "He lives in France, in London, or in Birmingham." But before villages, ſingle

houſes, and cities which are in diſtant countries, *at* is uſed; as, "He lives at Hackney;" "He reſides at Montpelier."

It is a matter of indifference with reſpect to the pronoun *one another*, whether the prepoſition *of* be placed between the two parts of it, or before them both. We may ſay, "They were jealous of one another;" or "They were jealous one of another;" but perhaps the former is better.

Participles are frequently uſed as prepoſitions: as, excepting, reſpecting, touching, concerning, according. "They were all in fault *except* or *excepting* him."

RULE XVIII.

Conjunctions connect the ſame moods and tenſes of verbs, and caſes of nouns and pronouns: as, "Candour is *to be approved and practiſed*:" "If thou ſincerely *deſire*, and earneſtly *purſue* virtue, ſhe *will* aſſuredly *be found* by thee, *and prove* a rich reward;" "The maſter taught *her and me* to write;" "*He and ſhe* were ſchool-fellows."

Conjunctions are, indeed, frequently made to connect different moods and tenſes of verbs; but in theſe inſtances the nominative muſt be repeated, which is not neceſſary, though it may be done, under the conſtruction to which the rule refers. We may ſay, "He *lives* temperately *and* he *has* long *lived* temperately;" "He *may return*, but he *will not continue*;" "She *was* proud, though ſhe *is* now humble;" but it is obvious, that the repetition of the nominative in ſuch caſes, is indiſpenſable; and that, by this means, the latter members of theſe ſentences are rendered not ſo ſtrictly dependent on the preceding, as thoſe are which come under the rule. When, in the progreſs of a ſentence, we paſs from the affirmative to the negative form, or from the negative to the affirmative, the ſubject or nominative is always reſumed: as, "He is rich, but he is not reſpectable." "He is not rich, but he is reſpectable." There appears to be equal reaſon for repeating the nomi-

native, and resuming the subject, when the course of the sentence is diverted by a change of the mood or tense.

A few examples of inaccuracies respecting this rule may further display its utility.

"If thou bring thy gift to the altar, and there remembereſt that thy brother hath aught againſt thee." It ought to be, "and there *remember*."

"If he prefer a virtuous life, and is ſincere in his profeſſions, he will ſucceed;" "if he *prefers*."

"To deride the miſeries of the unhappy, is inhuman; and wanting compaſſion towards them, is unchriſtian;" "and *to want* compaſſion."

"The parliament addreſſed the king, and has been prorogued the ſame day:" "and *was* prorogued."

"Anger glances into the breaſt of a wiſe man, but will reſt only in the boſom of fools;" "but *reſts* only;" or, "but *it will* reſt only." "His wealth and him bid adieu to each other;" "and *he*." "He entreated us, my comrade and I, to live harmoniouſly;" "comrade and *me*." "My ſiſter and her were on good terms;" "and *ſhe*." "Virtue is praiſed by many, and would be deſired alſo, if her worth were really known;" "and *ſhe* would." "The world recedes, and will ſoon diſappear;" "and *it* will." "We often overlook the bleſſings which are in our poſſeſſion, and are ſearching after thoſe which are out of our reach;" it ought to be, "and *ſearch* after."

RULE XIX.

Some conjunctions require the indicative, ſome the ſubjunctive mood, after them. It is a general rule, that when ſomething contingent or doubtful is implied, the ſubjunctive ought to be uſed: as, "*If I were* to write, he would not regard it;" "He will not be pardoned, *unleſs he repent*."

Conjunctions that are of a poſitive and abſolute nature require the indicative mood. "*As* virtue

advances, ſo vice *recedes :*" "He is healthy, *becauſe* he *is* temperate."

The conjunctions, *if, though, unleſs, except, whether*, &c. generally require the ſubjunctive mood after them: as, "*If* thou *be* afflicted, repine not;" "*Though* he *ſlay* me, yet will I truſt in him;" "He cannot be clean, *unleſs* he *waſh* himſelf;" "No power, *except* it *were* given from above;" "*Whether* it *were* I or they, ſo we preach." But even theſe conjunctions, when the ſentence does not imply doubt, admit of the indicative: as, "*Though* he *is* poor, he is contented."

The following example may, in ſome meaſure, ſerve to illuſtrate the diſtinction between the ſubjunctive and the indicative moods. "*Though* he *were* divinely inſpired, and ſpoke therefore as the oracles of God, with ſupreme authority; *though* he *were* endued with ſupernatural powers, and could, therefore, have confirmed the truth of what he uttered by miracles; yet, in compliance with the way in which human nature and reaſonable creatures are uſually wrought upon, he reaſoned." That our Saviour was divinely inſpired, and endued with ſupernatural powers, are poſitions that are here taken for granted, as not admitting of the leaſt doubt; they would therefore have been better expreſſed in the indicative mood: "*Though* he *was* divinely inſpired; *though* he *was* endued with ſupernatural powers." The ſubjunctive is uſed in the like improper manner in the following example: "*Though* he *were* a ſon, yet learned he obedience, by the things which he ſuffered." But, in a ſimilar paſſage, the indicative with great propriety, is employed to the ſame purpoſe: "*Though* he *was* rich, yet for your ſakes he became poor."

1. *Leſt*, and *that*, annexed to a command preceding, neceſſarily require the ſubjunctive mood: as, "Love not ſleep, *leſt* thou *come* to poverty;" "Reprove not a ſcorner, *leſt* he *hate* thee;" "Take heed *that* thou *ſpeak* not to Jacob."

If with *but* following it, when futurity is denoted, requires the ſubjunctive mood: as, "*If* he do *but* touch the hills, they ſhall ſmoke;" "*If* he *be but* diſcreet, he will ſucceed." But the indicative ought to be uſed, on this occaſion, when future time is not ſignified: as, "*If*, in this expreſſion, he *does but* jeſt, no offence ſhould be taken;" "*If* ſhe *is but* ſincere, I am happy." The ſame diſtinction applies to the following forms of expreſſion: "If he *do* ſubmit, *it* will be from neceſſity;" "Though he *does* ſubmit, he is not convinced;" "If thou do not reward this ſervice, he will be diſcouraged;" "If thou *doſt* heartily forgive him, endeavour to forget the offence."

2. In the following inſtances, the conjunction *that*, expreſſed or underſtood, ſeems to be improperly accompanied with the ſubjunctive mood. "So much ſhe dreaded his tyranny, *that* the fate of her friend ſhe *dare* not lament." "He reaſoned ſo artfully that his friends would liſten, and think [*that*] he *were* not wrong."

3. The ſame conjunction governing both the indicative and the ſubjunctive moods, in the ſame ſentence, and in the ſame circumſtances, ſeems to be a great impropriety: as in theſe inſtances. "*If* there *be* but one body of legiſlators, it is no better than a tyranny; *if* there *are* only two, there will want a caſting voice." "*If* a man *have* a hundred ſheep, and one of them is gone aſtray," &c.

4. Almoſt all the irregularities in the conſtruction of any language, have ariſen from the ellipſis of ſome words, which were originally inſerted in the ſentence, and made it regular; and it is probable, that this has been the caſe with reſpect to the conjunctive form of words, now in uſe; which will appear from the following examples: "We ſhall overtake him though he *run*;" that is, "though he *ſhould* run;" "Unleſs he *act* prudently, he will not accompliſh his purpoſe;" that is, "unleſs he *ſhall* act prudently." "If he *ſucceed* and *obtain* his end, he will not be the happier for it;"

that is, "If he *ſhould* ſucceed, and *ſhould* obtain his end." Theſe remarks and examples are deſigned to ſhow the original of our preſent conjunctive forms of expreſſion; and to enable the ſtudent to examine the propriety of uſing them, by tracing the words in queſtion to their proper origin and ancient connexions. But it is neceſſary to be more particular on this ſubject, and therefore we ſhall add a few obſervations reſpecting it.

That part of the verb which grammarians call the preſent tenſe of the ſubjunctive mood, has a future ſignification. This is effected by varying the terminations of the ſecond and third perſons ſingular of the indicative; as will be evident from the following examples:" "If thou *proſper*, thou ſhouldſt be thankful;" "Unleſs he *ſtudy* more cloſely he will never be learned." Some writers however would expreſs theſe ſentiments without thoſe variations; "If thou *proſpereſt*," &c. "Unleſs he *ſtudies*," &c: and as there is great diverſity of practice in this point, it is proper to offer the learners a few remarks to aſſiſt them in diſtinguiſhing the right application of theſe different forms of expreſſion. It may be conſidered as a rule, that the changes of termination are neceſſary, when theſe two circumſtances concur: 1ſt, When the ſubject is of a dubious and contingent nature; and 2d, When the verb has a reference to future time. In the following ſentences, both theſe circumſtances will be found to unite: "If thou *injure* another, thou wilt hurt thyſelf;" "He has a hard heart; and if he *continue* impenitent, he muſt ſuffer:" "He will maintain his principles, though he *loſe* his eſtate;" "Whether he *ſucceed* or not, his intention is laudable;" "If he *be* not proſperous, he will not repine;" "If a man *ſmite* his ſervant, and he *die*," &c. *Exodus* xxi. 20. In all theſe examples, the things ſignified by the verbs are uncertain, and refer to future time. But in the inſtances which follow, future time is not referred to; and therefore a different conſtruction takes place: "If thou *liveſt* virtuouſly, thou art happy;" "Unleſs he *means* what he ſays, he is doubly faithleſs;" "If

he *allows* the excellence of virtue, he does not regard her precepts;" "Though he *ſeems* to be ſimple and artleſs, he has deceived us;" "Whether virtue *is* better than rank or wealth, admits not of any diſpute;" "If thou *believeſt* with all thy heart, thou mayſt," &c. *Acts* viii. 37.—There are many ſentences, introduced by conjunctions, in which neither contingency nor futurity is denoted: as, "Though he *excels* her in knowledge, ſhe far exceeds him in virtue." "I have no doubt of his principles: but if he *believes* the truths of religion, he does not act according to them."

That both the circumſtances of contingency and futurity are neceſſary, as teſts of the propriety of altering the terminations, will be evident, by inſpecting the following examples; which ſhow that there are inſtances, in which neither of the circumſtances alone implies the other. In the three examples following, contingency is denoted, but not futurity. "If he *thinks* as he ſpeaks, he may ſafely be truſted." "If he *is* now diſpoſed to it, I will perform the operation." "He acts uprightly, unleſs he *deceives* me." In the following ſentences, futurity is ſignified, but not contingency. "As ſoon as the ſun *ſets*, it will be cooler." "As the autumn *advances*, theſe birds will gradually emigrate."

It appears, from the tenor of the examples adduced, that the rules above mentioned may be extended to aſſert, that in caſes wherein contingency and futurity do not concur, it is not proper to turn the verb from its ſignification of preſent time, nor to vary its form or termination. The verb would then be in the indicative mood, whatever conjunctions might attend it.—If theſe rules, which ſeem to form the true diſtinction between the ſubjunctive and the indicative moods in this tenſe, were adopted and eſtabliſhed in practice, we ſhould have, on this point, a principle of deciſion ſimple and preciſe, and readily applicable to every caſe that may occur.—It will, doubtleſs, ſometimes happen, that, on this occaſion, as well as on many other

occaſions, a ſtrict adherence to grammatical rules, would render the language ſtiff and formal: but when caſes of this ſort occur, it would be better to give the expreſſion a different turn, than to violate grammar for the ſake of eaſe, or even of elegance. See *Rule* 14. *Note* 2.

5. On the form of the auxiliaries in the compound tenſes of the ſubjunctive mood, it ſeems proper to make a few obſervations. Some writers expreſs themſelves in the perfect tenſe, as follows: "If thou *have* determined, we muſt ſubmit:" "Unleſs he *have* conſented, the writing will be void:" but we believe that few authors of critical ſagacity write in this manner. The proper form ſeems to be, "If thou *haſt* determined; unleſs he *has* conſented," &c. conformably to what we meet with in the Bible: "I have ſurnamed thee, though thou *haſt* not known me." *Iſaiah* xlv. 4. 5. What is the hope of the hypocrite, though he *hath* gained," &c. *Job* xxvii. 8. See alſo *Acts* xxviii. 4.

6. In the pluperfect and future tenſes, we ſometimes meet with ſuch expreſſions as theſe: "If thou *had* applied thyſelf diligently, thou wouldſt have reaped the advantage;" "Unleſs thou *ſhall* ſpeak the whole truth, we cannot determine;" "If thou *will* undertake the buſineſs, there is little doubt of ſucceſs." This mode of expreſſing the auxiliaries does not appear to be warranted by the general practice of correct writers. They ſhould be *hadſt*, *ſhalt*, and *wilt*: and we find them uſed in this form in the ſacred Scriptures.

"If thou *hadſt* known," &c. *Luke* xix. 47. "If thou *hadſt* been here," &c. *John* xi. 21. If thou *wilt*, thou canſt make me clean," *Matt.* viii. 2. See alſo, 2 *Sam.* ii. 27. *Matt.* xvii. 4.

7. The ſecond perſon ſingular of the imperfect tenſe in the ſubjunctive mood, is alſo very frequently varied in its termination: as, "If thou *loved* him truly, thou wouldſt obey him;" "Though thou *did* conform, thou haſt gained

nothing by it." This variation, however, appears to be improper. Our preſent verſion of the Scriptures, which we again refer to, as a good grammatical authority in points of this nature, decides againſt it. "If thou *knewe*ſt the gift," &c. *John* iv. 10. "If thou *didſt* receive it, why doſt thou glory?" &c. 1 *Cor.* iv. 7. See alſo *Dan.* v. 22. But it is proper to remark, that the form of the verb *to be*, when uſed ſubjunctively in the imperfect tenſe, is indeed very conſiderably and properly varied from that which it has in the imperfect of the indicative mood: as the learner will perceive by turning to the conjugation of that verb.*

8. It may not be ſuperfluous, alſo to obſerve, that the auxiliaries of the potential mood, when applied to the ſubjunctive, do not change the termination of the ſecond perſon ſingular. We properly ſay, "If thou *mayſt* or *canſt* go:" "Though thou *mightſt* live;" "Unleſs thou *couldſt* read;" "If thou *wouldſt* learn;" and not "If thou *may* or *can* go;" &c. It is ſufficient, on this point, to adduce the authorities of Johnſon and Lowth; "If thou *ſhouldſt* go;" *Johnſon.* "If thou *mayſt*, *mightſt*, or *couldſt* love;" *Lowth.* Some authors think, that when *that* expreſſes the motive or end, the termination of theſe auxiliaries ſhould be varied: as, "I adviſe thee, *that* thou *may* beware;" "He checked thee, *that* thou *ſhould* not preſume:" but there does not appear to be any ground for this exception. If the expreſſion of "condition, doubt, contingency," &c. does not warrant a change in the form of theſe auxiliaries, why ſhould they have it, when a motive or end is expreſſed? The tranſlators of the Scriptures do not appear to have made the diſtinction contended for. "Thou buildeſt the wall, *that* thou *mayſt* be their king," *Neh.* vi. 6. "There is forgiveneſs with thee, *that* thou *mayſt* be feared." *Pſalms* cxxx. 4.

From the preceding obſervations under this rule, it appears, that with reſpect to what is termed the preſent

* See obſervations on the manner of conjugating the ſubjunctive mood, at pages 90, 102.

tenſe of any verb, when the circumſtances of contingency and futurity concur, it is proper to vary the terminations of the ſecond and third perſons ſingular; that without the concurrence of thoſe circumſtances, the terminations ſhould not be altered; and that the verb and the auxiliaries of the three paſt tenſes, and the auxiliaries of the future, undergo no alterations whatever: except the *imperfect* of the verb *to be*, which, in caſes denoting contingency, is varied in all the perſons of the ſingular number.

After peruſing what has been advanced on this ſubject, it will be natural for the ſtudent to inquire, what is the extent of the ſubjunctive mood? Some grammarians think it extends only to what is called the preſent tenſe of verbs generally, under the circumſtances of contingency and futurity; and to the imperfect tenſe of the verb *to be*, when it denotes contingency: becauſe in theſe tenſes only, the form of the verb admits of variation; and they ſuppoſe that it is variation merely which conſtitutes the diſtinction of moods. It is the opinion of other grammarians, that, beſides the two caſes juſt mentioned, all verbs in the three paſt, and the two future tenſes, are in the ſubjunctive mood, when they denote contingency and uncertainty, though they have not any change of termination; and that, when contingency is not ſignified, the verb, through all theſe five tenſes, belongs to the indicative mood, whatever conjunction may attend it. They think, that the definition and nature of the ſubjunctive mood, have no reference to change of termination, but that they refer merely to the manner of the being, action, or paſſion, ſignified by the verb; and that the ſubjunctive mood may as properly exiſt, without a variation of the verb, as the infinitive mood, which certainly has no terminations different from thoſe of the indicative. The deciſion of this point is not, however, of much conſequence. The rules which aſcertain the propriety of varying, or not varying, the terminations of the verb, are of more importance; and may be well obſerved, without a uniformity of ſentiment reſpecting the nature

and limits of the ſubjunctive mood. For further remarks on the ſubject, ſee ſect. 8. p. 101.

There is a peculiar neatneſs in a ſentence beginning with the conjunctive form of a verb. "*Were* there no difference, there would be no choice."

A double conjunctive, in two correſpondent clauſes of a ſentence, is ſometimes made uſe of: as, "*Had* he done this, he *had* eſcaped;" "*Had* the limitations on the prerogative been, in his time, quite fixed and certain, his integrity *had* made him regard as ſacred, the boundaries of the conſtitution." The ſentence in the common form would have read thus: "If the limitations on the prerogative had been, &c. his integrity would have made him regard," &c.

9. Some conjunctions have their correſpondent conjunctions belonging to them, ſo that, in the ſubſequent member of the ſentence, the latter anſwers to the former: as,

1ſt, *Though,—yet, never'theleſs:* as, "*Though* he was rich, *yet* for our ſakes he became poor."

2d, *Whether—or:* as, "*Whether* he will go *or* not, I cannot tell."

3d, *Either—or:* as, "I will *either* ſend it, *or* bring it myſelf."

4th, *Neither—nor:* as, "*Neither* thou *nor* I am able to compaſs it."

5th, *As—as:* expreſſing a compariſon of equality: as, "She is *as* amiable *as* her ſiſter."

6th, *As—ſo:* expreſſing a compariſon of equality: as, "*As* the ſtars, *ſo* ſhall thy ſeed be."

7th, *As—ſo:* expreſſing a compariſon of quality: as, "*As* the one dieth, *ſo* dieth the other."

8th, *So—as:* with a verb expreſſing a compariſon of quality: as, "To ſee thy glory, *ſo as* I have ſeen thee in the ſanctuary."

9th, *So—as:* with a negative and an adjective expreſſing a compariſon of quantity: as, "Pompey was not *ſo* great a man *as* Cæſar."

10th, *So—that!* expreſſing a conſequence: as, "He was *ſo* fatigued, *that* he could ſcarcely move."

The conjunctions *or* and *nor* may often be uſed, with nearly equal propriety. "The king, whoſe character was not ſufficiently vigorous, *nor* deciſive, aſſented to the meaſure." In this ſentence, *or* would perhaps have been better: but, in general, *nor* ſeems to repeat the negation in the former part of the ſentence, and therefore gives more emphaſis to the expreſſion.

10. Conjunctions are often improperly uſed, both ſingly and in pairs. The following are examples of this impropriety. "The relations are ſo uncertain, as that they require a great deal of examination:" it ſhould be, "*that* they require," &c. "There was no man ſo ſanguine, who did not apprehend ſome ill conſequences:" it ought to be, "So ſanguine as not to apprehend," &c.; or, "no man, how ſanguine ſoever, who did not," &c. "To truſt in him is no more but to acknowledge his power." "This is no other but the gate of paradiſe." In both theſe inſtances, *but* ſhould be *than*. "We ſhould ſufficiently weigh the objects of our hope; whether they are ſuch as we may reaſonably expect from them what they propoſe," &c. It ought to be, "*that* we may reaſonably," &c. "The duke had not behaved with that loyalty as he ought to have done;" "*with which* he ought." "In the order as they lie in his preface:" it ſhould be, "in order as they lie;" or, "in the order *in which* they lie." "Such ſharp replies that coſt him his life;" "*as* coſt him," &c. "If he was truly that ſcarecrow, as he is now commonly painted;" "*ſuch* a ſcarecrow," &c. "I wiſh I could do that juſtice to his memory, to oblige the painters," &c.; "do *ſuch* juſtice *as* to oblige," &c.

The particle *as*, when it is connected with the pronoun *ſuch*, has the force of a relative pronoun: as, "Let *ſuch as* preſume to adviſe others, look well to their own conduct;" which is equivalent to, "Let *them who* preſume," &c.

But when uſed by itſelf, this particle is to be conſidered as a conjunction.

Our language wants a conjunction adapted to familiar ſtyle, equivalent to *notwithſtanding*. The words *for all that*, ſeem to be too low. "A word it was in the mouth of every one, but, for all that, this may ſtill be a ſecret."

In regard that is ſolemn and antiquated; *becauſe* would do much better in the following ſentence. "It cannot be otherwiſe, in regard that the French proſody differs from that of every other," &c.

The word *except* is far preferable to *other than*. "It admitted of no effectual cure other than amputation." *Except* is alſo to be preferred to *all but*. "They were happy all but the ſtranger."

In the two following phraſes the conjunction *as* is improperly omitted; "Which nobody preſumes, or is ſo ſanguine A to hope." "I muſt, however, be ſo juſt A to own."

The conjunction *that* is often properly omitted, and underſtood; as, "I beg you would come to me;" "See thou do it not;" inſtead of "that you would," "that thou do." But in the following and many ſimilar phraſes, this conjunction were much better inſerted: "Yet it is reaſon the memory of their virtues remain to poſterity." It ſhould be, "yet it is *juſt that* the memory," &c.

RULE XX.

When the qualities of different things are compared, the latter noun or pronoun is not governed by the conjunction *than* or *as*, (for conjunctions have no government of caſes,) but agrees with the verb, or is governed by the verb or the prepoſition, expreſſed or underſtood: as, "Thou art wiſer than I;" that is, "than I am." "They loved him more than me:" i. e. "more than they loved me." The ſentiment is well expreſſed by Plato, but much better by Solomon than him;" that is, "than by him."

The propriety or impropriety of many phraſes, in the preceding as well as in ſome other forms, may be diſcovered, by ſupplying the words that are not expreſſed; which will be evident from the following inſtances of erroneous conſtruction. "He can read better than me." "He is as good as her." "Whether I be preſent or no." "Who did this? Me." By ſupplying the words underſtood in each of theſe phraſes, their impropriety and governing rule will appear: as, "Better than I can read;" "As good as ſhe is;" "Preſent or not preſent;" "I did it."

1. By not attending to this rule, many errors have been committed: a number of which is ſubjoined, as a further caution and direction to the learner. "Thou art a much greater loſer than me by his death." "She ſuffers hourly more than me." "We contributed a third more than the Dutch, who were obliged to the ſame proportion more than us." "King Charles, and more than him, the duke and the popiſh faction, were at liberty to form new ſchemes." "The drift of all his ſermons was, to prepare the Jews for the reception of a prophet mightier than him, and whoſe ſhoes he was not worthy to bear." "It was not the work of ſo eminent an author, as him to whom it was firſt imputed." "A ſtone is heavy, and the ſand weighty; but a fool's wrath is heavier than them both." "If the king give us leave, we may perform the office as well as them that do." In theſe paſſages it ought to be, "*I*, *we*, *he*, *they*, reſpectively."

When the relative *who* immediately follows *than*, it ſeems to form an exception to the 20th rule; for in that connexion, the relative muſt be in the objective caſe: as, "Alfred, *than whom*, a greater king never reigned," &c. "Beelzebub, *than whom*, Satan excepted, none higher ſat," &c. It is remarkable that in ſuch inſtances, if the perſonal pronoun were uſed, it would be in the nominative caſe; as, "A greater king never reigned *than he*," that is, "*than he was*." "Beelzebub, *than he*," &c.; that is, "*than he*

fat." The phraſe *than whom*, is, however, avoided by the beſt modern writers.

RULE XXI.

To avoid diſagreeable repetitions, and to expreſs our ideas in few words, an ellipſis, or omiſſion of ſome words, is frequently admitted. Inſtead of ſaying, "He was a learned man, he was a wiſe man, and he was a good man;" we make uſe of the ellipſis, and ſay, "He was a learned, wiſe, and good man."

When the omiſſion of words would obſcure the ſentence, weaken its force, or be attended with an impropriety, they muſt be expreſſed. In the ſentence, "We are apt to love who love us," the word *them* ſhould be ſupplied. "A beautiful field and trees," is not proper language. It ſhould be, "Beautiful fields and trees;" or, "A beautiful field and fine trees."

Almoſt all conpounded ſentences are more or leſs elliptical; ſome examples of which may be ſeen under the different parts of ſpeech.

1. The ellipſis of the *article* is thus uſed; "A man, woman, and child:" that is, "a man, a woman, and a child." "A houſe and garden;" that is, "a houſe and a garden." "The ſun and moon;" that is, "the ſun and the moon." "The day and hour;" that is, "the day and the hour." In all theſe inſtances, the article being once expreſſed, the repetition of it becomes unneceſſary. There is, however, an exception to this obſervation, when ſome peculiar emphaſis requires a repetition; as in the following ſentence. "Not only the year, but the day and the hour." In this caſe, the ellipſis of the laſt article would be improper. When a different form of the article is requiſite, the article is alſo properly repeated: as, "*a* houſe and *an* orchard;" inſtead of "a houſe and orchard."

2. The *noun* is frequently omitted in the following manner. "The laws of God and man;" that is, "the laws of God and the laws of man." In ſome very emphatical expreſſions, the ellipſis ſhould not be uſed: as, "Chriſt the power of God, and the wiſdom of God;" which is more emphatical than, "Chriſt the power and wiſdom of God."

3. The ellipſis of the *adjective* is uſed in the following manner. "A delightful garden and orchard;" that is, "a delightful garden and a delightful orchard;" "A little man and woman;" that is, "A little man and a little woman." In ſuch elliptical expreſſions as theſe, the adjective ought to have exactly the ſame ſignification, and to be quite as proper, when joined to the latter ſubſtantive as to the former; otherwiſe the ellipſis ſhould not be admitted.

Sometimes the ellipſis is improperly applied to nouns of different numbers: as, "A magnificent houſe and gardens." In this caſe it is better to uſe another adjective; as, "A magnificent houſe and fine gardens."

4. The following is the ellipſis of the *pronoun*. "I love and fear him; that is, "I love him and I fear him." "My houſe and lands;" that is, "my houſe and my lands." In theſe inſtances the ellipſis may take place with propriety; but if we would be more expreſs and emphatical, it muſt not be uſed: as, "His friends and his foes;" "My ſons and my daughters."

In ſome of the common forms of ſpeech, the relative pronoun is uſually omitted: as, "This is the man they love;" inſtead of, "This is the man *whom* they love." "Theſe are the goods they bought;" for, "Theſe are the goods *which* they bought."

In complex ſentences, it is much better to have the relative pronoun expreſſed: as it is more proper to ſay, "The poſture in which I lay," than, "In the poſture I lay:" "The horſe on which I rode, fell down;" than, "The horſe I rode, fell down."

The antecedent and the relative connect the parts of a ſentence together, and, to prevent obſcurity and confuſion, ſhould anſwer to each other with great exactneſs. "We ſpeak that we do know, and teſtify that we have ſeen." Here the ellipſis is manifeſtly improper, and ought to be ſupplied: as, "We ſpeak that *which* we do know, and teſtify that *which* we have ſeen."

5. The ellipſis of the *verb* is uſed in the following inſtances. "The man was old and crafty," that is, "the man was old, and the man was crafty." "She was young, and beautiful, and good;" that is, "She was young, ſhe was beautiful, and ſhe was good." "Thou art poor, and wretched, and miſerable, and blind, and naked." If we would fill up the ellipſis in the laſt ſentence, *thou art* ought to be repeated before each of the adjectives.

If, in ſuch enumeration, we chooſe to point out one property above the reſt, that property muſt be placed laſt, and the ellipſis ſupplied: as, "She is young and beautiful, and ſhe is good."

"I went to ſee and hear him;" that is, "I went to ſee him, and I went to hear him." In this inſtance there is not only an ellipſis of the governing verb *I went*, but likewiſe of the ſign of the infinitive mood, which is governed by it.

Do, did, have, had, ſhall, will, may, might, and the reſt of the auxiliaries of the compound tenſes, are frequently uſed alone, to ſpare the repetition of the verb: as, "He regards his word, but thou doſt not:" i. e. "doſt not regard it." "We ſucceeded, but they did not:" "did not ſucceed." "I have learned my taſk, but thou haſt not;" "haſt not learned." "They muſt and ſhall be puniſhed;" that is, "they muſt be puniſhed."

6. The ellipſis of the *adverb* is uſed in the following manner. "He ſpoke and acted wiſely;" that is, "he ſpoke wiſely, and he acted wiſely." "Thrice I went and

offered my ſervice;" that is, "thrice I went, and thrice I offered my ſervice."

7. The ellipſis of the *prepoſition*, as well as of the verb, is ſeen in the following inſtances: "He went into the abbeys, halls, and public buildings;" that is, "he went into the abbeys, he went into the halls, and he went into the public buildings." "He alſo went through all the ſtreets and lanes of the city;" that is, "Through all the ſtreets, and through all the lanes," &c. "He ſpoke to every man and woman there," that is, "to every man and to every woman." "This day, next month, laſt year;" that is, "on this day, in the next month, in the laſt year;" "The Lord do that which ſeemeth him good;" that is, "which ſeemeth *to* him."

8. The ellipſis of the *conjunction* is as follows: "They confeſs the power, wiſdom, goodneſs, and love, of their Creator;" i. e. "the power, and wiſdom, and goodneſs, and love of," &c. "Though I love him, I do not flatter him," that is, "though I love him, *yet* I do not flatter him."

9. The ellipſis of the *interjection* is not very common: it, however, is ſometimes uſed: as, "Oh! pity and ſhame!" that is, "Oh pity! Oh ſhame!"

As the ellipſis occurs in almoſt every ſentence in the Engliſh language, numerous examples of it might be given; but only a few more can be admitted here.

In the following inſtance there is a very conſiderable one; as, "He will often argue, that if this part of our trade were well cultivated, we ſhould gain from one nation; and if another, from another;" that is, "He will often argue, that if this part of our trade were well cultivated, we ſhould gain from one nation, and if another part of our trade were well cultivated, we ſhould gain from another nation."

The following inſtances, though ſhort, contain much of

the ellipſis; "Wo is me;" i. e. "wo is to me." "To let blood;" i. e. "to let out blood." "To let down;" i. e. "to let it fall or ſlide down." "To walk a mile;" i. e. "to walk through the ſpace of a mile." "To ſleep all night;" i. e. "to ſleep through all the night." "To go a fiſhing;" "To go a hunting;" i. e. "to go on a fiſhing voyage or buſineſs;" "to go on a hunting party." "I dine at two o'clock;" i. e. "at two of the clock." "By ſea, by land, on ſhore:" i. e. "By the ſea, by the land, on the ſhore."

10. The examples that follow are produced to ſhew the impropriety of ellipſis in ſome particular caſes. "The land was always poſſeſſed, during pleaſure, by thoſe intruſted with the command;" it ſhould be, "thoſe *perſons* intruſted;" or, "thoſe *who were* intruſted." "If he had read further, he would have found ſeveral of his objections might have been ſpared:" that is, "he would have found *that* ſeveral of his objections," &c. "There is nothing men are more deficient in, than knowing their own characters." It ought to be, "nothing *in which* men;" and, "than *in* knowing." "I ſcarcely know any part of natural philoſophy would yield more variety and uſe;" it ſhould be, "*which* would yield," &c. "In the temper of mind he was then;" i. e. "*in which* he then was." "The little ſatisfaction and conſiſtency, to be found in moſt of the ſyſtems of divinity I have met with, made me betake myſelf to the ſole reading of the Scriptures:" it ought to be, "*which are* to be found," and, "*which* I have met with." "He deſired they might go to the altar together, and jointly return their thanks to whom only they were due;" i. e. "*to him* to whom," &c.

RULE XXII.

All the parts of a ſentence ſhould correſpond to each other, and a regular and dependent conſtruction, throughout, be carefully preſerved. The

following ſentence is therefore inaccurate: "He was more beloved, but not ſo much admired, as Cinthio." *More* requires *than* after it, which is no where found in the ſentence. It ſhould be, "He was more beloved than Cinthio, but not ſo much admired."

This rule may be conſidered as comprehending all the preceding ones: and it will alſo apply to many forms of ſentences, which none of thoſe rules can be brought to bear upon. Its generality may ſeem to render it uſeleſs; but by ranging under it a number of varied examples, it will, perhaps, afford ſome uſeful direction, and ſerve as a principle to prove the propriety or impropriety of many modes of expreſſion, which the leſs general rules cannot determine.—All the following ſentences appear to be, in ſome reſpect, faulty in their conſtruction.

"This dedication may ſerve for almoſt any book, that has, is, or ſhall be publiſhed." It ought to be, "that has been, or ſhall be publiſhed." "He was guided by intereſts always different, ſometimes contrary to, thoſe of the community;" "different *from*;" or, "always different from thoſe of the community, and ſometimes contrary to them." "Will it be urged that theſe books are as old, or even older than tradition?" The words, "as old," and "older," cannot have a common regimen; it ſhould be "as old as tradition, or even older." "It requires few talents to which moſt men are not born, or at leaſt may not acquire;" "or which, at leaſt, they may not acquire." "The court of chancery frequently mitigates and breaks the teeth of the common law." In this conſtruction, the firſt verb is ſaid, "to mitigate the teeth of the common law," which is an evident ſoleciſm. "Mitigates the common law, and breaks the teeth of it," would have been grammatical.

"They preſently grow into good humour, and good language towards the crown;" "grow into good lan-

guage," is very improper. "There is never wanting a ſet of evil inſtruments, who either out of mad zeal, private hatred, or filthy lucre, are always ready," &c. We ſay properly, "A man acts out of mad zeal," or, "out of private hatred;" but we cannot ſay, if we would ſpeak Engliſh, "he *acts* out of filthy lucre." "To double her kindneſs and careſſes of me;" the word "kindneſs" requires to be followed by either *to* or *for*, and cannot be conſtrued with the prepoſition *of*. "Never was man ſo teaſed, or ſuffered half the uneaſineſs, as I have done this evening:" the firſt and third clauſes, viz. "Never was man ſo teaſed, as I have done this evening," cannot be joined without an impropriety; and to connect the ſecond and third, the word *that* muſt be ſubſtituted for *as*; "Or ſuffered half the uneaſineſs that I have done;" or elſe, "half ſo much uneaſineſs as I have done."

The firſt part of the following ſentence abounds with adverbs, and thoſe ſuch as are hardly conſiſtent with one another: "*How much ſoever* the reformation of this degenerate age is *almoſt utterly* to be deſpaired of, we may yet have a more comfortable proſpect of future times." The ſentence would be more correct in the following form: "*Though* the reformation of this degenerate age is *nearly* to be deſpaired of," &c.

"O ſhut not up my ſoul with the ſinners, nor my life with the bloody-thirſty; in whoſe hands is wickedneſs, and *their* right hand is full of gifts." As the paſſage, introduced by the copulative conjunction *and*, was not intended as a continuation of the principal and independent part of the ſentence, but of the dependent part, the relative *whoſe* ſhould have been uſed inſtead of the poſſeſſive *their*; viz. "and *whoſe* right hand is full of gifts."

"Eye hath not ſeen, nor ear heard, neither *have* entered into the heart of man, the things which God hath prepared for them that love him." There ſeems to be an impropriety in this ſentence, in which the ſame noun ſerves in a double capacity, performing at the ſame time the offices

both of the nominative and objective cases. "Neither *hath* it entered into the heart of man, to conceive the things," &c. would have been regular.

"We have the power of retaining, altering, and compounding, those images which we have once received, into all the varieties of picture and vision." It is very proper to say, "altering and compounding those images which we have once received, into all the varieties of picture and vision;" but we can with no propriety say, "retaining them into all the varieties;" and yet, according to the manner in which the words are arranged, this construction is unavoidable: for "retaining, altering, and compounding," are participles, each of which equally refers to, and governs the subsequent noun, *those images;* and that noun again is necessarily connected with the following preposition, *into*. The construction might easily have been rectified, by disjoining the participle *retaining* from the other two participles, in this way: "We have the power of retaining those images which we have once received, and of altering and compounding them into all the varieties of picture and vision;" or, perhaps, better thus: "We have the power of retaining, altering, and compounding those images which we have once received, and of forming them into all the varieties of picture and vision."

A PRAXIS:

OR EXAMPLES OF GRAMMATICAL RESOLUTION.*

As we have finiſhed the explanation of the different parts of ſpeech, and the rules for forming them into ſentences, it is now proper to give ſome examples of the manner in which the learners ſhould be exerciſed, in order to prove their knowledge, and to render it familiar to them. This is called parſing. The nature of the ſubject, as well as the adaptation of it to learners, requires that it ſhould be divided into two parts; viz. parſing, as it reſpects etymology alone; and parſing, as it reſpects both etymology and ſyntax.

SECT. I. *Specimen of etymological parſing.*

"Virtue ennobles us."

Virtue is a common ſubſtantive of the third perſon, the ſingular number, and in the nominative caſe. (*Decline the noun.*) *Ennobles* is a regular verb active, indicative mood, preſent tenſe, and the third perſon ſingular. (*Repeat the preſent tenſe, the imperfect tenſe, and the perfect participle.*†) *Us* is a perſonal pronoun, of the firſt perſon plural, and in the objective caſe. (*Decline the pronoun.*)

"Goodneſs will be rewarded."

Goodneſs is a common ſubſtantive, of the third perſon, the ſingular number, and in the nominative caſe. (*Decline it.*) *Will be rewarded* is a regular verb, in the paſſive voice, the indicative mood, the firſt future tenſe, and the third perſon ſingular. (*Repeat the preſent tenſe, the imperfect tenſe, and the perfect participle.*)

---

* This Praxis is accommodated to teachers, who adopt an objective caſe for nouns, as well as to thoſe who think that Engliſh nouns have no ſuch caſe.

† The learner ſhould occaſionally repeat all the moods and tenſes of the verb.

"Strive to improve."

Strive is an irregular verb neuter, in the imperative mood, and of the ſecond perſon ſingular. *(Repeat the preſent tenſe, &c.)* *To improve* is a regular verb neuter, and in the infinitive mood. *(Repeat the preſent tenſe, &c.)*

"Time flies, O! how ſwiftly."

Time is a common ſubſtantive, of the third perſon, the ſingular number, and in the nominative caſe. *(Decline the noun.)* *Flies* is an irregular verb neuter, the indicative mood, preſent tenſe, and the third perſon ſingular. *(Repeat the preſent tenſe, &c.)* *O!* is an interjection. *How* and *ſwiftly* are adverbs.

"Gratitude is a delightful emotion."

Gratitude is a common ſubſtantive of the third perſon, the ſingular number, and in the nominative caſe. *(Decline it.)* *Is* is an irregular verb neuter, indicative mood, preſent tenſe, and the third perſon ſingular. *(Repeat the preſent tenſe, &c.)* *A* is the indefinite article. *Delightful* is an adjective in the poſitive ſtate. *(Repeat the degrees of compariſon.)* *Emotion* is a common ſubſtantive of the third perſon, the ſingular number, and in the nominative caſe. *(Decline it.)*

"They who forgive, act nobly."

They is a perſonal pronoun, of the third perſon, the plural number, and in the nominative caſe. *(Decline it.)* *Who* is a relative pronoun, and in the nominative caſe. *(Decline it.)* *Forgive* is an irregular verb active, indicative mood, preſent tenſe, and the third perſon plural. *(Repeat the preſent tenſe, &c.)* *Act* is a regular verb active, indicative mood, preſent tenſe, and the third perſon plural. *(Repeat, &c.)* *Nobly* is an adverb of quality. *(Repeat the degrees of compariſon.)*

"By living temperately, our health is promoted."

By is a prepoſition. *Living* is the preſent participle of

the regular neuter verb "to live." *(Repeat the participles.)* *Temperately* is an adverb of quality. *Our* is a adjective pronoun of the poſſeſſive kind. *(Decline it.)* *Health* is a common ſubſtantive, of the third perſon, the ſingular number, and in the nominative caſe. *(Decline it.)* *Is promoted* is a regular verb paſſive, indicative mood, preſent tenſe, and the third perſon ſingular. *(Repeat, &c.)*

"We ſhould be kind to them, who are unkind to us."

We is a perſonal pronoun, of the firſt perſon, the plural number, and in the nominative caſe. *(Decline it.)* *Should be* is an irregular verb neuter, in the potential mood, the imperfect tenſe, and the firſt perſon plural. *(Repeat the preſent tenſe, &c.)* *Kind* is an adjective, in the poſitive ſtate. *(Repeat the degrees of compariſon.)* *To* is a prepoſition. *Them* is a perſonal pronoun, of the third perſon, the plural number, and in the objective caſe. *(Decline it.)* *Who* is a relative pronoun, and in the nominative caſe. *(Decline it.)* *Are* is an irregular verb neuter, indicative mood, preſent tenſe, and the third perſon plural. *(Repeat, &c.)* *Unkind* is an adjective in the poſitive ſtate. *(Repeat the degrees of compariſon.)* *To* is a prepoſition. *Us* is a perſonal pronoun, of the firſt perſon, the plural number, and in the objective caſe. *(Decline it.)*

SECT. 2. *Specimen of ſyntactical parſing.*

"Vice produces miſery."

Vice is a common ſubſtantive, of the third perſon, the ſingular number, and in the nominative caſe. *Produces* is a regular verb active, indicative mood, preſent tenſe, the third perſon ſingular, agreeing with its nominative "vice," according to RULE I. which ſays; *(here repeat the rule.)* *Miſery* is a common ſubſtantive, of the third perſon, the ſingular number, and the object of the active verb "produces;" or, (as ſome grammarians think,) the objective caſe governed by that verb.

"Peace and joy are virtue's crown."

Peace is a common ſubſtantive. *(Repeat the perſon, number, and caſe.)* *And* is a copulative conjunction. *Joy* is a common ſubſtantive. *Repeat the perſon, number, and caſe.)* *Are* is an irregular verb neuter, indicative mood, preſent tenſe, and the third perſon plural, agreeing with the nominative caſe "peace and joy," according to RULE II. which ſays; *(here repeat the rule.)* *Virtue's* is a common ſubſtantive, of the third perſon, the ſingular number, and in the poſſeſſive caſe, governed by the ſubſtantive "crown," agreeably to RULE X. which ſays, &c. *Crown* is a common ſubſtantive, of the third perſon, the ſingular number, and in the nominative caſe, agreeably to the fourth note of RULE XI.

"Wiſdom or folly governs us."

Wiſdom is a common ſubſtantive. *(Repeat the perſon, number, and caſe.)* *Or* is a disjunctive conjunction. *Folly* is a common ſubſtantive. *(Repeat the perſon, number, and caſe.)* *Governs* is a regular verb active, indicative mood, preſent tenſe, and the third perſon ſingular, agreeing with its nominative caſe "wiſdom" or "folly," according to RULE III. which ſays, &c. *Us* is a perſonal pronoun, of the firſt perſon, plural number, and in the objective caſe, governed by the active verb "governs," agreeably to RULE XI. which ſays, &c.

"Every heart knows its ſorrows."

Every is an adjective pronoun of the diſtributive kind, agreeing with its ſubſtantive "heart," according to Note 2. under RULE VIII. which ſays, &c. *Heart* is a common ſubſtantive. *(Repeat the perſon, number, and caſe.)* *Knows* is an irregular verb active, indicative mood, preſent tenſe, third perſon ſingular, agreeing with its nominative caſe "heart," according to RULE. I. which ſays, &c. *Its* is a perſonal pronoun of the third perſon ſingular, and of the neuter gender, to agree with its ſubſtantive "heart," ac-

cording to RULE V. which ſays, &c. it is in the poſſeſſive caſe, governed by the noun "ſorrows," according to RULE X. which ſays, &c. *Sorrows* is a common ſubſtantive, of the third perſon, the plural number, and the object of the active verb "knows;" or, the objective caſe governed by that verb.

"The man is happy who lives wiſely."

The is the definite article. *Man* is a common ſubſtantive. *(Repeat the perſon, number, and caſe.) Is* is an irregular verb neuter, indicative mood, preſent tenſe, and the third perſon ſingular, agreeing with the nominative caſe "man," according to RULE I. which ſays, &c. *Happy* is an adjective in the poſitive ſtate. *Who* is a relative pronoun, which has for its antecedent, "man," with which it agrees in gender and number, according to RULE V. which ſays, &c. *Lives* is a regular verb neuter, indicative mood, preſent tenſe, third perſon ſingular, agreeing with its nominative "who," according to RULE VI. which ſays, &c. *Wiſely* is an adverb of quality, placed after the verb, according to RULE XV.

"Who preſerves us?"

Who is a relative pronoun of the interrogative kind, and in the nominative caſe ſingular. The word to which it relates, (its ſubſequent,) is the noun or pronoun containing the anſwer to the queſtion; agreeably to a note under RULE VI. *Preſerves* is a regular verb active, indicative mood, preſent tenſe, third perſon ſingular, agreeing with its nominative "who," according to RULE VI. which ſays, &c. *Us* is a perſonal pronoun. *(Repeat the perſon, number, caſe, and rule.)*

"Whoſe houſe is that? My brother's and mine.
Who inhabit it? We."

Whoſe is a relative pronoun of the interrogative kind, and relates to the following words, "brother's" and "mine," agreeably to a note under RULE VI. It is in the poſſeſſive

caſe, governed by "houſe," according to RULE X. which ſays, &c. *Houſe* is a common ſubſtantive. (*Repeat the perſon, number, and caſe.*) *Is* is an irregular verb neuter, indicative mood, preſent tenſe, and the third perſon ſingular, agreeing with its nominative caſe "houſe," according to RULE I. which ſays, &c. *That* is an adjective pronoun of the demonſtrative kind. *My* is an adjective pronoun of the poſſeſſive kind. *Brother's* is a common ſubſtantive, of the third perſon, the ſingular number, and in the poſſeſſive caſe, governed by "houſe" underſtood, according to RULE X. and a note under RULE VI. *And* is a copulative conjunction. *Mine* is a perſonal pronoun, of the firſt perſon, the ſingular number, and in the poſſeſſive caſe, according to a note under RULE X. and another under RULE VI. *Who* is a relative pronoun of the interrogative kind, of the plural number, in the nominative caſe, and relates to "we" following, according to a note under RULE VI. *Inhabit* is a regular verb active. (*Repeat the mood, tenſe, perſon, &c.*) *It* is a perſonal pronoun, of the third perſon, the ſingular number, and in the objective caſe, governed by the active verb "inhabit," according to RULE XI. which ſays, &c. *We* is a perſonal pronoun, of the firſt perſon, the plural number, and the nominative caſe to the verb "inhabit" underſtood. The words "inhabit it" are implied after "we," agreeably to a note under RULE VI.

"Remember to aſſiſt the diſtreſſed."

Remember is a regular verb active, imperative mood, the ſecond perſon ſingular, and agrees with its nominative caſe "thou" underſtood. *To aſſiſt* is a regular verb active, in the infinitive mood, governed by the preceding verb "remember," according to RULE XII. which ſays, &c. *The* is the definite article. *Diſtreſſed* is an adjective put ſubſtantively.

"We are not unemployed."

We is a perſonal pronoun. (*Repeat the perſon, number,*

and case.) *Are* is an irregular verb neuter. *(Repeat the mood, tense, person, &c.) Not* is an adverb of negation, *Unemployed* is an adjective in the positive state. The two negatives *not* and *un*, form an affirmative, agreeably to RULE XVI. which says, &c.

"This bounty has relieved you and us; and has gratified the donor."

This is an adjective pronoun of the demonstrative kind. *Bounty* is a common substantive. *(Repeat the person, number, and case.) Has relieved* is a regular verb active, indicative mood, perfect tense, third person singular, agreeing with its nominative "bounty," according to RULE I. which says, &c. *You* is a personal pronoun, of the second person plural, and in the objective case. *(Repeat the government and rule.) And* is a copulative conjunction. *Us* is a personal pronoun, in the objective case. *You* and *us* are put in the same case according to RULE XVIII. which says, &c. *And* is a copulative conjunction. *Has gratified* is a regular verb active, indicative mood, perfect tense, and third person singular, agreeing with its nominative "bounty," understood. "*Has relieved*" and "*has gratified*," are in the same mood and tense, according to RULE XVIII. which says, &c. *The* is the definite article. *Donor* is a common substantive, of the third person, the singular number, and the object of the active verb "has gratified;" or, the objective case governed by that verb.

"He will not be pardoned, unless he repent."

He is a personal pronoun, of the third person, singular number, masculine gender, and in the nominative case. *Will be pardoned* is a regular passive verb, indicative mood, first future tense, and the third person singular, agreeing with its nominative, "he," according to RULE I. and composed of the auxiliaries "will be," and the passive participle "pardoned." *Not* is a negative adverb. *Unless* is a disjunctive conjunction. *He* is a personal pronoun. *(Repeat the person,*

number, gender, and caſe.) Repent is a regular verb neuter, in the ſubjunctive mood, the preſent tenſe, the third perſon ſingular, and agrees with its nominative caſe "he," according to RULE I. which ſays, &c. It is in the ſubjunctive mood, becauſe it implies a future ſenſe, and denotes uncertainty ſignified by the conjunction "unleſs," agreeably to RULE XIX. and the notes.

"Good works being neglected, devotion is falſe."

Good works being neglected, being independent on the reſt of the ſentence, is the caſe abſolute, according to the fifth note of RULE I. *Devotion* is a common ſubſtantive. *(Repeat the number, perſon, and caſe.) Is* is an irregular verb neuter. *(Repeat the mood, tenſe, perſon, &c.) Falſe* is an adjective in the poſitive ſtate, and belongs to its ſubſtantive "devotion" underſtood, agreeably to RULE VIII. which ſays, &c.

"The emperor, Marcus Aurelius, was a wiſe and virtuous prince."

The is the definite article. *Emperor* is a common ſubſtantive, of the third perſon, the ſingular number, and in the nominative caſe. *Marcus Aurelius* is a proper name or ſubſtantive, and in the nominative caſe, becauſe it is put in appoſition with the ſubſtantive "emperor," agreeably to the firſt note of RULE X. *Was* is an irregular verb neuter, indicative mood, imperfect tenſe, and the third perſon ſingular, agreeing with its nominative caſe "emperor," according to RULE I. *A* is the indefinite article. *Wiſe* is an adjective, and belongs to its ſubſtantive "prince." *And* is a copulative conjunction. *Virtuous* is an adjective, and belongs, &c. *Prince* is a common ſubſtantive, and in the nominative caſe, agreeably to the fourth note of RULE XI.

"To err is human."

To err, is the infinitive mood, and the nominative caſe, to the verb "is." *Is* is an irregular verb neuter, indicative

mood, preſent tenſe, and the third perſon ſingular, agreeing with its nominative caſe "to err," agreeably to Note 1. under RULE the firſt. *Human* is an adjective, and belongs to its ſubſtantive "nature" underſtood, according to RULE VIII. which ſays, &c.

> "To countenance perſons who are guilty of bad actions, is but one remove from actually committing them."

To countenance perſons who are guilty of bad actions, is part of a ſentence, which is the nominative caſe to the verb "is." *Is* is an irregular verb neuter, &c. agreeing with the aforementioned part of a ſentence, as its nominative caſe, agreeably to Note 1. under RULE the firſt. *But* is a disjunctive conjunction. *One* is a numeral adjective, agreeing with its ſubſtantive "remove." *Remove* is a common ſubſtantive, of the third perſon, the ſingular number, and in the nominative caſe, agreeably to the fourth note of RULE XI. *From* is a prepoſition. *Committing* is the preſent participle of the regular active verb "to commit." *Them* is a perſonal pronoun, of the third perſon, the plural number, and in the objective caſe, governed by the participle "committing," agreeably to RULE XIV. which ſays, &c.

The preceding ſpecimens of parſing, if carefully ſtudied by the learner, ſeem to be ſufficiently explicit, to enable him to comprehend the nature of this employment; and ſufficiently diverſified, to qualify him, in other exerciſes, to point out and apply the remaining rules, both principal and ſubordinate.

PART. IV.

PROSODY.

PROSODY conſiſts of two parts: the former teaches the true PRONUNCIATION of words, compriſing ACCENT, QUANTITY, EMPHASIS, PAUSE, and TONE; and the latter, the laws of VERSIFICATION.

CHAPTER I.

Of PRONUNCIATION.

SECT. I. *Of Accent.*

ACCENT is the laying of a peculiar ſtreſs of the voice, on a certain letter or ſyllable in a word, that it may be better heard than the reſt, or diſtinguiſhed from them: as, in the word *preſúme*, the ſtreſs of the voice muſt be on the letter *u*, and ſecond ſyllable, *ſume*, which take the accent.

As words may be formed of a different number of ſyllables, from one to eight or nine, it was neceſſary to have ſome peculiar mark to diſtinguiſh words from mere ſyllables; otherwiſe ſpeech would be only a continued ſucceſſion of ſyllables, without conveying ideas: for, as words are the marks of ideas, any confuſion in the marks, muſt cauſe the ſame in the ideas for which they ſtand. It was therefore neceſſary, that the mind ſhould at once perceive what number of ſyllables belongs to each word, in utterance. This might be done by a perceptible pauſe at the end of each word in ſpeaking, as we form a certain diſtance between them in writing and printing. But this would make diſcourſe extremely tedious; and though it

might render words diſtinct, would make the meaning of ſentences confuſed. Syllables might alſo be ſufficiently diſtinguiſhed by a certain elevation or depreſſion of voice upon one ſyllable of each word, which was the practice of ſome nations. But the Engliſh tongue has, for this purpoſe, adopted a mark of the eaſieſt and ſimpleſt kind, which is called accent, and which effectually anſwers the end.

Every word in our language, of more than one ſyllable, has one of them diſtinguiſhed from the reſt in this manner; and ſome writers aſſert, that every monoſyllable of two or more letters, has one of its letters thus diſtinguiſhed.

Accent is either principal or ſecondary. The principal accent is that which neceſſarily diſtinguiſhes one ſyllable in a word from the reſt. The ſecondary accent is that ſtreſs which we may occaſionally place upon another ſyllable, beſides that which has the principal accent; in order to pronounce every part of the word more diſtinctly, forcibly, and harmoniouſly: thus, "Complaiſant, caravan," and "violin," have frequently an accent on the firſt as well as on the laſt ſyllable, though a ſomewhat leſs forcible one. The ſame may be obſerved of "Repartee, referee, privateer, domineer," &c. But it muſt be obſerved, that though an accent is allowed on the firſt ſyllable of theſe words, it is by no means neceſſary; they may all be pronounced with one accent, and that on the laſt ſyllable, without the leaſt deviation from propriety.

As emphaſis evidently points out the moſt ſignificant word in a ſentence; ſo, where other reaſons do not forbid, the accent always dwells with greateſt force on that part of the word which, from its importance, the hearer has always the greateſt occaſion to obſerve: and this is neceſſarily the root or body of the word. But as harmony of termination frequently attracts the accent from the root to the branches of words, ſo the firſt and moſt natural law of accentuation ſeems to operate leſs in fixing the ſtreſs than any other. Our own Saxon terminations, indeed,

with perfect uniformity, leave the principal part of the word in quiet poſſeſſion of what ſeems its lawful property; but Latin and Greek terminations, of which our language is full, aſſume a right of preſerving their original accent, and ſubject almoſt every word they beſtow upon us to their own claſſical laws.

Accent, therefore, ſeems to be regulated in a great meaſure by etymology. In words from the Saxon, the accent is generally on the root; in words from the learned languages, it is generally on the termination; and if to theſe we add the different accent we lay on ſome words, to diſtinguiſh them from others, we ſeem to have the three great principles of accentuation; namely, the *radical*, the *terminational*, and the *diſtinctive*. The radical: as, "Lóve, lóvely, lóvelineſs;" the terminational: as, "Hármony, harmónious;" the diſtinctive: as, "Cónvert, to convért."

ACCENT ON DISSYLLABLES.

Words of two ſyllables have neceſſarily one of them accented, and but one. It is true, for the ſake of emphaſis, we ſometimes lay an equal ſtreſs upon two ſucceſſive ſyllables; as, "Dí-réct, ſóme-tímes;" but when theſe words are pronounced alone, they have never more than one accent. The word "á-mén," is the only word which is pronounced with two accents when alone.

Of diſſyllables, formed by affixing a termination, the former ſyllable is commonly accented: as, "Chíldiſh, kíngdom, áctreſt, ácted, tóilſome, lóver, ſcóffer, fairer, fóremoſt, zéalous, fúlneſs, meékly, ártiſt."

Diſſyllables formed by prefixing a ſyllable to the radical word, have commonly the accent on the latter: as, "To beſeém, to beſtów, to retúrn."

Of diſſyllables, which are at once nouns and verbs, the verb has commonly the accent on the latter, and the noun on the former ſyllable: as, "To cemént, a cément; to contráct, a cóntract; to preſáge, a préſage."

This rule has many exceptions. Though verbs ſeldom have their accent on the former, yet nouns often have it

on the latter ſyllable: as, "Delíght, perfúme." Thoſe nouns which, in the common order of language, muſt have preceded the verbs, often tranſmit their accent to the verbs they form, and inverſely. Thus, the noun "wáter" muſt have preceded the verb "to wáter," as the verb "to correſpónd," muſt have preceded the noun "correſpóndent:" and "to purſúe" claims priority to "purſúit." So that we may conclude, wherever verbs deviate from the rule, it is ſeldom by chance, and generally in thoſe words only where a ſuperior law of accent takes place.

All diſſyllables ending in *y*, *our*, *ow*, *le*, *iſh*, *ck*, *ter*, *age*, *en*, *et*: as, "Cránny, lábour, willow, wállow;" except "allów, avów, endów, belów, beſtów;" "báttle, bániſh, cámbric, bátter, coúrage, fáſten, quíet;" accent the former ſyllable.

Diſſyllable nouns in *er*, as, "Cánker, bútter," have the accent on the former ſyllable.

Diſſyllable verbs, terminating in a conſonant and *e* final, as, "Compríſe, eſcápe;" or having a diphthong in the laſt ſyllable, as, "Appéaſe, revéal;" or ending in two conſonants; as, "Atténd;" have the accent on the latter ſyllable.

Diſſyllable nouns, having a diphthong in the latter ſyllable, have commonly their accent on the latter ſyllable; as, "Applaúſe;" except ſome words in *ain*: as, "Cértain, cúrtain, moúntain."

Diſſyllables that have two vowels, which are ſeparated in the pronunciation, have always the accent on the firſt ſyllable: as, "Líon, ríot, quíet, líar, rúin;" except "creáte."

ACCENT ON TRISYLLABLES.

Triſyllables formed by adding a termination, or prefixing a ſyllable, retain the accent of the radical word: as, "Lóvelineſs, tenderneſs, contémner, wággoner, phyſical, beſpátter, cómmenting, commending, aſſúrance."

Triſyllables ending in *ous*, *al*, *ion*: as, "árduous, cápital, méntion," accent the firſt.

Triſyllables ending in *ce*, *ent*, and *ate*, accent the firſt ſyllable: as, "Coúntenance, cóntinence, ármament, ímminent, élegant, própagate;" unleſs they are derived from words having the accent on the laſt: as, "Connívance, acquáintance;" and unleſs the middle ſyllable has a vowel before two conſonants; as, "Promúlgate."

Triſyllables ending in *y*, as, "E'ntity, ſpécify, líberty, víctory, ſúbſidy," commonly accent the firſt ſyllable.

Triſyllables in *re* or *le*, accent the firſt ſyllable: as, "Légible, théatre;" except "Diſciple," and ſome words which have a prepoſition: as, "Exámple, indénture."

Triſyllables ending in *ude*, commonly accent the firſt ſyllable: as, "Plénitude, hábitude, réctitude."

Triſyllables ending in *ator*, have the accent on the middle ſyllable: as, "Spectátor, creátor," &c.; except "órator, ſénator, bárrator, légator."

Triſyllables which have in the middle ſyllable a diphthong, as, "Endéavour;" or a vowel before two conſonants; as, "Doméſtic;" accent the middle ſyllable.

Triſyllables that have their accent on the laſt ſyllable, are commonly French: as, "Acquiéſce, repartée, magazíne;" or they are words formed by prefixing one or two ſyllables to a ſhort ſyllable; as, "Immatúre, overchárge."

ACCENT ON POLYSYLLABLES.

Polyſyllables, or words of more than three ſyllables, generally follow the accent of the words from which they are derived: as, "A'rrogating, cóntinency, incóntinently, comméndable, commúnicableneſs."

Words ending in *ator* have the accent generally on the penultimate, or laſt ſyllable but one; as, "Emendátor, gladiátor, equivocátor, prevaricátor."

Words ending in *le* commonly have the accent on the firſt ſyllable: as, "A'micable, déſpicable:" unleſs the ſecond ſyllable has a vowel before two conſonants: as, "Combúſtible, condémnable."

Words ending in *ion*, *ous*, and *ty*, have their accent on

the antepenultimate, or laſt ſyllable but two: as, "Salvátion, victórious, activity."

Words which end in *ia*, *io*, and *cal*, have the accent on the antepenult: as, "Cyclopáedia, punctílio, deſpótical."

The rules reſpecting accent, are not advanced as complete or infallible, but propoſed as uſeful. Almoſt every rule of every language has its exceptions; and, in Engliſh, as in other tongues, much muſt be learned by example and authority.

It may be further obſerved, that though the ſyllable on which the principal accent is placed, is fixed and certain, yet we may, and do, frequently make the ſecondary principal, and the principal ſecondary: thus, "Caravan, complaiſant, violin, repartee, referee, privateer, domineer," may all have the greater ſtreſs on the firſt, and the leſs on the laſt ſyllable, without any violent offence to the ear: nay, it may be aſſerted, that the principal accent on the firſt ſyllable of theſe words, and none at all on the laſt, though certainly improper, has nothing in it grating or diſcordant; but placing an accent on the ſecond ſyllable of theſe words would entirely derange them, and produce a great harſhneſs and diſſonance. The ſame obſervations may be applied to "demonſtration, lamentation, provocation, navigator, propagator, alligator," and every ſimilar word in the language.

Sect. 2. *Of Quantity.*

The quantity of a ſyllable is that time which is occupied in pronouncing it. It is conſidered as LONG or SHORT.

A vowel or ſyllable is long, when the accent is on the vowel; which occaſions it to be ſlowly joined in pronunciation with the following letters: as, "Fāll, bāle, mōōd, hōūſe, fēature."

A ſyllable is ſhort, when the accent is on the conſonant; which occaſions the vowel to be

quickly joined to the ſucceeding letter: as, Ănt, bŏnnĕt, hŭngĕr."

A long ſyllable requires double the time of a ſhort one in pronouncing it; thus, "Māte" and "Nōte" ſhould be pronounced as ſlowly again as "Măt" and "Nŏt."

Unaccented ſyllables are generally ſhort: as, "Ădmire, bŏldnĕſs, sinnĕr." But to this rule there are many exceptions: as, "A'lſō, éxīle, gángrēne, úmpīre, fóretāſte," &c.

When the accent is on a conſonant, the ſyllable is often more or leſs ſhort, as it ends with a ſingle conſonant, or with more than one: as, Súdly, róbber, perſíst, mátchleſs.

When the accent is on a ſemi-vowel, the time of the ſyllable may be protracted, by dwelling upon the ſemi-vowel: as, "Cur', can', fulfil':" but when the accent falls on a mute, the ſyllable cannot be lengthened in the ſame manner: as, "Búbble, cáptain, tótter."

The quantity of vowels has, in ſome meaſure, been conſidered under the firſt part of grammar, which treats of the different ſounds of the letters; and therefore we ſhall diſmiſs this ſubject with a few general rules and obſervations.

1ſt, All vowels under the principal accent, before the terminations *ia*, *io*, and *ion*, preceded by a ſingle conſonant, are pronounced long: as, "Regalia, folio, adheſion, exploſion, confuſion:" except the vowel *i*, which in that ſituation is ſhort: as, "Militia, punctilio, deciſion, contrition." The only exceptions to this rule ſeem to be "Diſcretion, battalion, gladiator, national, and rational."

2d, All vowels that immediately precede the terminations *ity*, and *ety*, are pronounced long: as, "Deity, piety, ſpontaneity." But if one conſonant precedes theſe terminations, every preceding accented vowel is ſhort; except *u*, and the *a* in "ſcarcity," and "rarity;" as, "Polarity, ſeverity, divinity, curioſity;—impunity." Even *u* before two conſonants contracts itſelf: as, "Curvity, taciturnity," &c.

3d, Vowels under the principal accent, before the terminations *ic* and *ical*, preceded by a ſingle conſonant, are pronounced ſhort; thus, "Satanic, pathetic, elliptic, harmonic," have the vowel ſhort: while "Tunic, runic, cubic," have the accented vowel long: and "Fanatical, poetical, levitical, canonical," have the vowel ſhort; but, "Cubical, muſical," &c. have the *u* long.

4th, The vowel in the antepenultimate ſyllable of words, with the following terminations, is always pronounced ſhort.

loquy; as, obloquy.	*parous*; as, oviparous.
ſtrophe; as, apoſtrophe.	*cracy*; as, ariſtocracy.
meter; as, barometer.	*gony*; as, coſmogony.
gonal; as, diagonal.	*phony*; as, ſymphony.
vorous; as, carnivorous.	*nomy*; as, aſtronomy.
ferous; as, ſomniferous.	*tomy*; as, anatomy.
fluous; as, ſuperfluous.	*pathy*; as, antipathy.
fluent; as, melliſluent.	

As no utterance which is void of proportion, can be agreeable to the ear; and as quantity, or proportion of time in utterance, greatly depends on a due attention to the accent; it is abſolutely neceſſary for every perſon who would attain a juſt and pleaſing delivery, to be maſter of that point.

SECT. 3. *Of Emphaſis.*

BY emphaſis is meant a ſtronger and fuller ſound of voice, by which we diſtinguiſh ſome word or words on which we deſign to lay particular ſtreſs, and to ſhow how they affect the reſt of the ſentence. Sometimes the emphatic words muſt be diſtinguiſhed by a particular tone of voice, as well as by a greater ſtreſs.

On the right management of the emphaſis depends the life of pronunciation. If no emphaſis be placed on any words, not only will diſcourſe be rendered heavy and life-

leſs, but the meaning often left ambiguous. If the emphaſis be placed wrong, we ſhall pervert and confound the meaning wholly. To give a common inſtance: ſuch a ſimple queſtion as this, "Do you ride to town to-day?" is capable of no fewer than four different acceptations, according as the emphaſis is differently placed on the words. If it be pronounced thus: "Do *you* ride to town to-day?" the anſwer may naturally be, "No, we ſend a ſervant in our ſtead." If thus: "Do you *ride* to town to-day?" anſwer, "No, we intend to walk." "Do you ride *to town* to-day?" "No, we ride into the country." "Do you ride to town *to-day?*" "No, but we ſhall to-morrow." In like manner, in ſolemn diſcourſe, the whole force and beauty of an expreſſion often depend on the accented word; and we may preſent to the hearers quite different views of the ſame ſentiment, by placing the emphaſis differently. In the following words of our Saviour, obſerve in what different lights the thought is placed, according as the words are pronounced. "Judas, betrayeſt thou the ſon of man with a kiſs?" "*Betrayeſt* thou," makes the reproach turn on the infamy of treachery. "Betrayeſt *thou*," makes it reſt upon Judas's connexion with his maſter. "Betrayeſt thou *the ſon of man*," reſts it upon our Saviour's perſonal character and eminence. "Betrayeſt thou the ſon of man *with a kiſs?*" turns it upon his proſtituting the ſignal of peace and friendſhip to the purpoſe of a mark of deſtruction.

The emphaſis often lies on the word that aſks a queſtion: as, "*Who* ſaid ſo?" "*When* will he come?" "*What* ſhall I do?" "*Whither* ſhall I go?" "*Why* doſt thou weep?" And when two words are ſet in contraſt, or in oppoſition to one another, they are both emphatic; as, "He is the *tyrant*, not the *father*, of his people;" "His ſubjects *fear* him, but they do not *love* him."

Some ſentences are ſo full and comprehenſive, that almoſt every word is emphatical: as, "Ye hills and dales, ye rivers, woods, and plains:" or, as that pathetic expoſ-

tulation in the prophecy of Ezekiel, "Why will ye die!" In the latter ſhort ſentence, every word is emphatical; and on whichever word we lay the emphaſis, whether on the firſt, ſecond, third, or fourth, it ſtrikes out a different ſenſe, and opens a new ſubject of moving expostulation.

As accent dignifies the ſyllable on which it is laid, and makes it more diſtinguiſhed by the ear than the reſt; ſo emphaſis ennobles the word to which it belongs, and preſents it in a ſtronger light to the underſtanding. Were there no accents, words would be reſolved into their original ſyllables: were there no emphaſis, ſentences would be reſolved into their original words; and, in this caſe, the hearer would be under the painful neceſſity, firſt, of making out the words, and afterwards, their meaning.

Emphaſis is of two kinds, ſimple and complex. Simple, when it ſerves to point out only the plain meaning of any propoſition; complex, when, beſides the meaning, it marks alſo ſome affection or emotion of the mind; or gives a meaning to words, which they would not have in their uſual acceptation. In the former caſe, emphaſis is ſcarcely more than a ſtronger accent, with little or no change of tone; when it is complex, beſides force, there is always ſuperadded a manifeſt change of tone.

The following ſentence contains an example of ſimple emphaſis: "And Nathan ſaid to David, "*Thou* art the man." The emphaſis on *thou*, ſerves only to point out the meaning of the ſpeaker. But in the ſentence which follows, we perceive an emotion of the ſpeaker ſuperadded to the ſimple meaning: "Why will ye die?"

As the emphaſis often falls on words in different parts of the ſame ſentence, ſo it is frequently required to be continued, with a little variation, on two, and ſometimes three words together. The following ſentence exemplifies both the parts of this poſition; "If you ſeek to make one *rich*, ſtudy not to *increaſe his ſtores*, but to *diminiſh his deſires*." Emphaſis may be further diſtinguiſhed, into the weaker and the ſtronger emphaſis. In the ſentence, "Ex-

erciſe and temperance ſtrengthen the conſtitution;" we perceive more force on the word *ſtrengthen*, than on any other; though it is not equal to the ſtreſs which we apply to the word *indifferent*, in the following ſentence: "Exerciſe and temperance ſtrengthen even an *indifferent* conſtitution." It is alſo proper to remark that the words *exerciſe*, *temperance*, *conſtitution*, in the laſt example but one, are pronounced with greater force, than the particles *and* and *the*; and yet thoſe words cannot properly be called emphatical: for the ſtreſs that is laid on them, is no more than ſufficient to convey diſtinctly the meaning of each word.—From theſe obſervations it appears, that the ſmaller parts of ſpeech, namely, the articles, conjunctions, prepoſitions, &c. are, in general, obſcurely and feebly expreſſed; that the ſubſtantives, verbs, and more ſignificant words, are firmly and diſtinctly pronounced; and that the emphatical words, thoſe which mark the meaning of a phraſe, are pronounced with peculiar ſtreſs and energy, though varied according to the degree of their importance.

Emphaſis, beſides its other offices, is the great regulator of quantity. Though the quantity of our ſyllables is fixed, in words ſeparately pronounced, yet it is mutable, when theſe words are ranged in ſentences; the long being changed into ſhort, the ſhort into long, according to the importance of the words with regard to meaning: and as it is by emphaſis only, that the meaning can be pointed out, emphaſis muſt be the regulator of the quantity. A few examples will make this point very evident.

Pleāſ'd thoŭ ſhălt heār—and learn the ſecret power, &c.
Pleaſ'd thōū ſhalt hear—and thou alòne ſhalt hear—
Pleaſ'd thou ſhālt hear—in ſpite of them ſhălt hear—
Pleaſ'd thŏu ſhălt heār—though not behòld the fair—

In the firſt of theſe inſtances, the words *pléas'd* and *héar*, being equally emphatical, are both long; whilſt the two intermediate words, *thŏu* and *ſhălt*, being rapidly paſſed over, as the ſenſe demands, are reduced to a ſhort quantity.

In the ſecond inſtance, the word *thoù* by being the moſt important, obtains the chief, or rather the ſole emphaſis; and thus, it is not only reſtored to its natural long quantity, but obtains from emphaſis a ſtill greater degree of length, than when pronounced in its ſeparate ſtate. This greater degree of length, is compenſated by the diminution of quantity in the words *pleas'd* and *hear*, which are ſounded ſhorter than in the preceding inſtance. The word *ſhălt* ſtill continues ſhort. Here we may alſo obſerve, that though *thou* is long in the firſt part of the verſe, it becomes ſhort when repeated in the ſecond, on account of the more forcible emphaſis belonging to the word *alóne*, which follows it.

In the third inſtance, the word *ſhalt* having the emphaſis, obtains a long quantity. And though it is impoſſible to prolong the ſound of this word, as it ends in a pure mute, yet in this, as in all ſimilar inſtances, the additional quantity is to be made out by a reſt of the voice, proportioned to the importance of the word. In this inſtance, we may alſo obſerve, that the word *ſhalt*, repeated in the ſecond part of the line, is reduced again to a ſhort quantity.

In the fourth inſtance, the word *béar* placed in oppoſition to the word *behóld*, in the latter part of the line, obtains from the ſenſe the chief emphaſis, and a proportionate length. The words *thou* and *ſhalt*, are again reduced to ſhort quantities; and the word *pleas'd* lends ſome of the time which it poſſeſſed, to the more important word *hear*.

From theſe inſtances, it is evident, that the quantity of our ſyllables is not fixed; but governed by emphaſis.—To obſerve a due meaſurement of time, on all occaſions, is doubtleſs very difficult; but by inſtruction and practice the difficulty may be overcome.

Emphaſis changes, not only the quantity of words and ſyllables, but alſo, in particular caſes, the ſeat of the accent. This is demonſtrable from the following examples. "He ſhall *in*creaſe, but I ſhall *dé*creaſe." "There is a difference between giving and *fór*giving." "In this ſpecies

of compoſition, *plauſibility* is much more eſſential than *probability*." In theſe examples, the emphaſis requires the accent to be placed on ſyllables, to which it does not commonly belong.

In order to acquire the proper management of the emphaſis, the great rule, and indeed the only rule poſſible to be given, is, that the ſpeaker or reader ſtudy to attain a juſt conception of the force and ſpirit of the ſentiments which he is to pronounce. For to lay the emphaſis with exact propriety, is a conſtant exerciſe of good ſenſe and attention. It is far from being an inconſiderable attainment. It is one of the greateſt trials of a true and juſt taſte; and muſt ariſe from feeling delicately ourſelves, and from judging accurately, of what is fitteſt to ſtrike the feelings of others.

There is one error, againſt which it is particularly proper to caution the learner; namely, that of multiplying emphatical words too much. It is only by a prudent reſerve in the uſe of them, that we can give them any weight. If they recur too often; if a ſpeaker or reader attempts to render every thing which he expreſſes of high importance, by a multitude of ſtrong emphaſes, we ſoon learn to pay little regard to them. To crowd every ſentence with emphatical words, is like crowding all the pages of a book with Italic characters, which, as to the effect, is juſt the ſame as to uſe no ſuch diſtinctions at all.

Sect. 4. *Of Pauſes.*

Pauses or reſts, in ſpeaking and reading, are a total ceſſation of the voice, during a perceptible, and, in many caſes, a meaſurable ſpace of time.

Pauſes are equally neceſſary to the ſpeaker, and the hearer. To the ſpeaker, that he may take breath, without which he cannot proceed far in delivery; and that he may, by theſe temporary reſts, relieve the organs of ſpeech, which otherwiſe would be ſoon tired by continued action: to the hearer, that the ear alſo may be relieved

from the fatigue, which it would otherwiſe endure from a continuity of ſound; and that the underſtanding may have ſufficient time to mark the diſtinction of ſentences, and their ſeveral members.

There are two kinds of pauſes: firſt, emphatical pauſes; and next, ſuch as mark the diſtinctions of the ſenſe. An emphatical pauſe is made, after ſomething has been ſaid of peculiar moment, and on which we deſire to fix the hearer's attention. Sometimes, before ſuch a thing is ſaid, we uſher it in with a pauſe of this nature. Such pauſes have the ſame effect as a ſtrong emphaſis; and are ſubject to the ſame rules; eſpecially to the caution juſt now given, of not repeating them too frequently. For as they excite uncommon attention, and of courſe raiſe expectation, if the importance of the matter is not fully anſwerable to ſuch expectation, they occaſion diſappointment and diſguſt.

But the moſt frequent and the principal uſe of pauſes, is, to mark the diviſions of the ſenſe, and at the ſame time to allow the ſpeaker to draw his breath; and the proper and delicate adjuſtment of ſuch pauſes, is one of the moſt nice and difficult articles of delivery. In all reading, and public ſpeaking, the management of the breath requires a good deal of care, ſo as not to oblige us to divide words from one another, which have ſo intimate a connexion, that they ought to be pronounced with the ſame breath, and without the leaſt ſeparation. Many ſentences are miſerably mangled, and the force of the emphaſis totally loſt, by diviſions being made in the wrong place. To avoid this, every one, while he is ſpeaking or reading, ſhould be very careful to provide a full ſupply of breath for what he is to utter. It is a great miſtake to imagine, that the breath muſt be drawn only at the end of a period, when the voice is allowed to fall. It may eaſily be gathered at the intervals of the period, when the voice is only ſuſpended for a moment; and, by this management, one may always have a ſufficient ſtock for carrying on the longeſt ſentence, without improper interruptions.

Pauſes in reading, and public diſcourſe, muſt be formed upon the manner in which we utter ourſelves in ordinary, ſenſible converſation; and not upon the ſtiff artificial manner which we acquire, from reading books according to the common punctuation. It will by no means be ſufficient to attend to the points uſed in printing; for theſe are far from marking *all* the pauſes which ought to be made in ſpeaking. A mechanical attention to theſe reſting-places, has perhaps been one cauſe of monotony, by leading the reader to a ſimilar tone at every ſtop, and a uniform cadence at every period. The primary uſe of points is, to aſſiſt the reader in diſcerning the grammatical conſtruction; and it is only as a ſecondary object, that they regulate his pronunciation.

To render pauſes pleaſing and expreſſive, they muſt not only be made in the right place, but alſo accompanied with a proper tone of voice, by which the nature of theſe pauſes is intimated; much more than by the length of them, which can ſeldom be exactly meaſured. Sometimes it is only a ſlight and ſimple ſuſpenſion of voice that is proper; ſometimes a degree of cadence in the voice is required; and ſometimes that peculiar tone and cadence which denote the ſentence to be finiſhed. In all theſe caſes, we are to regulate ourſelves, by attending to the manner in which nature teaches us to ſpeak, when engaged in real and earneſt diſcourſe with others.

It is a general rule, that the ſuſpending pauſe ſhould be uſed when the ſenſe is incomplete; and the cloſing pauſe, when it is finiſhed. But there are phraſes, in which, though the ſenſe is not completed, the voice takes the cloſing, rather than the ſuſpending pauſe; and others, in which the ſentence finiſhes by the pauſe of ſuſpenſion.

The cloſing pauſe muſt not be confounded with that fall of the voice, or *cadence*, with which many readers uniformly finiſh a ſentence. Nothing is more deſtructive of propriety and energy than this habit. The tones and inflections of the voice at the cloſe of a ſentence, ought to be

diverſified, according to the general nature of the diſcourſe, and the particular conſtruction and meaning of the ſentence. In plain narrative, and eſpecially in argumentation, a ſmall attention to the manner in which we relate a fact, or maintain an argument, in converſation, will ſhow, that it is frequently more proper to raiſe the voice, than to let it fall, at the end of a ſentence. Some ſentences are ſo conſtructed, that the laſt words require a ſtronger emphaſis than any of the preceding; while others admit of being cloſed with a ſoft and gentle ſound. Where there is nothing in the ſenſe which requires the laſt ſound to be elevated or emphatical, an eaſy fall, ſufficient to ſhow that the ſenſe is finiſhed, will be proper. And in pathetic pieces, eſpecially thoſe of the plaintive, tender, or ſolemn kind, the tone of the paſſion will often require a ſtill greater cadence of the voice. The beſt method of correcting a uniform cadence, is frequently to read *ſelect ſentences*, in which the ſtyle is pointed, and in which *antitheſes* are frequently introduced; and argumentative pieces, or ſuch as abound with interrogatives, or earneſt exclamation.

Sect. 5. *Of Tones.*

Tones are different both from emphaſis and pauſes; conſiſting in the modulation of the voice, the notes or variations of ſound which we employ in the expreſſion of our ſentiments.

Emphaſis affects particular words and phraſes with a degree of tone or inflection of the voice; but tones, peculiarly ſo called, affect ſentences, paragraphs, and ſometimes even the whole of a diſcourſe.

To ſhow the uſe and neceſſity of tones, we need only obſerve, that the mind, in communicating its ideas, is in a continual ſtate of activity, emotion, or agitation, from the different effects which thoſe ideas produce in the ſpeaker. Now the end of ſuch communication being, not merely to lay open the ideas, but alſo the different feelings which

they excite in him who utters them, there muſt be other ſigns than words, to manifeſt thoſe feelings; as words uttered in a monotonous manner, can repreſent only a ſimilar ſtate of mind, perfectly free from all activity or emotion. As the communication of theſe internal feelings, was of much more conſequence in our ſocial intercourſe, than the mere conveyance of ideas, the Author of our being did not, as in that conveyance, leave the invention of the language of emotion, to man; but impreſſed it *himſelf* upon our nature in the ſame manner as he has done with regard to the reſt of the animal world: all of which expreſs their various feelings by various tones. Ours indeed, from the ſuperior rank that we hold, are in a high degree more comprehenſive; as there is not an act of the mind, an exertion of the fancy, or an emotion of the heart, which has not its peculiar tone, or note of the voice, by which it is to be expreſſed; and which is ſuited exactly to the degree of internal feeling. It is chiefly in the proper uſe of theſe tones, that the life, ſpirit, beauty, and harmony of delivery conſiſt.

An extract from the beautiful lamentation of David over Saul and Jonathan, may ſerve as an example of what has been ſaid on this ſubject. "The beauty of Iſrael is ſlain upon thy high places. How are the mighty fallen! Tell it not in Gath; publiſh it not in the ſtreets of Aſkelon: leſt the daughters of the Philiſtines rejoice; leſt the daughters of the uncircumciſed triumph. Ye mountains of Gilboa, let there be no dew, nor rain upon you, nor fields of offerings; for there the ſhield of the mighty was vilely caſt away; the ſhield of Saul, as though he had not been anointed with oil!" The firſt of theſe diviſions expreſſes ſorrow and lamentation; therefore the note is low. The next contains a ſpirited command, and ſhould be pronounced much higher. The other ſentence, in which he makes a pathetic addreſs to the mountains where his friends were ſlain, muſt be expreſſed in a note quite different from the two former; not ſo low as the firſt, nor

ſo high as the ſecond, in a manly, firm, and yet plaintive tone.*

This correct and natural language of the emotions, is not ſo difficult to be attained, as moſt readers ſeem to imagine. If we enter into the ſpirit of the author's ſentiments, as well as into the meaning of his words, we ſhall not fail to deliver the words in properly varied tones. For there are few people, who ſpeak Engliſh without a provincial tone, that have not an accurate uſe of emphaſis, pauſes, and tones, when they utter their ſentiments in earneſt diſcourſe: and the reaſon that they have not the ſame uſe of them, in reading aloud the ſentiments of others, may be traced to the very defective and erroneous method, in which the art of reading is taught; whereby all the various, natural, expreſſive tones of ſpeech, are ſuppreſſed, and a few artificial, unmeaning, reading notes, are ſubſtituted for them.

But when we recommend to readers, an attention to the tone and language of emotions, we muſt be underſtood to do it with proper limitation. Moderation is neceſſary in this point, as it is in other things. For when reading becomes ſtrictly imitative, it aſſumes a theatrical manner, and muſt be highly improper, as well as give offence to the hearers; becauſe it is inconſiſtent with that delicacy and modeſty, which are indiſpenſable on ſuch occaſions.

CHAPTER II.

Of VERSIFICATION.

As there are few perſons who do not ſometimes read poetical compoſition, it ſeems neceſſary to give the ſtudent ſome idea of that part of grammar, which explains the principles of verſification; that, in reading poetry, he may be the better able to judge of its correctneſs, and reliſh its beauties. When this lively mode of exhibiting nature and ſentiment, is perfectly chaſte, it is often found to be highly intereſting and inſtructive.

* Herries.

VERSIFICATION is the arrangement of a certain number and variety of ſyllables, according to certain laws.

Rhyme is the correſpondence of the laſt ſound of one verſe, to the laſt ſound or ſyllable of another.

Feet and pauſes are the conſtituent parts of verſe. We ſhall conſider theſe ſeparately.

Of poetical feet.

A certain number of ſyllables connected, form a foot. They are called *feet*, becauſe it is by their aid that the voice, as it were, ſteps along through the verſe, in a meaſured pace; and it is neceſſary that the ſyllables which mark this regular movement of the voice, ſhould, in ſome manner, be diſtinguiſhed from the others. This diſtinction was made among the ancient Romans, by dividing their ſyllables into long and ſhort, and aſcertaining their quantity, by an exact proportion of time in ſounding them; the long being to the ſhort, as two to one; and the long ſyllables, being thus the more important, marked the movement. In Engliſh, ſyllables are divided into accented and unaccented; and the accented ſyllables being as ſtrongly diſtinguiſhed from the unaccented, by the peculiar ſtreſs of the voice upon them, are equally capable of marking the movement, and pointing out the regular paces of the voice, as the long ſyllables were by their quantity, among the Romans.

When the feet are formed by an accent on vowels, they are exactly of the ſame nature as the ancient feet, and have the ſame juſt quantity in their ſyllables. So that, in this reſpect, we have all that the ancients had, and ſomething which they had not. We have in fact duplicates of each foot, yet with ſuch a difference, as to fit them for different purpoſes, to be applied at our pleaſure.

Every foot has, from nature, powers peculiar to itſelf; and it is upon the knowledge and right application of theſe

powers, that the pleaſure and effect of numbers chiefly depend.

All feet uſed in poetry conſiſt either of two, or of three ſyllables; and are reducible to eight kinds; four of two ſyllables, and four of three, as follows:

DISSYLLABLE.	TRISYLLABLE.
A Trochee – ∪	A Dactyl – ∪ ∪
An Iambus ∪ –	An Amphibrach ∪ – ∪
A Spondee – –	An Anapæſt ∪ ∪ –
A Pyrrhic ∪ ∪	A Tribrach ∪ ∪ ∪

A Trochee has the firſt ſyllable accented, and the laſt unaccented: as, "Hātefŭl, péttiſh."

An Iambus has the firſt ſyllable unaccented, and the laſt accented: as, "Bĕtrāy, conſíst."

A Spondee has both the words or ſyllables accented: as, "The pāle mōōn."

A Pyrrhic has both the words or ſyllables unaccented: as, "Ŏn thĕ tall tree."

A Dactyl has the firſt ſyllable accented, and the two latter unaccented: as, "Lābŏurĕr, póſſible."

An Amphibrach has the firſt and laſt ſyllables unaccented: and the middle one accented; as, "Dĕlīghtfŭl, doméſtic."

An Anapæſt has the two firſt ſyllables unaccented, and the laſt accented: as, "Cŏntrăvēne, acquiéſce."

A Tribrach has all its ſyllables unaccented: as, "Nūmĕrăblĕ, cónquerable."

Some of theſe feet may be denominated *principal* feet; as pieces of poetry may be wholly, or chiefly formed of any of them. Such are the Iambus, Trochee, Dactyl, and Anapæſt. The others may be termed *ſecondary* feet; becauſe their chief uſe is to diverſify the numbers, and to improve the verſe.

We ſhall firſt explain the nature of the principal feet.

IAMBIC verſes may be divided into ſeveral ſpecies, according to the number of feet or ſyllables of which they are compoſed.

1. The ſhorteſt form of the Engliſh Iambic conſiſts of an Iambus, with an additional ſhort ſyllable: as,

Dĭſdāinĭng,
Complaining,
Conſenting,
Repenting.

We have no poem of this meaſure, but it may be met with in ſtanzas. The Iambus, with this addition, coincides with the Amphibrach.

2. The ſecond form of our Iambic is alſo too ſhort to be continued through any great number of lines. It conſiſts of *two* Iambuſes.

Whăt plāce ĭs hēre!
What ſcenes appear!
To me the roſe
No longer glows.

It ſometimes takes, or may take, an additional ſhort ſyllable: as,

Ŭpōn ă mōuntăin
Beſide a fountain.

3. The third form conſiſts of *three* Iambuſes.

Ĭn plācĕs fār ŏr nēar,
Or famous or obſcure,
Where wholeſome is the air,
Or where the moſt impure.

It ſometimes admits of an additional ſhort ſyllable: as,

Oŭr hēarts nŏ lōngĕr lāngŭiſh.

4. The fourth form is made up of *four* Iambuſes.

Ănd māy ăt lāſt mў wēarў āge,
Find out the peaceful hermitage.

5. The fifth ſpecies of Engliſh Iambic, conſiſts of *five* Iambuſes.

Hŏw lōv'd, hŏw vālŭ'd ōnce, ăvāils thĕe nōt,
To whom related, or by whom begot:
A heap of duſt alone remains of thee;
'Tis all thou art, and all the proud ſhall be.

Bĕ wīſe tŏ-dāy, 'tĭs mādnĕſs tō dĕfēr;
Next day the fatal precedent will plead;
Thus on, till wiſdom is puſh'd out of life.

This is called the *Heroic* meaſure. In its ſimpleſt form it conſiſts of five Iambuſes; but by the admiſſion of other feet, as Trochees, Dactyls, Anapæſts, &c. it is capable of many varieties. Indeed, moſt of the Engliſh common meaſures may be varied in the ſame way, as well as by the different poſition of their pauſes.

6. The ſixth form of our Iambic is commonly called the *Alexandrine* meaſure. It conſiſts of *ſix* Iambuſes.

Fŏr thōu ărt būt ŏf dūſt; bĕ hūmblĕ ānd bĕ wīſe.

The Alexandrine is ſometimes introduced into heroic rhyme; and when uſed ſparingly, and with judgment, occaſions an agreeable variety.

Thĕ sēas ſhăll wāſte, thĕ ſkīes ĭn ſmōke dĕcāy,
Rocks fall to duſt, and mountains melt away;
But fix'd his word, his ſaving pow'r remains:
Thy realm for ever laſts, thy own Meſſiah reigns.

7. The ſeventh and laſt form of our Iambic meaſure, is made up of *ſeven* Iambuſes.

Thĕ Lōrd dĕſcēndĕd frōm ăbōve, ănd bōw'd thĕ hēavĕns hīgh.

This was anciently written in one line; but it is now broken into two; the firſt containing four feet, and the ſecond three:

Whĕn āll thў mĕrciĕs, O mў Gōd!
My riſing ſoul ſurveys,
Tranſported with the view, I'm loſt
In wonder, love, and praiſe.

In all theſe meaſures, the accents are to be placed on even ſyllables; and every line conſidered by itſelf, is, in general, more melodious, as this rule is more ſtrictly obſerved.

TROCHAIC verſe is of ſeveral kinds.

1. The ſhorteſt Trochaic verſe in our language, conſiſts of one Trochee and a long ſyllable.

Trŭĕſt lōve,
From above,
Being pure,
Will endure.

Tūmŭlt cēaſe,
Sink to peace.

This meaſure is defective in dignity, and can ſeldom be uſed on ſerious occaſions.

2. The ſecond Engliſh form of the Trochaic conſiſts of *two* feet; and is likewiſe ſo brief, that it is rarely uſed for any very ſerious purpoſe.

Ōn thĕ mōuntăin
By a fountain.

It ſometimes contains two feet or trochees, with an additional long ſyllable: as,

Īn thĕ dāys ŏf ōld
Fables plainly told.

3. The third ſpecies conſiſts of *three* trochees: as,

Whēn ŏur hēarts ăre mōurnĭng:

or of three trochees, with an additional long ſyllable: as,

Rēſtlĕſs mōrtăls tōil fŏr nōught;
Bliſs in vain from earth is ſought;
Bliſs, a native of the ſky,
Never wanders. Mortals, try;
There you cannot ſeek in vain;
For to ſeek her is to gain.

4. The fourth Trochaic ſpecies conſiſts of *four* trochees: as,

Rōund ŭs rōars thĕ tēmpĕſt lōudĕr.

This form may take an additional long ſyllable, as follows:

Īdlĕ āftĕr dīnnĕr īn hĭs chāir,
Sat a farmer, ruddy, fat, and fair.

But this meaſure is very uncommon.

5. The fifth Trochaic ſpecies is likewiſe uncommon. It is compoſed of *five* trochees.

Āll thăt wālk ŏn fōot ŏr rīde ĭn chārĭŏts,
All that dwell in palaces or garrets.

6. The ſixth form of the Engliſh Trochaic conſiſts of *ſix* trochees: as,

Ōn ă mōuntăin, ſtrētch'd bĕneāth ă hōarў wīllŏw,
Lay a ſhepherd ſwain, and view'd the rolling billow.

This ſeems to be the longeſt Trochaic line that our language admits.

In all theſe Trochaic meaſures, the accent is to be placed on the odd ſyllables.

The DACTYLIC meaſure being very uncommon, we ſhall give only one example of one ſpecies of it.

Frōm thĕ lŏw plēaſūres ŏf thīs fāllĕn nātūre,
Riſe we to higher, &c.

ANAPÆSTIC verſes are divided into ſeveral ſpecies.

1. The ſhorteſt anapæſtic verſe muſt be a *ſingle* anapæſt; as,

Bŭt ĭn vāin,
They complain.

This meaſure is, however, ambiguous; for, by laying the ſtreſs of the voice on the firſt and third ſyllables, we might make a trochaic. And therefore the firſt and ſimpleſt form of our genuine Anapæſtic verſe, is made up of *two* Anapæſts: as,

Bŭt hĭs cōurăge 'găn fāil,
For no arts could avail.

This form admits of an additional ſhort ſyllable.

Thĕn hĭs cōurăge 'găn fāil hĭm,
For no arts could avail him.

2. The ſecond ſpecies conſiſts of *three* Anapæſts.

Ŏ yĕ wōods, ſprĕad yŏur brānchĕs ăpāce;
To your deepeſt receſſes I fly;
I would hide with the beaſts of the chaſe;
I would vaniſh from every eye.

This is a very pleaſing meaſure, and much uſed, both in ſolemn and cheerful ſubjects.

3. The third kind of the Engliſh Anapæſtic, conſiſts of *four* Anapæſts.

Măy ĭ gōvĕrn mў pāssĭons wĭth ābſŏlūte ſwāy ;
And grow wiſer and better as life wears away.

This meaſure will admit of a ſhort ſyllable at the end : as,

Ŏn thĕ wārm chĕek ŏf yōuth, ſmĭles ănd rōſĕs ăre blēndĭng.

The preceding are the different kinds of the principal feet, in their more ſimple forms. They are capable of numerous variations, by the intermixture of thoſe feet with each other ; and by the admiſſion of the ſecondary feet.

We have obſerved, that Engliſh verſe is compoſed of feet formed by accent ; and that when the accent falls on vowels, the feet are equivalent to thoſe formed by quantity. That the ſtudent may clearly perceive this difference, we ſhall produce a ſpecimen of each kind.

O'ĕr hēaps ŏf rŭĭns ſtālk'd thĕ ſtātelў hīnd.

Here we ſee the accent is upon the vowel in each ſecond ſyllable. In the following line, we ſhall find the ſame Iambic movement, but formed by accent on conſonants, except the laſt ſyllable.

Then rúſtling, cráckling, cráſhing, thúnder dōwn.

Here the time of the ſhort accented ſyllables, is compenſated by a ſhort pauſe, at the end of each word to which they belong.

We now proceed to ſhow the manner in which poetry is varied and improved, by the admiſſion of ſecondary feet into its compoſition.

Múrmuring, and with him fled the ſhades of night.

The firſt foot here is a Dactyl ; the reſt are Iambics.

O'er mány ă frōzen, mány a fĭery Alp.

This line contains three Amphibrachs mixed with Iambics.

Ĭnnūmĕrăblĕ before th' Almighty's throne.

Here, in the ſecond foot, we find a Tribrach.

Seē thĕ bōld yōuth ſtrāin úp the thréat'ning ſtēep.

In this line, the firſt foot is a Trochee; the ſecond a genuine Spondee by quantity; the third a Spondee by accent.

In the following line, the firſt foot is a Pyrrhic, the ſecond a Spondee.

Thăt ŏn wēak wīngs from far purſues your flight.

FROM the preceding view of Engliſh verſification, we may ſee what a copious ſtock of materials it poſſeſſes. For we are not only allowed the uſe of all the ancient poetic feet, in our heroic meaſure, but we have, as before obſerved, duplicates of each, agreeing in movement, though differing in meaſure,* and which make different impreſſions on the ear; an opulence peculiar to our language, and which may be the ſource of a boundleſs variety.

Of Poetical Pauſes.

There are two ſorts of pauſes, one for ſenſe, and one for melody, perfectly diſtinct from each other. The former may be called *ſentential*, the latter, *harmonic* pauſes.

The ſentential pauſes are thoſe which are known to us by the name of ſtops, and which have names given them; as the comma, ſemicolon, colon, and period.

The harmonic pauſes may be ſubdivided into the *final* pauſe, and the *cæſural* pauſe. Theſe ſometimes coincide with the ſentential pauſe, ſometimes have an independent ſtate, that is, exiſt where there is no ſtop in the ſenſe.

The final pauſe takes place at the end of the line, cloſes the verſe, and marks the meaſure: the cæſural divides it into equal or unequal parts.

* Movement and meaſure are thus diſtinguiſhed. *Movement* expreſſes the progreſſive order of ſounds, whether from ſtrong to weak, from long to ſhort, or *vice verſa*. *Meaſure* ſignifies the proportion of time, both in ſounds and pauſes.

The final pauſe preſerves the melody, without interfering with the ſenſe. For the pauſe itſelf perfectly marks the bound of the metre; and being made only by a ſuſpenſion of the voice, not by any change of note, it can never affect the ſenſe. This is not the only advantage gained to numbers, by this final pauſe or ſtop of ſuſpenſion. It alſo prevents that monotony, that ſameneſs of note at the end of lines, which, however pleaſing to a rude, is diſguſting to a delicate ear. For as this final pauſe has no peculiar note of its own, but always takes that which belongs to the preceding word, it changes continually with the matter, and is as various as the ſenſe.

It is the final pauſe which alone, on many occaſions, marks the difference between proſe and verſe; which will be evident from the following arrangement of a few poetical lines.

"Of man's firſt diſobedience, and the fruit of that forbidden tree, whoſe mortal taſte brought death into the world, and all our wo, with loſs of Eden, till one greater man reſtore us, and regain the bliſsful ſeat, ſing, heavenly muſe!"

A ſtranger to the poem would not eaſily diſcover that this was verſe; but would take it for poetical proſe. By properly adjuſting the final pauſe, we ſhall reſtore the paſſage to its true ſtate of verſe.

Of man's firſt diſobedience, and the fruit
Of that forbidden tree, whoſe mortal taſte
Brought death into the world, and all our wo,
With loſs of Eden, till one greater man
Reſtore us, and regain the bliſsful ſeat,
Sing, heavenly muſe!

Theſe examples ſhow the neceſſity of reading blank verſe, in ſuch a manner, as to make every line ſenſible to the ear; for, what is the uſe of melody, or for what end has the poet compoſed in verſe, if, in reading his lines, we ſuppreſs his numbers, by omitting the final pauſe; and degrade them, by our pronunciation, into mere proſe?

The Cæſura is commonly on the fourth, fifth, or ſixth ſyllable of heroic verſe.

On the fourth ſyllable, or at the end of the ſecond foot; as,

The ſilver eel" in ſhining volumes roll'd,
The yellow carp" in ſcales bedropp'd with gold.

On the fifth ſyllable, or in the middle of the third foot: as,

Round broken columns" claſping ivy twin'd,
O'er heaps of ruin" ſtalk'd the ſtately hind.

On the ſixth ſyllable, or at the end of the third foot: as,

Oh ſay what ſtranger cauſe" yet unexplor'd,
Could make a gentle belle" reject a lord?

A line may be divided into three portions, by two cæſuras: as,

Outſtretch'd he lay" on the cold ground" and oft"
Look'd up to heav'n.

There is another mode of dividing lines, well ſuited to the nature of the couplet, by introducing ſemi-pauſes, which divide the line into four pauſes. This ſemi-pauſe may be called a *demi-cæſura*.

The following lines admit of, and exemplify it.

Glows' while he reads" but trembles' as he writes.
Reaſon' the card" but paſſion' is the gale.
Rides' in the whirlwind" and directs' the ſtorm.

Of Melody, Harmony, and Expreſſion.

Having ſhewn the general nature of feet and pauſes, the conſtituent parts of verſe, we ſhall now point out, more particularly, their uſe and importance.

Melody, harmony, and expreſſion, are the three great objects of poetic numbers. By melody, is meant, a pleaſing effect produced on the ear, from an apt arrangement of the conſtituent parts of verſe, according to the laws of meaſure and movement. By harmony, an effect produced by an action of the mind, in comparing the different members of a verſe with each other, and perceiving a due and beautiful

proportion between them. By expreſſion, ſuch a choice and arrangement of the conſtituent parts of verſe, as ſerve to enforce and illuſtrate the thought or the ſentiment.

We ſhall conſider each of theſe three objects in verſification, both with reſpect to the feet and the pauſes.

1ſt, With regard to melody.

From the examples which we have given of verſes compoſed in all the principal feet, it is evident that a conſiderable portion of melody is found in each of them, though in different degrees. Verſes made up of pure Iambics have an excellent melody.

That the final and cæſural pauſes contribute to melody, cannot be doubted by any perſon who reviews the inſtances, which we have already given of thoſe pauſes. To form lines of the firſt melody, the cæſura muſt be at the end of the ſecond, or of the third foot, or in the middle of the third.

2d, With reſpect to harmony.

Verſes compoſed of Iambics have indeed a fine harmony; but as the ſtreſs of the voice, in repeating ſuch verſes, is always in the ſame places, that is, on every ſecond ſyllable, ſuch a uniformity would diſguſt the ear in a long ſucceſſion; and therefore ſuch changes were ſought for, as might introduce the pleaſure of variety, without prejudice to melody; or which might even contribute to its improvement.

Of this nature was the introduction of the Trochee, to form the firſt foot of an heroic verſe: as,

Fāvoŭrs tŏ nōne, tŏ āll ſhĕ ſmīles ĕxténds,
O'ft ſhe rejècts, but never once offends.

Each of theſe lines begins with a Trochee; the remaining feet are in the Iambic movement. In the following line of the ſame movement, the fourth foot is a Trochee.

Ăll thēſe ŏur nōtiŏns vāin, sēes ănd dĕrīdes.

The next change admitted for the ſake of variety, without prejudice to melody, is the intermixture of Pyrrhics

and Spondees; in which, two impreſſions in the one foot make up for the want of one in the other; and two long ſyllables compenſate two ſhort ones, ſo as to make the ſum of the quantity of the two feet, equal to two Iambics.

Ŏn thĕ grēen bānk tŏ lōok ĭntŏ thĕ clēar
Smōoth lāke thăt to mē ſeēm'd another ſky.
Stōod rūl'd ſtōod văſt ĭnfĭnĭtŭde cŏnfīn'd.

The next variety admitted is that of the Amphibrach.

Which manў ă bārd hăd cháuntĕd mánў ă dāy.

In this line, we find that two of the feet are Amphibrachs; and three, Iambics.

We have before ſhown that the cæſura improves the melody of verſe; and we ſhall now ſpeak of its other more important office, that of being the chief ſource of harmony in numbers.

The firſt and loweſt perception of harmony, by means of the cæſura, ariſes from comparing two members of the ſame line with each other, divided in the manner to be ſeen in the inſtances before mentioned; becauſe the beauty of proportion in the members, according to each of theſe diviſions, is founded in nature; being as one to two—two to three—or three to two.

The next degree ariſes from comparing the members of a couplet, or two contiguous lines: as,

See the bold youth" ſtrain up the threat'ning ſteep,
Ruſh thro' the thickets" down the valleys ſweep.

Here we find the cæſura of the firſt line, at the end of the ſecond foot; and in the middle of the third foot in the laſt line.

Hang o'er their courſers' heads" with eager ſpeed,
And earth rolls back" beneath the flying ſteed.

In this couplet, the cæſura is at the end of the third foot, in the firſt line; and of the ſecond, in the latter line.

The next perception of harmony ariſes from comparing a greater number of lines, and obſerving the relative proportion of the couplets to each other, in point of ſimilarity and diverſity: as,

Thy foreſts Windſor" and thy green retreats,
At once the monarch's" and the muſe's ſeats,
Invite my lays." Be preſent Sylvan maids,
Unlock your ſprings" and open all your ſhades.

Not half ſo ſwift" the trembling doves can fly,
When the fierce eagle" cleaves the liquid ſky;
Not half ſo ſwiftly" the fierce eagle moves,
When through the clouds" he drives the trembling doves.

In this way the compariſon of lines variouſly apportioned by the different ſeats of the three cæſuras, may be the ſource of a great variety of harmony, conſiſtent with the fineſt melody. This is ſtill increaſed by the introduction of two cæſuras, and much more by that of ſemi-pauſes. The ſemi-pauſes double every where the terms of compariſon; give a more diſtinct view of the whole and the parts; afford new proportions of meaſurement, and an ampler ſcope for diverſity and equality, thoſe ſources of beauty in harmony.

Warms' in the ſun" refreſhes' in the breeze,
Glows' in the ſtars" and bloſſoms' in the trees;
Lives' through all life" extends' through all extent,
Spreads' undivided" operates' unſpent.

3d. The laſt object in verſification regards expreſſion.

When men expreſs their ſentiments by words, they naturally fall into that ſort of movement of the voice, which is conſonant to that produced by the emotion in the mind; and the Dactylic or Anapæſtic, the Trochaic, Iambic, or Spondaic, prevails even in common diſcourſe, according to the different nature of the ſentiments expreſſed. To imitate nature, therefore, the poet, in arranging his words in the artificial compoſition of verſe, muſt take care to make

the movement correſpond to the ſentiment, by the proper uſe of the ſeveral kinds of feet: and this is the firſt and moſt general ſource of expreſſion in numbers.

That a judicious management of the feet and pauſes, may be peculiarly expreſſive of particular operations and ſentiments, will ſufficiently appear to the learner, by a few ſelect examples under each of thoſe heads.

In the following inſtance, the vaſt dimenſions of Satan are ſhown by an uncommon ſucceſſion of long ſyllables, which detain us to ſurvey the huge arch fiend, in his fixed poſture.

Sō ſtrētch'd oūt hūge in lēngth the ārch fiend lāy.

The next example affords inſtances of the power of a Trochee beginning a line, when ſucceeded by an Iambus.

——————————and ſheer within
Līghts ŏn hĭs fēet: as when a prowling wolf
Leáps o'ĕr thĕ fénce wĭth eāſe ĭntŏ thĕ fōld.

The Trochee which begins the line ſhows Satan in the act of lighting: the Iambus that follows, fixes him—"Lĭghts ŏn hĭs fēet."

The ſame artifice, in the beginning of the next line, makes us ſee the wolf—"leáp o'ĕr thĕ fénce."—But as the mere act of leaping over the fence, is not the only circumſtance to be attended to, but alſo the facility with which it is done, this is ſtrongly marked, not only by the ſmooth foot which follows—"wĭth eāſe"—itſelf very expreſſive, but likewiſe by a Pyrrhic preceding the laſt foot—"ĭntŏ thĕ fōld."—which indeed carries the wolf—"wĭth eāſe ĭntŏ thĕ fōld."

The following inſtances ſhow the effects produced by cæſuras, ſo placed as to divide the line into very unequal portions: ſuch as that after the firſt, and before the laſt ſemipede.

——————————thus with the year
Seaſons return, but not to me returns
Day" or the ſweet approach of even or morn.

Here the cæſura after the firſt ſemipede *Day*, ſtops us unexpectedly, and forcibly impreſſes the imagination with the greatneſs of the author's loſs, the loſs of ſight.

No ſooner had th' Almighty ceas'd, but all
The multitude of angels, with a ſhout
Loud" as from numbers without number" ſweet
As from bleſt voices uttering joy.——

There is ſomething very *ſtriking in this uncommon* cæſura, which *ſuddenly ſtops the* reader, to reflect on *the importance of a particular* word.

We *ſhall* cloſe the ſubject, with an example containing the united powers of many of the principles which have been explained.

Dīre wăs the tóssĭng" dēep the grōans" Dĕſpāir"
Tended the sick" búſieſt from coúch to coúch"
And ōvĕr thĕm trĭúmphánt deăth" hĭs dárt"
Shook" bŭt dĕlāy'd tŏ ſtrīke.

Many of the rules and obſervations reſpecting Proſody, are taken from "Sheridan's Art of Reading;" to which book the Compiler refers the ingenious ſtudent, for more extenſive information on the ſubject.

PUNCTUATION.*

PUNCTUATION is the art of dividing a written compoſition into ſentences, or parts of ſentences, by points or ſtops, for the purpoſe of marking the different pauſes which the ſenſe, and an accurate pronunciation require.

The Comma repreſents the ſhorteſt pauſe; the Semicolon, a pauſe double that of the comma; the Colon, double that of the ſemicolon; and the Period, double that of the colon.

The preciſe quantity or duration of each pauſe, cannot be defined; for it varies with the time of the whole. The ſame compoſition may be rehearſed in a quicker or a ſlower time; but the proportion between the pauſes ſhould be ever invariable.

In order more clearly to determine the proper application of the points, we muſt diſtinguiſh between an *imperfect phraſe*, a *ſimple ſentence*, and a *compound ſentence*.

An imperfect phraſe contains no aſſertion, or does not amount to a propoſition or ſentence: as, "Therefore; in haſte; ſtudious of praiſe."

A ſimple ſentence has but one ſubject, and one finite verb, expreſſed or implied: as, "Temperance preſerves health."

A compound ſentence has more than one ſubject, or one finite verb, either expreſſed or underſtood; or it conſiſts of two ro more ſimple ſentences connected together: as, "Good nature mends and beautifies all objects;" "Virtue refines the affections, but vice debaſes them."

In a ſentence, the ſubject and the verb, or either of them,

* As punctuation is intended to aid both the ſenſe, and the pronunciation of a ſentence, it could not have been excluſively diſcuſſed under the part of Syntax, or of Proſody. The nature of the ſubject, its extent and importance, and the grammatical knowledge which it preſuppoſes, have induced us to make it a diſtinct and ſubſequent article.

may be accompanied with ſeveral adjuncts: as, the object, the end, the circumſtance of time, place, manner, and the like: and the ſubject or verb may be either immediately connected with them, or mediately; that is, by being connected with ſomething which is connected with ſome other, and ſo on: as, "The mind, unoccupied with uſeful knowledge, becomes a magazine of trifles and follies."

Members of ſentences *may be divided into ſimple* and compound *members.* *See page* 137.

CHAPTER I.

Of the COMMA.

The Comma uſually ſeparates thoſe parts of a ſentence, which, though very cloſely connected in ſenſe and conſtruction, require a pauſe between them.

RULE I. With reſpect to a ſimple ſentence, the ſeveral words of which it conſiſts have ſo near a relation to each other, that, in general, no points are requiſite, except a full ſtop at the end of it: as, "The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wiſdom." "Every part of matter ſwarms with living creatures."

A ſimple ſentence, however, when it is a long one, and the nominative caſe is accompanied with inſeparable adjuncts, may admit of a pauſe immediately before the verb: as, "The good taſte of the preſent age, has not allowed us to neglect the cultivation of the Engliſh language:" "To be totally indifferent to praiſe or cenſure, is a real defect in character."

RULE II. When the connexion of the different parts of a ſimple ſentence is interrupted by an imperfect phraſe, a comma is uſually introduced before the beginning, and at the end of this phraſe: as, "I remember, *with gratitude*, his goodneſs to me:" "His work is, *in many reſpects*, very imperfect. It is, *therefore*, not much approved." But when theſe interruptions are ſlight and unimportant, the comma

is better omitted; as, "Flattery is *certainly* pernicious;" "There is *surely* a pleasure in beneficence."

In the generality of compound sentences, there is frequent occasion for commas; as will appear from the following view of the different occasions to which they are adapted.

RULE III. When two or more nouns occur in the same construction, they are parted by a comma: as, "Reason, virtue, answer one great aim:" "The husband, wife, and children, suffered extremely *;" "They took away their furniture, clothes, and stock in trade:" "He is alternately supported by his father, his uncle, and his elder brother."

From this rule there is mostly an exception, with regard to two nouns closely connected by a conjunction: as, "Virtue *and* vice form a strong contrast to each other:" "Libertines call religion bigotry or superstition;" "There is a natural difference between merit *and* demerit, virtue *and* vice, wisdom *and* folly." But if the parts connected are not short, a comma may be inserted, though the conjunction is expressed: as, "Romances may be said to be miserable rhapsodies, *or* dangerous incentives to evil;" "Intemperance destroys the strength of our bodies, *and* the vigour of our minds."

RULE IV. Two or more adjectives belonging to the same substantive are likewise separated by commas: as, "Plain, honest truth, wants no artificial covering;" "David was a brave, wise, and pious man;" "A woman, gentle, sensible, well-educated, and religious;" "The most innocent pleasures are the sweetest, the most rational, the most affecting, and the most lasting."

But two adjectives, immediately connected by a conjunction, are not separated by a comma: as, "True worth is modest *and* retired;" "Truth is fair *and* artless, simple

* As a considerable pause in pronunciation, is necessary between the last noun and the verb, a comma should be inserted to denote it. But as no pause is allowable between the last adjective and the noun, under Rule IV. the comma is there properly omitted.

See WALKER's *Elements of Elocution.*

and ſincere, uniform *and* conſiſtent." "We muſt be *wiſe or* fooliſh; there is no medium."

RULE V. Two or more verbs, having the ſame nominative caſe, and immediately following one another, are alſo ſeparated by commas: as, "Virtue ſupports in adverſity, moderates in proſperity:" "In a letter, we may adviſe, exhort, comfort, requeſt, and diſcuſs."

Two verbs immediately connected by a *conjunction*, are an exception to the above rule: as, "The ſtudy of natural hiſtory expands *and* elevates the mind;" "Whether we eat *or* drink, labour *or* ſleep, we ſhould be moderate."

Two or more participles are ſubject to a ſimilar rule, and exception: as, "A man, fearing, ſerving, and loving his Creator;" "He was happy in being loved, eſteemed, and reſpected;" "By being admired *and* flattered, we are often corrupted."

RULE VI. Two or more adverbs immediately ſucceeding one another, muſt be ſeparated by commas: as, "We are fearfully, wonderfully framed;" "Succeſs generally depends on acting prudently, ſteadily, and vigorouſly, in what we undertake."

But when two adverbs are joined by a conjunction, they are not parted by the comma: as, "Some men ſin deliberately *and* preſumptuouſly;" "There is no middle ſtate; we muſt live virtuouſly *or* viciouſly."

RULE VII. When participles are followed by ſomething that depends on them, they are generally ſeparated from the reſt of the ſentence by a comma: as, "The king, *approving the plan*, put it in execution;" "His talents, *formed for great enterpriſes*, could not fail of rendering him conſpicuous; "All mankind compoſe one family, *aſſembled* under the eye of one common Father."

RULE VIII. When a conjunction is divided by a phraſe or ſentence from the verb to which it belongs, ſuch intervening phraſe has uſually a comma at each extremity: as, "They ſet out early, *and*, before the cloſe of the day, arrived at the deſtined place."

RULE IX. Expreſſions in a direct addreſs, are ſeparated

from the reſt of the ſentence by commas: as, "*My ſon*, give me thy heart;" "I am obliged to you, *my friends*, for your many favours."

RULE X. The caſe abſolute, and the infinitive mood abſolute, are ſeparated by commas from the body of the ſentence: as, "His father dying, he ſucceeded to the eſtate;" "At length, their miniſtry performed, and race well run, they left the world in peace;" "To confeſs the truth, I was much in fault."

RULE XI. Nouns in appoſition, that is, nouns added to other nouns in the ſame caſe, by way of explication or illuſtration, when accompanied with adjuncts, are ſet off by commas: as, "Paul, the apoſtle of the Gentiles, was eminent for his zeal and knowledge;" "The butterfly, child of the ſummer, flutters in the ſun."

But if ſuch nouns are ſingle, or only form a proper name, they are not divided: as, "Paul the apoſtle;" "The emperor Antoninus wrote an excellent book."

RULE XII. Simple members of ſentences connected by comparatives, are for the moſt part diſtinguiſhed by a comma: as, "*As* the hart panteth after the water brooks, *ſo* doth my ſoul pant after thee;" "*Better* is a dinner of herbs with love, *than* a ſtalled ox and hatred with it."

If the members in comparative ſentences are ſhort, the comma is, in general, better omitted: as, "How much *better* is it to get wiſdom *than* gold!" "Mankind act *oftener* from caprice *than* reaſon."

RULE XIII. When words are placed in oppoſition to each other, or with ſome marked variety, they require to be diſtinguiſhed by a comma: as,

"Tho' deep, yet clear; tho' gentle, yet not dull;
Strong, without rage; without o'erflowing, full."

"Good men, in this frail, imperfect ſtate, are often found, not only in union *with*, but in oppoſition *to*, the views and conduct of one another."

Sometimes when the word with which the laſt prepoſition agrees, is ſingle, it is better to omit the comma before

it: as, "Many ſtates were in alliance *with*, and under the protection *of* Rome."

The ſame rule and reſtriction muſt be applied when two or more nouns refer to the ſame prepoſition: as, "He was compoſed both under the threatening, and at the approach, *of* a cruel and lingering death;" "He was not only the king, but the father *of* his people."

RULE XIV. A remarkable expreſſion, or a ſhort obſervation, ſomewhat in the manner of a quotation, may be properly marked with a comma: as, "It hurts a man's pride to ſay, I do not know;" "Plutarch calls lying, the vice of ſlaves."

RULE XV. Relative pronouns are connective words, and generally admit a comma before them: as, "He preaches ſublimely, *who* lives a ſober, righteous, and pious life;" "There is no charm in the female ſex, *which* can ſupply the place of virtue."

But when two members, or phraſes, are cloſely connected by a relative, reſtraining the general notion of the antecedent to a particular ſenſe, the comma ſhould be omitted: as, "Self-denial is the ſacrifice which virtue muſt make;" "A man who is of a detracting ſpirit, will miſconſtrue the moſt innocent words that can be put together." In the latter example, the aſſertion is not of "man in general," but of "a man who is of a detracting ſpirit;" and therefore they ſhould not be ſeparated.

The fifteenth rule applies equally to caſes in which the relative is not expreſſed, but underſtood: as, "It was from piety, warm and unaffected, that his morals derived ſtrength." "This ſentiment, habitual and ſtrong, influenced his whole conduct." In both of theſe examples, the relative and verb *which was*, are underſtood.

RULE XVI. A ſimple member of a ſentence, contained within another, or following another, muſt be diſtinguiſhed by the comma: as, "To improve time, whilſt we are bleſſed with health, will ſmooth the bed of ſickneſs." "Very often, while we are complaining of the vanity, and the

evils of human life, we make that vanity, and we increaſe thoſe evils."

If, however, the members ſucceeding each other, are very cloſely connected, the comma is unneceſſary: as, "Revelation tells us how we may attain happineſs."

When a verb in the infinitive mood, follows its governing verb, with ſeveral words between them, thoſe words ſhould generally have a comma at the end of them: as, "It ill becomes good and wiſe men, to oppoſe and degrade one another."

Several verbs in the infinitive mood, having a common dependence, and ſucceeding one another, are alſo divided by commas: as, "To relieve the indigent, to comfort the afflicted, to protect the innocent, to reward the deſerving, is a humane and noble employment."

RULE XVII. When the verb *to be* is followed by a verb in the infinitive mood, which, by tranſpoſition, might be made the nominative caſe to it, the former is generally ſeparated from the latter verb, by a comma: as, "The moſt obvious remedy is, to withdraw from all aſſociations with bad men." "The firſt and moſt obvious remedy againſt the infection, is, to withdraw from all aſſociations with bad men."

RULE XVIII. When adjuncts or circumſtances are of importance, and often when the natural order of them is inverted, they may be ſet off by commas: as, "Virtue muſt be formed and ſupported, not by unfrequent acts, but by daily and repeated exertions." "Vices, like ſhadows, towards the evening of life, grow great and monſtrous." "Our intereſts are interwoven by threads innumerable;" "By threads innumerable, our intereſts are interwoven."

RULE XIX. Where a verb is underſtood, a comma may often be properly introduced. This is a general rule, which, beſides compriſing ſome of the preceding rules, will apply to many caſes not determined by any of them: as, "From law ariſes ſecurity; from ſecurity, curioſity; from curioſity, knowledge." In this example, the verb "ariſes"

is underſtood before "curioſity" and "knowledge;" at which words a conſiderable pauſe is neceſſary.

RULE XX. The words, *nay, ſo, hence, again, firſt, ſecondly, formerly, now, laſtly, once more, above all, on the contrary, in the next place, in ſhort*, and all other words and phraſes of the ſame kind, muſt generally be ſeparated from the context by a comma: as, "Remember thy beſt and firſt friend; *formerly, the ſupporter of thy infancy*, and the guide of *thy childhood; now, the guardian of thy youth*, and *the hope of thy coming* years." "He feared want, *hence, he over-valued* riches." "This conduct may heal the difference, *nay*, it may conſtantly prevent any in future." "*Finally*, I ſhall only repeat what has been often juſtly ſaid." "If the ſpring put forth no bloſſoms, in ſummer there will be no beauty, and in autumn, no fruit; *ſo*, if youth be trifled away without improvement, riper years may be contemptible, and old age miſerable."

In many of the foregoing rules and examples, great regard muſt be paid to the length of the clauſes, and the proportion which they bear to one another. An attention to the ſenſe of any paſſage, and to the clear, eaſy communication of it, will, it is preſumed, with the aid of the preceding rules, enable the ſtudent to adjuſt the proper pauſes, and the places for inſerting the commas.

CHAPTER II.

Of the SEMICOLON.

The Semicolon is uſed for dividing a compound ſentence into two or more parts, not ſo cloſely connected as thoſe which are ſeparated by a comma, nor yet ſo little dependent on each other, as thoſe which are diſtinguiſhed by a colon.

The ſemicolon is ſometimes uſed, when the preceding member of the ſentence does not of itſelf give a complete ſenſe, but depends on the following clauſe: and ſometimes when the ſenſe of that member would be complete without the concluding one: as in the following inſtances: "As

the desire of approbation, when it works according to reason, improves the amiable part of our species in every thing that is laudable; so nothing is more destructive to them when it is governed by vanity and folly."

"Experience teaches us, that an entire retreat from worldly affairs, is not what religion requires; nor does it even enjoin a long retreat from them."

"Straws swim upon the surface; but pearls lie at the bottom."

"Philosophers assert, that Nature is unlimited in her operations; that she has inexhaustible treasures in reserve; that knowledge will always be progressive; and that all future generations will continue to make discoveries, of which we have not the least idea."

CHAPTER III.

Of the COLON.

THE Colon is used to divide a sentence into two or more parts, less connected than those which are separated by a semicolon; but not so independent as separate distinct sentences.

The Colon may be properly applied in the three following cases.

1. When a member of a sentence is complete in itself, but followed by some supplemental remark, or further illustration of the subject: as, "Nature felt her inability to extricate herself from the consequences of guilt: the gospel reveals the plan of Divine interposition and aid." "Nature confessed some atonement to be necessary: the gospel discovers that the necessary atonement is made."

2. When several semicolons have preceded, and a still greater pause is necessary, in order to mark the connecting or concluding sentiment: as, "A divine legislator, uttering his voice from heaven; an almighty governor, stretching forth his arm to punish or reward; informing us of perpetual rest prepared hereafter for the righteous, and of indignation and wrath awaiting the wicked: these are the con-

ſiderations which overawe the world, which ſupport integrity, and check guilt."

3. The Colon is commonly uſed when an example, a quotation, or a ſpeech is introduced: as, "The Scriptures give us an amiable repreſentation of the Deity, in theſe words: 'God is love.'" "He was often heard to ſay: 'I have done with the world, and I am willing to leave it.'"

The propriety of *uſing a colon, or ſemicolon, is ſometimes determined by a conjunction's being expreſſed, or not expreſſed: as, "Do* not flatter yourſelves with *the hope of perfect* happineſs: there is no ſuch thing in the world." "Do not flatter yourſelves with the hope of perfect happineſs; *for* there is no ſuch thing in the world."

CHAPTER IV.

Of the PERIOD.

WHEN a ſentence is complete and independent, and not connected in conſtruction with the following ſentence, it is marked with a period.

Some ſentences are independent of each other, both in their ſenſe and conſtruction: as, "Fear God. Honour the king. Have charity towards all men." Others are independent only in their grammatical conſtruction: as, "The Supreme Being changes not, either in his deſire to promote our happineſs, or in the plan of his adminiſtration. One light always ſhines upon us from above. One clear and direct path is always pointed out to man."

A period may ſometimes be admitted between two ſentences, though they are joined by a disjunctive or copulative conjunction. For the quality of the point does not always depend on the connective particle, but on the ſenſe and ſtructure of ſentences: as, "Recreations, though they may be of an innocent kind, require ſteady government, to keep them within a due and limited province. But ſuch as are of an irregular and vicious nature, are not to be governed, but to be baniſhed from every well-regulated mind."

"He who lifts himſelf up to the obſervation and notice

of the world, is, of all men, the leaſt likely to avoid cenſure. For he draws upon himſelf a thouſand eyes, that will narrowly inſpect him in every part."

The period ſhould be uſed after every abbreviated word: as, "M. S. P. S. N. B. A. D. O. S. N. S." &c.

CHAPTER V.

Of the DASH, *Notes of* INTERROGATION *and* EXCLAMATION, *&c.*

THE DASH.

THE DASH, though often uſed improperly by haſty and incoherent writers, may be introduced with propriety, where the ſentence breaks off abruptly; where a ſignificant pauſe is required; or where there is an unexpected turn in the ſentiment: as, "If thou art he, ſo much reſpected once—but, oh! how fallen! how degraded!" "If acting conformably to the will of our Creator;—if promoting the welfare of mankind around us;—if ſecuring our own happineſs; are objects of the higheſt moment:—then we are loudly called upon, to cultivate and extend the great intereſts of religion and virtue."

"Here lies the great——Falſe marble, where?
Nothing but ſordid duſt lies here."

Beſides the points which mark the pauſes in diſcourſe, there are others, which denote a different modulation of voice, in correſpondence to the ſenſe. Theſe are,

The Interrogative point,	?
The Exclamation point,	!
The Parentheſis,	( )

INTERROGATION.

A note of Interrogation is uſed at the end of an interrogative ſentence; that is, when a queſtion is aſked: as, "Who will accompany me?" "Shall we always be friends?"

Queſtions which a perſon aſks himſelf in contemplation, ought to be terminated by points of interrogation: as, "Who adorned the heavens with ſuch exquiſite beauty?" "At whoſe command do the planets perform their conſtant revolutions?"

A point of Interrogation is improper after ſentences which are not queſtions, but only expreſſions of admiration, or of ſome other emotion.

"How many inſtances have we of *chaſtity* and excellence in the fair ſex!"

"With what prudence does the ſon of Sirach adviſe us in the choice of our companions!"

A note of interrogation ſhould not be employed, in caſes where it is only ſaid a queſtion has been aſked, and where the words are not uſed as a queſtion. "The Cyprians aſked me, why I wept." To give this ſentence the interrogative form, it ſhould be expreſſed thus: "The Cyprians ſaid to me, 'Why doſt thou weep?'"

EXCLAMATION.

The note of Exclamation is applied to expreſſions of ſudden emotion, ſurpriſe, joy, grief, &c. and alſo to invocations or addreſſes: as, "My friend! this conduct amazes me!" "Bleſs the Lord, O my ſoul! and forget not all his benefits!"

"Oh! had we both our humble ſtate maintain'd,
And ſafe in peace and poverty remain'd!"

"Hear me, O Lord! for thy loving kindneſs is great!"

It is difficult, in ſome caſes, to diſtinguiſh between an interrogative and exclamatory ſentence; but a ſentence, in which any wonder or admiration is expreſſed, and no anſwer either expected or implied, may be always properly terminated by a note of exclamation: as, "How much vanity in the purſuits of men!" "Who can ſufficiently expreſs the goodneſs of our Creator!" "What is more amiable than virtue!"

The interrogation and exclamation points are indetermi-

nate as to their quantity or time, and may be equivalent in that reſpect to a ſemicolon, a colon, or a period, as the ſenſe may require. They mark an elevation of the voice.

The utility of the points of Interrogation and Exclamation, appears from the following examples, in which the meaning is ſignified and diſcriminated ſolely by the points.

"What condeſcenſion!"
"What condeſcenſion?"

"How great was the ſacrifice!"
"How great was the ſacrifice?"

PARENTHESIS.

A Parentheſis is a clauſe containing ſome neceſſary information, or uſeful remark, introduced into the body of a ſentence obliquely, and which may be omitted without injuring the conſtruction: as,

"Know then this truth, (enough for man to know,)
Virtue alone is happineſs below."

"And was the ranſom paid? It was: and paid
(What can exalt his bounty more?) for thee."

"To gain a poſthumous reputation, is to ſave four or five letters (for what is a name beſides?) from oblivion." "Know ye not, brethren, (for I ſpeak to them that know the law,) how that the law hath dominion over a man as long as he liveth?"

If the incidental clauſe is ſhort, or perfectly coincides with the reſt of the ſentence, it is not proper to uſe the parenthetical characters. The following inſtances are therefore improper uſes of the parentheſis. "Speak you (who ſaw) his wonders in the deep." "Every planet (as the Creator has made nothing in vain) is moſt probably inhabited." "He found them aſleep again; (for their eyes were heavy;) neither knew they what to anſwer him."

The parentheſis marks a moderate depreſſion of the voice and may be accompanied with every point which the ſenſe would require, if the parenthetical characters were omitted.

It ought to terminate with the ſame kind of ſtop which the member has, that precedes it; and to contain that ſtop within the parenthetical marks. We muſt, however, except caſes of interrogation and exclamation: as, "While they wiſh to pleaſe, (and why ſhould they not wiſh it?) they diſdain diſhonourable means." "It was repreſented by an analogy, (Oh, how inadequate!) which was borrowed from," &c.

There are other characters, which are frequently made uſe of in compoſition, and which may be explained in this place, viz.

An Apoſtrophe, marked thus ' is uſed to abbreviate or ſhorten a word: as, *'tis* for *it is*; *tho'* for *though*; *e'en* for *even*; *judg'd* for *judged*. Its chief uſe is to ſhow the genitive caſe of nouns: as, "A man's property; a woman's ornament."

A Caret marked thus ^ is placed where ſome word happens to be left out in writing, and which is inſerted over the line. This mark is alſo called a circumflex, when placed over ſome vowel of a word, to denote a long ſyllable: as, "Euphrâtes."

A Hyphen, marked thus - is employed in connecting compounded words: as, "Lap-dog, tea-pot, pre-exiſtence, ſelf-love, to-morrow, mother-in-law."

It is alſo uſed when a word is divided, and the former part is written or printed at the end of one line, and the latter part at the beginning of another. In this caſe, it is placed at the end of the firſt line, not at the beginning of the ſecond.

The Acute Accent, marked thus ': as, "*Fáncy*." The Grave thus `: as, "*Fàvour*."

In Engliſh, the Accentual marks are chiefly uſed in ſpelling-books and dictionaries, to mark the ſyllables which require a particular ſtreſs of the voice in pronunciation.

The ſtreſs is laid on long and ſhort ſyllables indiſcriminately. In order to diſtinguiſh the one from the other, ſome writers of dictionaries have placed the grave on the

former, and the acute on the latter, in this manner: "Mìnor, míneral, lìvely, líved, rìval, ríver."

The proper mark to diſtinguiſh a long ſyllable, is this ¯: as, "Rōſy:" and a ſhort one thus ˘: as, "Fŏlly. This laſt mark is called a breve.

A Diæreſis, thus marked ¨, conſiſts of two points placed over one of the two vowels that would otherwiſe make a diphthong, and parts them into two ſyllables: as, "Creätor, coädjutor, aërial."

A Section, marked thus §, is the diviſion of a diſcourſe, or chapter, into leſs parts or portions.

A Paragraph ¶ denotes the beginning of a new ſubject, or a ſentence not connected with the foregoing. This character is chiefly uſed in the Old, and in the New Teſtament.

A Quotation "". Two inverted commas are generally placed at the beginning of a phraſe or a paſſage, which is quoted or tranſcribed from the ſpeaker or author in his own words; and two commas in their direct poſition, are placed at the concluſion: as,

"The proper ſtudy of mankind is man."

Crotchets or Brackets [ ] ſerve to incloſe a word or ſentence, which is to be explained in a note, or the explanation itſelf, or a word or a ſentence which is intended to ſupply ſome deficiency, or to rectify ſome miſtake.

An Index or Hand ☞ points out a remarkable paſſage, or ſomething that requires particular attention.

A Brace } is uſed in poetry at the end of a triplet or three lines, which have the ſame rhyme.

Braces are alſo uſed to connect a number of words with one common term, and are introduced to prevent a repetition in writing or printing.

An Aſteriſk, or little ſtar *, directs the reader to ſome note in the margin, or at the bottom of the page. Two or three aſteriſks generally denote the omiſſion of ſome letters in a word, or of ſome bold or indelicate expreſſion, or ſome defect in the manuſcript.

An Ellipſis —— is alſo uſed, when ſome letters *in* a word, or ſome words in a verſe, are omitted: as, "The k—g," for "the king."

An Obeliſk, which is marked thus †, and Parallels thus ‖, together with the letters of the Alphabet, and figures, are uſed as references to the margin, or bottom of the page.

PARAGRAPHS.

It may not be improper to inſert, in this place, a few general directions reſpecting the diviſion of a compoſition into paragraphs.

Different ſubjects, unleſs they are very ſhort, or very numerous in ſmall compaſs, ſhould be ſeparated into paragraphs.

When one ſubject is continued to a conſiderable length, the larger diviſions of it ſhould be put into paragraphs. And it will have a good effect to form the breaks, when it can properly be done, at ſentiments of the moſt weight, or that call for peculiar attention.

The facts, premiſes, and concluſions, of a ſubject, ſometimes naturally point out the ſeparations into paragraphs: and each of theſe, when of great length, will again require ſubdiviſions at their moſt diſtinctive parts.

In caſes which require a connected ſubject to be formed into ſeveral paragraphs, a ſuitable turn of expreſſion, exhibiting the connexion of the broken parts, will give beauty and force to the diviſion.

DIRECTIONS RESPECTING THE USE OF CAPITAL LETTERS.

It was formerly the cuſtom to begin every noun with a capital: but as this practice was troubleſome, and gave the writing or printing a crowded and confuſed appearance, it has been diſcontinued. It is, however, very proper to begin with a capital,

1. The firſt word of every book, chapter, letter, note, or any other piece of writing.

2. The firſt word after a period; and, if the two ſenten-

ces are *totally independent*, after a note of interrogation or exclamation.

But if a number of interrogative or exclamatory ſentences, are thrown into one general group; or if the conſtruction of the latter ſentences depends on the former, all of them, except the firſt, may begin with a ſmall letter: as, "How long, ye ſimple ones, will ye love ſimplicity? and the ſcorners delight in their ſcorning? and fools hate knowledge?" "Alas! how different! yet how like the ſame!"

3. The appellations of the Deity: as, "God, Jehovah, the Almighty, the Supreme Being, the Lord, Providence, the Meſſiah, the Holy Spirit."

4. Proper names of perſons, places, ſtreets, mountains, rivers, ſhips: as, "George, York, the Strand, the Alps, the Thames, the Seahorſe."

5. Adjectives derived from the proper names of places; as, "Grecian, Roman, Engliſh, French, and Italian."

6. The firſt word of a quotation, introduced after a colon, or when it is in a direct form: as, "Always remember this ancient maxim: 'Know thyſelf.'" "Our great Lawgiver ſays, 'Take up thy croſs daily, and follow me.'" But when a quotation is brought in obliquely after a comma, a capital is unneceſſary: as, "Solomon obſerves, 'that pride goes before deſtruction.'"

The firſt word of an example may alſo very properly begin with a capital: as, "Temptation proves our virtue."

7. Every ſubſtantive and principal word in the titles of books: as, "Johnſon's Dictionary of the Engliſh Language;" "Thomſon's Seaſons;" "Rollin's Ancient Hiſtory."

8. The firſt word of every line in poetry.

9. The pronoun *I*, and the interjection *O*, are written in capitals: as, "I write:" "Hear, O earth!"

Other words, beſides the preceding, may begin with capitals, when they are remarkably emphatical, or the principal ſubject of the compoſition.

APPENDIX:

CONTAINING RULES AND OBSERVATIONS FOR ASSISTING YOUNG PERSONS TO WRITE WITH PERSPICUITY AND ACCURACY. TO BE STUDIED AFTER THEY HAVE ACQUIRED A COMPETENT KNOWLEDGE OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

PERSPICUITY

IS the fundamental quality of ſtyle: a quality ſo eſſential in every kind of writing, that for the want of it nothing can atone. It is not to be conſidered as merely a ſort of negative virtue, or freedom from defect. It has higher merit: it is a degree of poſitive beauty. We are pleaſed with an author, and conſider him as deſerving praiſe, who frees us from all fatigue of ſearching for his meaning; who carries us through his ſubject without any embarraſſment or confuſion; whoſe ſtyle flows always like a limpid ſtream, through which we ſee to the very bottom.

The ſtudy of perſpicuity and accuracy of expreſſion conſiſts of two parts: and requires attention, firſt, to *Single Words and Phraſes;* and then, to the *Conſtruction of Sentences.*

PART I.

Of PERSPICUITY and ACCURACY of EXPRESSION, with reſpect to ſingle Words and Phraſes.

THESE qualities of ſtyle, conſidered with regard to words and phraſes, require the following properties: PURITY, PROPRIETY, and PRECISION.

CHAPTER I.

Of PURITY.

PURITY of ſtyle conſiſts in the uſe of ſuch words, and ſuch conſtructions, as belong to the idiom of the language

which we ſpeak; in oppoſition to words and phraſes that are taken from other languages, or that are ungrammatical, obſolete, new-coined, or uſed without proper authority. All ſuch words and phraſes as the following, ſhould be avoided: *Quoth he; I wiſt not; erewhile; beheſt; ſelfſame; delicateſſe*, for delicacy; *politeſſe*, for politeneſs; *hauteur*, for haughtineſs; *incumberment*, *connexity*, *martyriſed*, for encumbrance, connexion, martyred.

The introduction of foreign and learned words, unleſs where neceſſity requires them, ſhould never be admitted into our compoſition. Barren languages may need ſuch aſſiſtance, but ours is not one of theſe. A multitude of Latin words, in particular, have, of late, been poured in upon our language. On ſome occaſions, they give an appearance of elevation and dignity to ſtyle; but they often render it ſtiff and apparently forced. In general, a plain, native ſtyle, is not only more intelligible to all readers, but by a proper management of words, it can be made equally ſtrong and expreſſive with this Latiniſed Engliſh, or any foreign idioms.

CHAPTER II.

Of PROPRIETY.

PROPRIETY of language is the ſelection of ſuch words as the beſt uſage has appropriated to thoſe ideas, which we intend to expreſs by them; in oppoſition to low expreſſions, and to words and phraſes which would be leſs ſignificant of the ideas that we mean to convey. Style may be pure, that is, it may be ſtrictly Engliſh, without Scotticiſms or Galliciſms, or ungrammatical, irregular expreſſions of any kind, and may, nevertheleſs, be deficient in propriety: for the words may be ill choſen, not adapted to the ſubject, nor fully expreſſive of the author's ſenſe.

To preſerve propriety, therefore, in our words and phraſes, we muſt avoid *low expreſſions; ſupply words that are wanting;* be careful not to *uſe the ſame word in different ſenſes;* avoid *the injudicious uſe of technical phraſes,*

equivocal or ambiguous words, unintelligible expreſſions, and all ſuch words and phraſes as are not adapted to our meaning.

1. Avoid *low expreſſions:* ſuch as, "Topſy turvy, hurly burly, pellmell; having a month's mind for a thing; currying favour with a perſon; dancing attendance on the great," &c.

"Meantime the Britons, left to ſhift for themſelves, were forced to call in the Saxons for their defence." The phraſe "*left to ſhift for themſelves,*" is rather a low phraſe, and too much in the familiar ſtyle to be proper in a grave treatiſe.

2. *Supply words that are wanting.* "Arbitrary power I look upon as a greater evil than anarchy itſelf, as much as a ſavage is a happier ſtate of life than a ſlave at the oar:" it ſhould have been, "as much as *the ſtate* of a ſavage is happier than *that* of a ſlave at the oar." "He has not treated this ſubject liberally, by the views of others as well as his own;" "By *adverting* to the views of others," would have been better. "This generous action greatly increaſed his former ſervices;" it ſhould have been, "greatly increaſed *the merit* of his former ſervices." "By the pleaſures of the imagination or fancy (which I ſhall uſe promiſcuouſly) I here mean," &c. This paſſage ought to have had the word "terms" ſupplied, which, would have made it correct: "*terms* which I ſhall uſe promiſcuouſly."

It may be proper in this place to obſerve, that articles and prepoſitions are ſometimes improperly omitted; as in the following inſtances; "How immenſe the difference between the pious and profane!" "Death is the common lot of all; of good men and bad." They ſhould have had the article and prepoſition repeated: "How immenſe the difference between *the* pious and *the* profane!" "Death is the common lot of all; *of* good men and *of* bad."

The repetition of articles and prepoſitions is proper, when we intend to point out the objects of which we ſpeak, as diſtinguiſhed from each other, or in contraſt; and when we wiſh that the reader's attention ſhould reſt on that diſtinction: as, "Our ſight is at once *the* moſt delightful, and *the* moſt uſeful of all our ſenſes."

3. *In the ſame ſentence, be careful not to uſe the ſame word too frequently, nor in different ſenſes.* "One may have an air *which* proceeds from a juſt ſufficiency and knowledge of the matter before him, *which* may naturally produce ſome motions of his head and body, *which* might become the bench better than the bar."

The pronoun *which* is here thrice uſed, in ſuch a manner as to throw obſcurity over the ſentence.

"Gregory favoured the undertaking, for no other reaſon than this, that the manager, in countenance, favoured his friend." It ſhould have been, "reſembled his friend."

"Charity expands our hearts in love to God and man: it is by the virtue of charity that the rich are bleſſed, and the poor ſupplied." In this ſentence, the word "charity" is improperly uſed in two different ſenſes; for the higheſt benevolence, and for almſgiving.

4. *Avoid the injudicious uſe of technical terms.* To inform thoſe who do not underſtand ſea-phraſes, that "We tacked to the larboard, and ſtood off to ſea," would be expreſſing ourſelves very obſcurely. Technical phraſes not being in current uſe, but only the peculiar dialect of a particular claſs, we ſhould never uſe them but when we know they will be underſtood.

5. *Avoid equivocal or ambiguous words.* The following ſentences are exceptionable in this reſpect. "As for ſuch animals as are *mortal* or noxious, we have a right to deſtroy them." "I long ſince learned to like nothing but what you *do*." "He aimed at *nothing leſs* than the crown," may denote either, "Nothing was leſs aimed at by him than the crown," or "Nothing inferior to the crown could ſatisfy his ambition." "*I will have mercy*, and not ſacrifice." The firſt part of this ſentence denotes, "I will exerciſe mercy;" whereas it is in this place employed to ſignify, "I require others to exerciſe it." The tranſlation ſhould therefore have been accommodated to theſe different meanings. "They were both much more ancient among the Perſians, than Zoroaſter *or* Zerduſht," The

er in this ſentence is equivocal. It ſerves either as a copulative to ſynonymous words, or as a disjunctive of different things. If, therefore, the ſtudent ſhould not know that Zoroaſter and Zerduſht mean the ſame perſon, he will miſtake the ſenſe. "The riſing tomb a lofty column bore:" "And thus the ſon the fervent ſire addreſt." Did the tomb bear the column, or the column the tomb? Did the ſon addreſs the ſire, or the ſire the ſon?

6. *Avoid unintelligible and inconſiſtent words or phraſes.* "I have obſerved," ſays Steele, "that the ſuperiority among theſe coffeehouſe politicians, proceeds from an opinion of gallantry and faſhion." This ſentence, conſidered in itſelf, evidently conveys no meaning. Firſt, it is not ſaid whoſe opinion, their own, or that of others: Secondly, it is not ſaid what opinion, or of what ſort, favourable or unfavourable, true or falſe, but in general, "an opinion of gallantry and faſhion," which contains no definite expreſſion of any meaning. With the joint aſſiſtance of the context, reflection, and conjecture, we ſhall perhaps conclude that the author intended to ſay; "That the rank among theſe politicians was determined by the opinion generally entertained of the rank, in point of gallantry and faſhion, that each of them had attained."

"This temper of mind," ſays an author, ſpeaking of humility, "keeps our underſtanding tight about us." Whether the author had any meaning in this expreſſion, or what it was, is not eaſy to determine.

Sometimes a writer runs on in a ſpecious verboſity, amuſing his reader with ſynonymous terms and identical propoſitions, well-turned periods, and high ſounding words; but at the ſame time, uſing thoſe words ſo indefinitely, that the reader can either affix no meaning at all to them, or may affix to them almoſt any meaning he pleaſes.

"If it is aſked," ſays a late writer, "whence ariſes the harmony, or beauty of language? what are the rules for obtaining it? the anſwer is obvious. Whatever renders a period ſweet and pleaſant, makes it alſo graceful. A good

ear is the gift of nature; it may be much improved, but not acquired by art. Whoever is poſſeſſed of it, will ſcarcely need dry critical precepts to enable him to judge of a true rhythmus, and melody of compoſition. Juſt numbers, accurate proportions, a muſical ſymphony, magnificent figures, and that decorum which is the reſult of all theſe, are uniſon to the human mind."

The following is a poetical example of the ſame nature, in which there is ſcarcely a glimpſe of meaning, though it was compoſed by an eminent poet.

From harmony, from heavenly harmony,
This univerſal frame began:
From harmony to harmony
Thro' all the compaſs of the notes it ran,
The diapaſon cloſing full in man.

In general, it may be ſaid, that in writings of this ſtamp, we muſt accept of ſound inſtead of ſenſe; being aſſured, that if we meet with little that can inform the judgment, we ſhall at leaſt find nothing that will offend the ear. And perhaps this is one reaſon that we paſs over ſuch ſmooth language, without ſuſpecting that it contains little or no meaning. In order to write or ſpeak clearly and intelligibly, two things are eſpecially requiſite: one, that we have clear and diſtinct ideas of our ſubject; and the other, that our words be approved ſigns of thoſe ideas. That perſons who think confuſedly, ſhould expreſs themſelves obſcurely, is not to be wondered at; for embarraſſed, obſcure, and feeble ſentences, are generally, if not always, the reſult of embarraſſed, obſcure, and feeble thought; but that perſons of judgment, who are accuſtomed to ſcrutinize their ideas, and the ſignification of their words, ſhould ſometimes write without any meaning, is, at firſt ſight, matter of admiration. This, however, when further conſidered, appears to be an effect derived from the ſame cauſe, indiſtinctneſs of conception, and inattention to the exact import of words. The occaſions on which we are moſt

apt to ſpeak and write in this unintelligible manner, are the three following.

The *firſt* is, where there is an exuberance of metaphor. Writers who are fond of the metaphoric ſtyle, are generally diſpoſed to continue it too long, and to purſue it too far. They are often miſled by a deſire of flouriſhing on the ſeveral properties of a metaphor which they have uſhered into the diſcourſe, without taking the trouble to examine whether there are any qualities in the ſubject, to which theſe properties can, with juſtice and perſpicuity, be applied. The following inſtance of this ſort of writing is from an author of conſiderable eminence. "Men muſt acquire a very peculiar and ſtrong habit of turning their view inward, in order to explore the interior regions and receſſes of the mind, the hollow caverns of deep thought, the private ſeats of fancy, and the waſtes and wilderneſſes, as well as the more fruitful and cultivated tracts of this obſcure climate." A moſt wonderful way of telling us, that it is difficult to trace the operations of the mind. The author having determined to repreſent the human mind under the metaphor of a country, revolved in his thoughts the various objects which might be found in a country, without conſidering whether there are any things in the mind properly analogous to theſe. Hence the ſtrange parade he makes with *regions* and *receſſes*, *hollow caverns* and *private ſeats*, *waſtes* and *wilderneſſes*, *fruitful* and *cultivated tracts*; words which, though they have a preciſe meaning, as applied to country, have no definite ſignification, as applied to mind.

The *ſecond* occaſion of our being apt to write unintelligibly, is that wherein the terms moſt frequently occurring, denote things which are of a complicated nature, and to which the mind is not ſufficiently familiariſed. Of theſe the inſtances are numberleſs in every tongue; ſuch as Government, church, ſtate, conſtitution, power, legiſlature, juriſdiction, &c.

The *third* and principal occaſion of unintelligible writing, is, when the terms employed are very abſtract, and conſequently of very extenſive ſignification. Thus the

word *lion* is more distinctly apprehended by the mind than the word *beast*, *beast* than *animal*, and *animal* than *being*.

The 7th and last rule for preserving propriety in our words and phrases, is, *to avoid all those which are not adapted to the ideas we mean to communicate; or which are less significant than others, of those ideas.* "He feels any sorrow that can *arrive* at man;" better "*happen to* man." "The *conscience* of approving one's self a benefactor, is the best recompense for being so;" it should have been "*consciousness.*" He firmly believed the divine *precept*, "There is not a sparrow falls to the ground," &c. It should have been "*doctrine.*"

"It is but opening the eye, and the scene enters." A *scene* cannot be said *to enter:* an *actor* enters; but a scene *appears* or *presents itself.*

"We immediately assent to the beauty of an object, without inquiring into the causes of it:" it is proper to say, that we *assent* to the truth of a proposition; but it cannot so well be said, that we *assent to the beauty of an object. Acknowledge* would have expressed the sense with propriety.

"The sense of feeling, can, indeed, give us a notion of extension, shape, *and all other ideas* that enter at the eye, except colours." *Extension* and *shape* can, with no propriety, be called *ideas;* they are properties of matter. Neither is it accurate, to speak of any sense *giving us a notion of ideas:* our senses gives us the ideas themselves. The meaning of the sentence would have been proper, and much clearer, if the author had expressed himself thus: "The sense of feeling, can, indeed, give us the idea of extension, figure, and all the other properties of matter, which are perceived by the eye, except colours."

"The covetous man never has a sufficiency; although he has what is enough for nature," is much inferior to, "The covetous man never has *enough;* although he has what is *sufficient* for nature."

"A traveller observes the most striking objects he sees; a general remarks all the motions of his enemy; better thus; "A traveller *remarks*," &c.; "A general *observes*," &c.

" This meaſure enlarged his ſchool, and obliged him to increaſe the buildings ;" it ſhould be, " *increaſed* his ſchool ;" and " *enlarge* the buildings."

" He applied a medicine before the poiſon had time to work ;" better thus : " He applied an *antidote*," &c.

" The poiſon of a ſuſpicious temper frequently throws out its bad qualities, on all who are within its reach ;" better, " throws out its *malignant* qualities."

" I will go except I ſhould be ill ;" " I ſaw them all unleſs two or three :" corrected thus: "*unleſs* I ſhould be ill ;" " *except* two or three."

A ſelection of words and phraſes, which are peculiarly expreſſive of the ideas we deſign to communicate; or which are as particular and determinate in their ſignification, as is conſiſtent with the nature and the ſcope of the diſcourſe; poſſeſſes great beauty, and cannot fail to produce a good effect.

CHAPTER III.

Of PRECISION.

PRECISION is the third requiſite of perſpicuity with reſpect to words and phraſes. It ſignifies retrenching ſuperfluities, and pruning the expreſſion, ſo as to exhibit neither more nor leſs than an exact copy of the perſon's idea who uſes it.

The words uſed to expreſs ideas may be faulty in three reſpects. 1ſt, They may not expreſs the idea which the author intends, but ſome other which only reſembles it ; ſecondly, They may expreſs that idea, but not fully and completely ; thirdly, They may expreſs it, together with ſomething more than is intended. Preciſion ſtands oppoſed to theſe three faults, but chiefly to the laſt. Propriety implies a freedom from the two former faults. The words which are uſed may be *proper ;* that is, they may expreſs the idea intended, and they may expreſs it fully ; but to be *preciſe*, ſignifies that they expreſs *that idea and no more.*

The uſe and importance of preciſion may be deduced

from the nature of the human mind. It never can view, clearly and distinctly, more than one object at a time. If it must look at two or three together, especially objects that have resemblance or connexion, it finds itself confused and embarrassed. It cannot clearly perceive in what they agree, and in what they differ. Thus, were any object, suppose some animal, to be presented to my view, of whose structure I wished to form a distinct notion, I should desire all its trappings to be taken off, I should require it to be brought before me by itself, and to stand alone, that there might be nothing to divide my attention. The same is the case with words. If, when any one would inform me of his meaning, he also tells me more than what conveys it; if he joins foreign circumstances to the principal objects; if, by unnecessarily varying the expression, he shifts the point of view, and makes me see sometimes the object itself, and sometimes another thing that is connected with it, he thereby obliges me to look on several objects at once, and I lose sight of the principal. He loads the animal he is showing me, with so many trappings and collars, that I cannot distinctly view it; or he brings so many of the same species before me, somewhat resembling, and yet somewhat differing, that I see none of them clearly. When an author tells me of his hero's courage in the day of battle, the expression is precise, and I understand it fully; but if, from the desire of multiplying words, he should praise his courage and fortitude; at the moment he joins these words together, my idea begins to waver. He means to express one quality more strongly, but he is in truth expressing two: courage resists danger; fortitude supports pain. The occasion of exerting each of these qualities is different; and being led to think of both together, when only one of them should be considered, my view is rendered unsteady, and my conception of the object indistinct.

All subjects do not equally require precision. It is sufficient, on many occasions, that we have a general view of the meaning. The subject, perhaps, is of the known and

familiar kind, and we are in no hazard of miſtaking the ſenſe of the author, though every word which he uſes is not preciſe and exact.

Many authors offend againſt this rule of *preciſion*. A conſiderable one, in deſcribing a bad action, expreſſes himſelf thus: "It is to remove a good and orderly affection, and to introduce an ill, or diſorderly one; to commit an action that is ill, immoral, and unjuſt; *to do ill, or to act* in prejudice of integrity, good nature, and worth."

A crowd of unmeaning or uſeleſs words is brought together by ſome authors, who, afraid of expreſſing themſelves in a common and ordinary manner, and allured by an appearance of ſplendour, ſurround every thing which they mean to ſay with a certain copious loquacity.

The great ſource of a looſe ſtyle in oppoſition to preciſion, is the injudicious uſe of the words termed *ſynonymous*. They are called ſynonymous, becauſe they agree in expreſſing one principal idea; but, for the moſt part, if not always, they expreſs it with ſome diverſity in the circumſtances.

The following inſtances ſhow a difference in the meaning of words reputed ſynonymous, and point out the uſe of attending, with care and ſtrictneſs, to the exact import of words.

Cuſtom, habit.—Cuſtom, reſpects the action; habit, the actor. By cuſtom, we mean the frequent repetition of the ſame act: by habit, the effect which that repetition produces on the mind or body. By the cuſtom of walking often in the ſtreets, one acquires a habit of idleneſs.

Pride, vanity.—Pride makes us eſteem ourſelves; vanity, makes us deſire the eſteem of others. It is juſt to ſay, that a man is too proud to be vain.

Haughtineſs, diſdain.—Haughtineſs is founded on the high opinion we entertain of ourſelves; diſdain, on the low opinion we have of others.

Only, alone.—Only, imports that there is no other of the ſame kind; alone, imports being accompanied by no other. An only child, is one that has neither brother nor ſiſter; a child alone, is one who is left by itſelf. There is a differ-

ence, therefore, in precise language, between these two phrases: "Virtue only makes us happy;" and "Virtue alone makes us happy."

Wisdom, prudence.—Wisdom leads us to speak and act what is most proper. Prudence, prevents our speaking or acting improperly.

Entire, complete.—A thing is entire, by wanting none of its parts: complete, by wanting none of the appendages that belong to it. A man may have an entire house to himself, and yet not have one complete apartment.

Surprised, astonished, amazed, confounded.—I am surprised with what is new or unexpected: I am astonished at what is vast or great: I am amazed at what is incomprehensible; I am confounded by what is shocking or terrible.

Tranquillity, peace, calm.—Tranquillity, respects a situation free from trouble, considered in itself; peace, the same situation with respect to any causes that might interrupt it; calm, with regard to a disturbed situation going before or following it. A good man enjoys tranquillity, in himself; peace, with others; and calm, after the storm.

These are some of the numerous instances of words, in our language, whose significations approach, but are not precisely the same. The more the distinction in the meaning of such words is attended to, the more clearly and forcibly shall we speak or write. It may not, on all occasions, be necessary to pay a great deal of attention to very nice distinctions; yet the foregoing instances show the utility of some general care to understand the distinct import of our words.

While we are attending to precision, we must be on our guard, lest, from the desire of pruning too closely, we retrench all copiousness. Scarcely in any language are there two words that convey precisely the same idea; a person thoroughly conversant in the propriety of the language, will always be able to observe something that distinguishes them. As they are like different shades of the same colour, an accurate writer can employ them to great advan-

tage, by using them so as to heighten and complete the object which he presents to us. He supplies by one what was wanting in the other, to the strength, or to the finishing, of the image which he means to exhibit. But, for this purpose, he must be attentive to the choice of his words, and not employ them carelessly, merely for the sake of filling up a period, or of rounding or diversifying his language, as if their signification were exactly the same, while in truth it is not. To unite copiousness and precision, to be full and easy, and at the same time correct and exact in the choice of every word, is no doubt one of the highest and most difficult attainments in writing.

PART II.

Of PERSPICUITY and ACCURACY of EXPRESSION, with respect to the CONSTRUCTION of SENTENCES.

SENTENCES, in general, should neither be very long, nor very short: long ones require close attention to make us clearly perceive the connexion of the several parts; and short ones are apt to break the sense, and weaken the connexion of thought. Yet occasionally they may both be used with force and propriety; as may be seen in the following sentences.

"If you look about you, and consider the lives of others as well as your own; if you think how few are born with honour, and how many die without name or children; how little beauty we see, and how few friends we hear of; how much poverty, and how many diseases there are in the world; you will fall down upon your knees, and instead of repining at one affliction, will admire so many blessings which you have received from the Divine hand." This is a sentence composed of several members linked together, and hanging upon one another, so that the sense of the whole is not brought out till the close. The following is an example of one in which the sense is formed into short, independent propositions, each complete within itself. "I confess, it was want of consideration that made me an au-

thor. I wrote becauſe it amuſed me. I corrected, becauſe it was as pleaſant to me to correct as to write. I publiſhed, becauſe I was told I might pleaſe ſuch as it was a credit to pleaſe."

A train of ſentences, conſtructed in the ſame manner, and with the ſame number of members, ſhould never be allowed to ſucceed one another. A long ſucceſſion of either long or ſhort ſentences ſhould alſo be avoided; for the ear tires of either of them when too long continued. Whereas, by a proper mixture of long and ſhort periods, and of periods variouſly conſtructed, not only the ear is gratified; but animation and force are given to our ſtyle.

We now proceed to conſider the things moſt eſſential to an accurate and a perfect ſentence. They appear to be the four following: 1. CLEARNESS. 2. UNITY. 3. STRENGTH. 4. A JUDICIOUS USE OF THE FIGURES OF SPEECH.

CHAPTER I.

Of the CLEARNESS *of a* SENTENCE.

PURITY, propriety, and preciſion, in words and phraſes ſeparately conſidered, have already been explained, and ſhown to be neceſſary to perſpicuous and accurate writing. The juſt relation of ſentences, and the parts of ſentences, to one another, and the due arrangement of the whole, are the ſubjects which remain to be diſcuſſed.

THE FIRST requiſite of a perfect ſentence is *Clearneſs*.

Whatever leaves the mind in any ſort of ſuſpenſe as to the meaning, ought to be avoided. Obſcurity ariſes from two cauſes; either from a wrong choice of words, or a wrong arrangement of them. The choice of words and phraſes, as far as regards perſpicuity, has been already conſidered. The diſpoſition of them comes now under conſideration.

The firſt thing to be ſtudied here, is grammatical propriety. But as the grammar of our language is comparatively not extenſive, there may be an obſcure order of words where there is no tranſgreſſion of any grammatical rule.

The relations of words, or members of a period, are, with us, aſcertained only by the poſition in which they ſtand.

Hence a capital rule in the arrangement of ſentences is, that the words or members, moſt clearly related, ſhould be placed in the ſentence as near to each other as poſſible, ſo as to make their mutual relation clearly appear. It will be proper to produce ſome inſtances, in order to ſhow the importance of this rule.

1. *In the poſition of adverbs.* "The Romans underſtood liberty, *at leaſt*, as well as we." Theſe words are capable of two different ſenſes, according as the emphaſis, in reading them, is laid upon *liberty*, or upon *at leaſt*. The words ſhould have been thus arranged: "The Romans underſtood liberty as well, at leaſt, as we."

"Theiſm can only be oppoſed to polytheiſm, or atheiſm." Is it meant that theiſm is capable of nothing elſe beſides being oppoſed to polytheiſm, or atheiſm? This is what the words literally import, through the wrong placing of the adverb *only*. It ſhould have been, "Theiſm can be oppoſed only to polytheiſm or atheiſm."

"By the pleaſures of the imagination, I mean only ſuch pleaſures as ariſe originally from ſight." When it is ſaid, "*I mean only ſuch pleaſures*," it may be remarked, that the adverb *only* is not properly placed. It is not intended here to qualify the word *mean*, but *ſuch pleaſures*; and therefore ſhould have been placed in as cloſe connexion as poſſible with the word which it limits or qualifies. The ſtyle becomes more clear and neat, when the words are arranged thus: "By the pleaſures of the imagination, I mean ſuch pleaſures only as ariſe from ſight."

In the following ſentence, the word *more* is not in its proper place. "There is not perhaps, any real beauty or deformity *more* in one piece of matter than another." The phraſe ought to have ſtood thus: "Beauty or deformity in one piece of matter more than in another."

2. *In the poſition of circumſtances, and of particular members.*

An author, in his diſſertation on parties, thus expreſſes himſelf: "Are theſe deſigns which any man, who is born a Briton, in any circumſtances, in any ſituation, ought to be aſhamed or afraid to avow?" Here we are left at a loſs, whether theſe words, "in any circumſtances, in any ſituation," are connected with "a man born in Britain, in any circumſtances or ſituation," or with that man's "avowing his deſigns in any circumſtances or ſituation into which he may be brought." As it is probable that the latter was intended, the arrangement ought to have been conducted thus: "Are theſe deſigns which any man, who is born a Briton, ought to be aſhamed or afraid, in any ſituation, in any circumſtances, to avow?"

The following is another inſtance of a wrong arrangement of circumſtances. "A great ſtone that I happened to find, after a long ſearch, by the ſea ſhore, ſerved me for an anchor." One would think that the ſearch was confined to the ſea ſhore; but as the meaning is that the great ſtone was found by the ſea ſhore, the period ought to have run thus: "A great ſtone, that, after a long ſearch, I happened to find by the ſea ſhore, ſerved me for an anchor."

It is a rule, too, never to crowd many circumſtances together, but rather to interſperſe them in different parts of the ſentence, joined with the principal words on which they depend. For inſtance: "What I had the opportunity of mentioning to my friend, ſometime ago, in converſation, was not a new thought." Theſe two circumſtances, *ſometime ago*," and "*in converſation*," which are here put together, would have had a better effect disjoined, thus: "What I had the opportunity, ſometime ago, of mentioning to my friend, in converſation, was not a new thought."

Here follows an example of the wrong arrangement of a member of a ſentence. "The miniſter of ſtate who grows leſs by his elevation, like a little ſtatue placed on a mighty pedeſtal, will always have his jealouſy ſtrong about him." Here, ſo far as can be gathered from the arrangement, it is doubtful whether the object introduced, by way of ſimile,

relates to what goes before, or to what follows. The ambiguity is removed by the following order. "The miniſter of ſtate who, like a little ſtatue placed on a mighty pedeſtal, grows leſs by his elevation, will always," &c.

Words expreſſing things connected in the thought, ought to be placed as near together as poſſible, even when their ſeparation would convey no ambiguity. This will be ſeen in the following paſſages from Addiſon. "For the Engliſh are naturally fanciful, and very *often diſpoſed*, by that gloomineſs and melancholy of temper, which are ſo frequent in our nation, to many wild notions and extravagancies, to which others are not ſo liable." Here the verb or aſſertion is, by a pretty long circumſtance, ſeparated from the ſubject to which it refers. This might have been eaſily prevented, by placing the circumſtance before the verb, thus: "For the Engliſh are naturally fanciful, and by that gloomineſs and melancholy of temper which are ſo frequent in our nation, are often diſpoſed to many wild notions," &c.

"For as no mortal author, in the ordinary fate and viciſſitude of things, knows to what uſe his works may, ſome time or other be applied," &c. Better thus: "For as, in the ordinary fate and viciſſitude of things, no mortal author knows to what uſe, ſome time or other, his works may be applied," &c.

From theſe examples, the following obſervations will occur: that a circumſtance ought never to be placed between two capital members of a period; but either between the parts of the member to which it belongs, or in ſuch a manner as will confine it to its proper member. When the ſenſe admits it, the ſooner a circumſtance is introduced, generally ſpeaking, the better, that the more important and ſignificant words may poſſeſs the laſt place, quite diſencumbered. The following ſentence is, in this reſpect, faulty. "The emperor was ſo intent on the eſtabliſhment of his abſolute power in Hungary, that he expoſed the empire doubly to deſolation and ruin for the ſake of it." Better thus: "That, for the ſake of it, he expoſed the empire doubly to deſolation and ruin."

This appears to be a proper place to obſerve, that when different things have an obvious relation to each other, in reſpect to the order of nature or time, that order ſhould be regarded, in aſſigning them their places in the ſentence; unleſs the ſcope of the paſſages require it to be varied. The concluſion of the following lines is inaccurate in this reſpect: "But ſtill there will be ſuch a mixture of delight, as is proportioned to the degree in which any one of theſe qualifications is moſt conſpicuous and prevailing." The order in which the two laſt words are placed, ſhould have been reverſed, and made to ſtand, *prevailing and conſpicuous*.—They are *conſpicuous*, becauſe they *prevail*.

The following ſentence is a beautiful example of ſtrict conformity to this rule. "Our ſight fills the mind with the largeſt variety of ideas, converſes with its objects at the greateſt diſtance, and continues the longeſt in action, without being tired or ſatiated with its proper enjoyments." This paſſage follows the order of nature. Firſt, we have the variety of objects mentioned, which ſight furniſhes to the mind; next, we have the action of ſight on thoſe objects; and laſtly, we have the time and continuance of its action. No order could be more natural or exact.

The order which we now recommend, is, in ſingle words eſpecially, frequently violated, for the ſake of better ſound; but, perhaps in no inſtances, without a deviation from the line of ſtrict propriety.

3. *In the diſpoſition of the relative pronouns*, who, which, what, whoſe, *and of all thoſe particles which expreſs the connexion of the parts of ſpeech with one another.*

A ſmall error in the poſition of theſe words may cloud the meaning of the whole ſentence; and even where the meaning is intelligible, we always find ſomething awkward and disjointed in the ſtructure of the ſentence, when theſe relatives are out of their proper place. "This kind of wit," ſays an author, "was very much in vogue among our *countrymen*, about an age or two ago; *who* did not practiſe it for any oblique reaſon, but purely for the ſake of being

witty." We are at no loſs about the meaning here; but the conſtruction would evidently be mended by diſpoſing the circumſtance, "about an age or two ago," in ſuch a manner as not to ſeparate the relative *who* from its antecedent *our countrymen;* in this way: "About an age or two ago, this kind of wit was very much in vogue among our countrymen, who did not practiſe it," &c.

The following paſſage is ſtill more cenſurable. "It is folly to pretend to arm ourſelves againſt the accidents of life, by heaping up treaſures, *which* nothing can protect us againſt, but the good providence of our Creator." *Which* always refers grammatically to the ſubſtantive immediately preceding; and that, in the inſtance juſt mentioned, is "treaſures." The ſentence ought to have ſtood thus: "It is folly to pretend, by heaping up treaſures, to arm ourſelves againſt the accidents of life, which nothing can protect us againſt," &c.

With regard to relatives, it may be farther obſerved, that obſcurity often ariſes from the too frequent repetition of them, particularly of the pronouns *who* and *they*, and *them* and *theirs*, when we have occaſion to refer to different perſons; as in the following ſentence of Tillotſon. "Men look with an evil eye upon the good that is in others, and think that *their* reputation obſcures *them*, and *their* commendable qualities ſtand in *their* light; and therefore *they* do what *they* can to caſt a cloud over *them*, that the bright ſhining of *their* virtues may not obſcure *them*." This is altogether careleſs writing. When we find theſe perſonal pronouns crowding too faſt upon us, we have often no method left, but to throw the whole ſentence into ſome other form, which may avoid thoſe frequent references to perſons who have before been mentioned.

To have the relation of every word and member of a ſentence marked in the moſt proper and diſtinct manner, not only gives clearneſs to it, but makes the mind paſs ſmoothly and agreeably along all the parts of it.

CHAPTER II.

Of the UNITY *of a* SENTENCE.

THE SECOND requisite of a perfect sentence, is its *Unity*.

In every composition, there is always some connecting principle among the parts. Some one object must reign and be predominant. But most of all, in a single sentence, is required the strictest unity. For the very nature of a sentence implies that one proposition is expressed. It may consist of parts, indeed, but these parts must be so closely bound together, as to make the impression upon the mind of one object, not of many. To preserve this unity of a sentence, the following rules must be observed.

In the *first* place, *During the course of the sentence, the scene should be changed as little as possible.* We should not be hurried by sudden transitions from person to person, nor from subject to subject. There is commonly, in every sentence, some person or thing which is the governing word. This should be continued so, if possible, from the beginning to the end of it.

The following sentence varies from this rule: "After we came to anchor, they put me on shore, where I was welcomed by all my friends, who received me with the greatest kindness." In this sentence, though the objects contained in it have a sufficient connexion with each other, yet, by this manner of representing them, by shifting so often both the place and the person, *we* and *they*, and *I* and *who*, they appear in so disunited a view, that the sense of connexion is much impaired. The sentence is restored to its proper unity, by turning it after the following manner. "Having come to an anchor, I was put on shore, where I was welcomed by all my friends, and received with the greatest kindness."

Here follows another instance of departure from the rule. "The sultan being dangerously wounded, they carried him to his tent; and, upon hearing of the defeat of his troops, they put him into a litter, which transported him to a place of safety, at the distance of about fifteen

leagues." Better thus: "The ſultan being dangerouſly wounded, was carried to his tent; and, on hearing of the defeat of his troops, was put into a litter, and tranſported to a place of ſafety, about fifteen leagues diſtant."

A *ſecond* rule under the head of unity, is, *Never to crowd into one ſentence, things which have ſo little connexion, that they could bear to be divided into two or three ſentences.*

The violation of this rule tends ſo much to perplex and obſcure, that it is ſafer to err by too many ſhort ſentences, than by one that is overloaded and embarraſſed. Examples abound in authors. "Archbiſhop Tillotſon," ſays an author, "died in this year. He was exceedingly beloved by king William and queen Mary, who nominated Dr. Tenniſon, biſhop of Lincoln, to ſucceed him." Who would expect the latter part of this ſentence to follow in conſequence of the former? "He was exceedingly beloved by both king and queen," is the propoſition of the ſentence. We look for ſome proof of this, or at leaſt ſomething related to it to follow; when we are on a ſudden carried off to a new propoſition.

The following ſentence is ſtill worſe. The author, ſpeaking of the Greeks under Alexander, ſays: "Their march was through an uncultivated country, whoſe ſavage inhabitants fared hardly, having no other riches than a breed of lean ſheep, whoſe fleſh was rank and unſavoury, by reaſon of their continual feeding upon ſea-fiſh." Here the ſcene is changed upon us again and again. The march of the Greeks, the deſcription of the inhabitants through whoſe country they travelled, the account of their ſheep, and the cauſe of their ſheep being ill-taſted food, form a jumble of objects, ſlightly related to each other, which the reader cannot, without much difficulty, comprehend under one view.

Theſe examples have been taken from ſentences of no great length, yet very crowded. Writers who deal in long ſentences, are very apt to be faulty in this article. Take, for an inſtance, the following from Temple. "The uſual acceptation takes profit and pleaſure for two different

things, and not only calls the followers or votaries of them by the ſeveral names of buſy and idle men; but diſtinguiſhes the faculties of the mind, that are converſant about them, calling the operations of the firſt, *Wiſdom*; and of the other, *Wit*; which is a Saxon word, uſed to expreſs what the Spaniards and Italians call *Ingenio*, and the French *Eſprit*, both from the Latin, though I think wit more particularly ſignifies that of poetry, as may occur in remarks on the Runic language." When the reader arrives at the end of this perplexed ſentence, he is ſurpriſed to find himſelf at ſo great diſtance from the object with which he ſet out.

Long, involved, and intricate ſentences, are great blemiſhes in compoſition. In writers of conſiderable correctneſs, we find a period ſometimes running out ſo far, and comprehending ſo many particulars, as to be more properly a diſcourſe than a ſentence. An author, ſpeaking of the progreſs of our language after the time of Cromwell, runs on in this manner: "To this ſucceeded that licentiouſneſs which entered with the reſtoration, and, from infecting our religion and morals, fell to corrupt our language; which laſt was not like to be much improved by thoſe who at that time made up the court of king Charles the Second; either ſuch as had followed him in his baniſhment, or who had been altogether converſant in the dialect of theſe times, or young men who had been educated in the ſame country: ſo that the court, which uſed to be the ſtandard of correctneſs and propriety of ſpeech, was then, and I think has ever ſince continued, the worſt ſchool in England for that accompliſhment; and ſo will remain, till better care be taken in the education of our nobility, that they may ſet out into the world with ſome foundation of literature, in order to qualify them for patterns of politeneſs."

The author, in place of a ſentence, has here given a looſe diſſertation upon ſeveral ſubjects. How many different facts, reaſonings, and obſervations, are here preſented to the mind at once! and yet ſo linked together by the author, that they all make parts of a ſentence, which admits

of no greater diviſion in pointing, than a colon between any of its members.

It may be of uſe here to give a ſpecimen of a long ſentence, broken down into ſeveral periods; by which we ſhall more clearly perceive the diſadvantages of long ſentences, and how eaſily they may be amended. Here follows the ſentence in its original form: "Though in yeſterday's paper we ſhowed how every thing that is great, new, or beautiful, is apt to affect the imagination with pleaſure, we muſt own, that it is impoſſible for us to aſſign the neceſſary cauſe of this pleaſure, becauſe we know neither the nature of an idea, nor the ſubſtance of a human ſoul: and therefore, for want of ſuch a light, all that we can do, in ſpeculations of this kind, is, to reflect on thoſe operations of the ſoul that are moſt agreeable; and to range, under their proper heads, what is pleaſing or diſpleaſing to the mind, without being able to trace out the ſeveral neceſſary and efficient cauſes, from whence the pleaſure or diſpleaſure ariſes."

The following amendment, beſides breaking down the period into ſeveral ſentences, exhibits ſome other uſeful alterations: "In yeſterday's paper, we ſhowed that every thing which is great, new, or beautiful, is apt to affect the imagination with pleaſure. We muſt own, that it is impoſſible for us to aſſign the efficient cauſe of this pleaſure, becauſe we know not the nature either of an idea, or of the human ſoul. All that we can do, therefore, in ſpeculations of this kind, is to reflect on the operations of the ſoul which are moſt agreeable, and to range under proper heads what is pleaſing or diſpleaſing to the mind."

A *third* rule for preſerving the unity of ſentences, is, *to keep clear of all unneceſſary parentheſes.*

On ſome occaſions, when the ſenſe is not too long ſuſpended by them, and when they are introduced in a proper place, they may add both to the vivacity and to the energy of the ſentence. But for the moſt part their effect is extremely bad. They are wheels within wheels; ſentences in the midſt of ſentences; the perplexed method of

diſpoſing of ſome thought, which a writer wants judgment to introduce in its proper place.

The parentheſis in this ſentence is ſtriking and proper;

"And was the ranſome paid? It was; and paid
"(What can exalt the bounty more?) for thee."

But in the following ſentence, we become ſenſible of an impropriety in the uſe of it. "If your hearts ſecretly reproach you for the wrong choice you have made, (as there is time for repentance and retreat; and a return to wiſdom is always honourable,) bethink yourſelves that the evil is not irreparable." It would be much better to expreſs in a ſeparate ſentence, the thoughts contained in this parentheſis; thus: "If your hearts ſecretly reproach you for the wrong choice you have made, bethink yourſelves that the evil is not irreparable. Still there is time for repentance and retreat; and a return to wiſdom is always honourable."

CHAPTER III.

Of the STRENGTH *of a* SENTENCE.

THE THIRD requiſite of a perfect ſentence, is, *Strength.*

By this is meant ſuch a diſpoſition and management of the ſeveral words and members, as ſhall bring out the ſenſe to the beſt advantage, and give every word, and every member, its due weight and force.

A ſentence may be clear, it may alſo be compact in all its parts, or have the requiſite unity, and yet, by ſome circumſtance in the ſtructure, it may fail in that ſtrength of impreſſion, which a better management would have produced.

The *firſt* rule for promoting the ſtrength of a ſentence, is, *to prune it of all redundant words and members.*

It is a general maxim, that any words which do not add ſome importance to the meaning of a ſentence, always injure it. Care ſhould therefore be exerciſed with reſpect to ſynonymous words, expletives, circumlocutions, tautologies, and the expreſſion of unneceſſary circumſtances. The attention becomes remiſs, when words are multiplied with-

out a correſpondent multiplication of ideas. "Content with deſerving a triumph, he refuſed the honour of it;" is better language than to ſay, "Being content with deſerving it," &c.

"In the Attic commonwealth," ſays an author, "it was the privilege and birthright of every citizen and poet, to rail aloud and in public." Better ſimply thus: "In the Attic commonwealth, it was the privilege of every citizen to rail in public."

Another expreſſes himſelf thus: "They returned back again to the ſame city from whence they came forth;" inſtead of, "They returned to the city whence they came." The five words, *back*, *again*, *ſame*, *from*, and *forth*, are mere expletives, that have neither uſe nor beauty, and are therefore to be regarded as encumbrances.

The word *but* is often improperly uſed with *that*: as, "There can be no doubt *but that* he ſeriouſly means what he ſays." It is not only uſeleſs, but cumberſome: "There can be no doubt *that* he ſeriouſly means what he ſays." By tranſpoſing the parts of the ſentence, we ſhall immediately perceive the propriety of omitting this word: "That he ſeriouſly means what he ſays, there can be no doubt."

"I am honeſtly, ſeriouſly, and unalterably of opinion, that nothing can poſſibly be more incurably and emphatically deſtructive, or more deciſively fatal, to a kingdom, than the introduction of thoughtleſs diſſipation, and the pomp of lazy luxury." Would not the full import of this noiſy ſentence be better expreſſed thus: "I am of opinion, that nothing is more ruinous to a kingdom, than luxury and diſſipation."

Some writers uſe much circumlocution in expreſſing their ideas. A conſiderable one, for ſo very ſimple a thing as a man's wounding himſelf, ſays, "To mangle, or wound, his outward form and conſtitution, his natural limbs or body."

But, on ſome occaſions, circumlocution has a peculiar force; as in the following ſentence: "Shall not *the Judge of all the earth* do right?"

In the ſentences which follow, the ill effects of tautology appear.

"So it is, that I muſt be *forced* to get home, partly by ſtealth, and partly by *force*."

"Never did Atticus ſucceed better in gaining the *univerſal* love and eſteem of *all* men."

The ſubſequent ſentence contains ſeveral unneceſſary circumſtances. "On receiving this information, he aroſe, went out, ſaddled his horſe, mounted him, and rode to town." All is implied in ſaying, "On receiving this information, he rode to town."

This manner, however, in a certain degree, is ſo ſtrongly characteriſtic of the ſimple ſtyle of remote ages, that, in books of the higheſt antiquity, particularly the Bible, it is not at all ungraceful. Of this kind are the following ſcriptural phraſes. "He lifted up his voice, and wept." "He opened his mouth, and ſaid." It is true, that, in ſtrictneſs, they are not neceſſary to the narration, but they are of ſome importance to the compoſition, as bearing the venerable ſignature of ancient ſimplicity. It may, on this occaſion, be further obſerved, that the language of the preſent tranſlation of the Bible, ought not to be viewed in an exceptionable light, though ſome parts of it may appear to be obſolete. From univerſal admiſſion, this language has become ſo familiar and intelligible, that in all tranſcripts and alluſions, except where the ſenſe is evidently injured, it ought to be carefully preſerved. And it may alſo be juſtly remarked, that, on religious ſubjects, a frequent recurrence of ſcripture-language is attended with peculiar force and propriety.

Though it promotes the ſtrength of a ſentence, to contract a round about method of expreſſion, and to lop off excreſcences, yet we ſhould avoid the extreme of pruning too cloſely: ſome leaves ſhould be left to ſhelter and ſurround the fruit. Even ſynonymous expreſſions may, on ſome occaſions, be uſed with propriety. One is, when an obſcurer term, which we cannot well avoid employing,

needs to be explained by one that is clearer. The other is, when the language of the emotions is exhibited. Emotion naturally dwells on its object: and when the reader alſo feels intereſted, repetition and ſynonomy have frequently an agreeable effect.

The following paſſage, taken from Addiſon, who delighted in a full and flowing ſtyle, may, by ſome perſons, be deemed not very exceptionable. "But there is nothing that makes its way more directly to the *ſoul than beauty*, which immediately diffuſes a *ſecret ſatisfaction* and complacency through the imagination, and gives a finiſhing to any thing that is great or uncommon. The very firſt diſcovery of it ſtrikes the mind with inward joy, and ſpreads a cheerfulneſs and delight through all its faculties." Some degree of verboſity may be diſcovered in theſe ſentences, as phraſes are repeated which ſeem little more than the echo of one another; ſuch as—*diffuſing ſatisfaction and complacency through the imagination—ſtriking the mind with inward joy—ſpreading cheerfulneſs and delight through all its faculties*. But, perhaps, ſome redundancy is more allowable on ſuch lively ſubjects, than it would be on other occaſions.

After removing ſuperfluities, the *ſecond* rule for promoting the ſtrength of a ſentence, is, *to attend particularly to the uſe of copulatives, relatives, and all the particles employed for tranſition and connexion.*

Theſe little words *but, and, or, which, whoſe, where, then, therefore, becauſe*, &c. are frequently the moſt important words of any; they are the joints or hinges upon which all ſentences turn; and, of courſe, much of their ſtrength muſt depend upon ſuch particles. The varieties in uſing them are, indeed, ſo many, that no particular ſyſtem of rules reſpecting them can be given. Some obſervations, tending to illuſtrate the rule, may, however, be mentioned.

What is called ſplitting particles, or ſeparating a preposition from the noun which it governs, is to be avoided. As if I ſhould ſay, "Though virtue borrows no aſſiſtance

from, yet it may often be accompanied by, the advantages of fortune." Here we are put to a ſtand in thought, being obliged to reſt a little on the prepoſition by itſelf, which, at the ſame time, carries no ſignificancy, till it is joined to its proper ſubſtantive.

Some writers needleſsly multiply demonſtrative and relative particles, by the frequent uſe of ſuch phraſeology as this: "There is nothing which diſguſts us ſooner than the empty pomp of language." In introducing a ſubject, or laying down a propoſition, to which we demand particular attention, this ſort of ſtyle is very proper; but, on common occaſions, it is better to expreſs ourſelves more ſimply and briefly: "Nothing diſguſts us ſooner than the empty pomp of language."

Other writers make a practice of omitting the relative, where they think the meaning can be underſtood without it; as, "The man I love;" "The dominions we poſſeſſed, and the conqueſts we made." But though this elliptical ſtyle is intelligible, and is allowable in converſation and epiſtolary writing, yet in all writings of a ſerious and dignified kind, it ought to be avoided. There, the relative ſhould always be inſerted in its proper place, and the conſtruction filled up. "The man whom I love." "The dominions which we poſſeſſed, and the conqueſts which we made."

With regard to the copulative particle *and*, which occurs ſo frequently in all kinds of compoſition, ſeveral obſervations are to be made. Firſt, it is evident, that the unneceſſary repetition of it enfeebles ſtyle. The following ſentence from Sir William Temple, will ſerve for an inſtance. He is ſpeaking of the refinement of the French language: "The academy, ſet up by Cardinal Richelieu, to amuſe the wits of that age *and* country, *and* divert them from raking into his politics *and* miniſtry, brought this into vogue; *and* the French wits have, for this laſt age, been wholly turned to the refinement of their ſtyle *and* language; *and*, indeed, with ſuch ſucceſs, that it can hardly

be equalled, *and* runs equally through their verſe *and* their proſe." Here are no fewer than eight *ands* in one ſentence. Some writers often make their ſentences drag in this manner, by a careleſs multiplication of copulatives.

But, in the next place, it is worthy of obſervation, that though the natural uſe of the conjunction *and*, is to join objects together, yet, in fact, by dropping the conjunction, we often mark a cloſer connexion, a quicker ſucceſſion of objects, than when it is inſerted between them. "*I came, I ſaw, I conquered,*" expreſſes with more force the rapidity and quick ſucceſſion of conqueſt, than if connecting particles had been uſed.

On the other hand, when we ſeek to prevent a quick tranſition from one object to another, when we are making ſome enumeration, in which we wiſh that the objects ſhould appear as diſtinct from each other as poſſible, and that the mind ſhould reſt, for a moment, on each object by itſelf, copulatives may be multiplied with peculiar advantage. As when an author ſays, "Such a man might fall a victim to power; but truth, and reaſon, and liberty, would fall with him." Obſerve, in the following enumeration made by the Apoſtle Paul, what additional weight and diſtinctneſs are given to each particular, by the repetition of a conjunction; "I am perſuaded that neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor powers, nor things preſent, nor things to come, nor height, nor depth, nor any other creature, ſhall be able to ſeparate us from the love of God."

The words deſigned to mark the tranſition from one ſentence to another, and the connexion between ſentences, are ſometimes very incorrect, and perform their office in an imperfect and obſcure manner. The following is an example of this kind of inaccuracy. "By greatneſs, I do not mean the bulk of any ſingle object only, but the largeneſs of a whole view. *Such* are the proſpects of an open champaign country, a vaſt uncultivated deſert," &c. The word *ſuch* ſignifies of that nature or quality, which neceſſarily preſuppoſes ſome adjective, or word deſcriptive of a quality

going before, to which it refers. But, in the foregoing ſentence, there is no ſuch adjective. The author had ſpoken of *greatneſs* in the abſtract only; and, therefore, *ſuch* has no diſtinct antecedent to which we can refer it. The ſentence would have been introduced with more propriety, by ſaying, *To this claſs belong*, or *under this head are ranged*, the proſpects, &c.

As connective particles are the hinges, tacks, and pins, by which the words in the ſame clauſe, the clauſes in the ſame member, the members in the ſame ſentence, and even the ſentences in the ſame diſcourſe, are united together, and their relations ſuggeſted, ſo they ſhould not be either too frequently repeated, awkwardly expoſed to view, or made up of polyſyllables, when ſhorter words would as well convey our meaning. *Notwithſtanding that*, *inſomuch that*, *foraſmuch as*, *furthermore*, &c. are tedious words, which tend to overload and perplex a ſentence.

We ſhall conclude this head with two remarks on the ſubject of inſerting or omitting the conjunctions. The firſt is, that the illative conjunctions, the cauſal, and the diſjunctive, when they ſuit the ſenſe, can more rarely be diſpenſed with than the copulative. The ſecond is, that the omiſſion of copulatives always ſucceeds beſt, when the connexion of the thoughts is either very cloſe, or very diſtant. It is moſtly in the intermediate caſes that the conjunction is deemed neceſſary. When the connexion in thought is very diſtant, the copulative appears abſurd; and when very cloſe, ſuperfluous.

The *third* rule for promoting the ſtrength of a ſentence, is, *to diſpoſe of the capital word, or words, ſo that they may make the greateſt impreſſion.*

That there are, in every ſentence, ſuch capital words on which the meaning principally reſts, every one muſt ſee; and that theſe words ſhould poſſeſs a conſpicuous and diſtinguiſhed place, is equally plain. For the moſt part, with us, the important words are placed in the beginning of the ſentence. So in the following paſſages: "Silver

and gold have I none; but such as I have, give *I unto thee*," &c. "Your fathers, where are they? and *the* prophets, do they live for ever?"

Sometimes, however, when we intend to give weight to a sentence, it is of advantage to suspend the meaning *for* a little, and then bring it out full at the close. "Thus," says an author, "on whatever side we contemplate this ancient writer, what principally strikes us, is his wonderful invention."

To accomplish this end, *the placing* of capital words *in* a conspicuous part of the sentence, the natural order of our language must sometimes be inverted. According to this natural order, the nominative has the first place, the verb the second, and the objective, if it be an active verb that is employed, has the third. Circumstances follow the nominative, the verb, or the objective, as they happen to belong to any of them. "Diana of the Ephesians is great," is the natural order of the sentence. But its strength is increased by inversion, thus: "Great is Diana of the Ephesians." "I profess, in the sincerity of my heart," &c. is the natural order of a circumstance. Inverted thus: "In the sincerity of my heart, I profess," &c.

Some authors greatly invert the natural order of sentences; others write mostly in a natural style. Each method has its advantages. The inverted possesses strength, dignity, and variety: the other, more nature, ease, and simplicity. We shall give an instance of each method, taken from writers of considerable eminence. The first is of the inverted order. The author is speaking of the misery of vice. "This, as to the complete immoral state, is, what of their own accord, men readily remark. Where there is this absolute degeneracy, this total apostacy from all candour, truth, or equity, there are few who do not see and acknowledge the misery which is consequent. Seldom is, the case misconstrued, when at worst. The misfortune is, that we look not on this depravity, nor consider how it stands in less degrees. As if, to be absolutely immoral, were, indeed, the greatest misery; but to be so in a little

degree, ſhould be no miſery or harm at all. Which, to allow, is juſt as reaſonable as to own, that it is the greateſt ill of a body to be in the utmoſt manner maimed or diſtorted; but that to loſe the uſe only of one limb, or to be impaired in ſome ſingle organ or member, is no ill worthy the leaſt notice." Here is no violence done to the language, though there are many inverſions.

The following is an example of natural conſtruction: "Our ſight is the moſt perfect, and the moſt delightful, of all our ſenſes. It fills the mind with the largeſt variety of ideas, converſes with its objects at the greateſt diſtance, and continues the longeſt in action, without being tired, or ſatiated with its proper enjoyments. The ſenſe of feeling can, indeed, give us a notion of extenſion, ſhape, and all other ideas that enter at the eye except colours; but, at the ſame time, it is very much ſtraitened and confined in its operations," &c.

But whether we uſe inverſion or not, and in whatever part of the ſentence we diſpoſe of the capital words, it is always a point of conſequence, that theſe capital words ſhould ſtand clear and diſentangled from any other words that would clog them. Thus, when there are any circumſtances of time, place, or other limitations, which the principal object of our ſentence requires to have connected with it, we muſt take care to diſpoſe of them, ſo as not to cloud that principal object, nor to bury it under a load of circumſtances. This will be made clearer by an example. "If, whilſt they profeſs only to pleaſe, they ſecretly adviſe, and give inſtruction, they may now perhaps, as well as formerly, be eſteemed, with juſtice, the beſt and moſt honourable among authors." This is a well conſtructed ſentence. It contains a great many circumſtances and adverbs neceſſary to qualify the meaning; *only*, *ſecretly*, *as well*, *perhaps*, *now*, *with juſtice*, *formerly*; yet theſe are placed ſo properly, as neither to embarraſs, nor weaken the ſentence; while that which is the capital object in it, viz. "being juſtly eſteemed the beſt and moſt honourable

among authors," comes out in the concluſion clear and detached, and poſſeſſes its proper place. See, now, what would have been the effect of a different arrangement: "If, whilſt they profeſs to pleaſe only, they adviſe and give inſtruction ſecretly, they may be eſteemed the beſt and moſt honourable among authors, with juſtice, perhaps, now as well as formerly." Here we have preciſely the ſame words, and the ſame ſenſe; but by means of the circumſtances being ſo intermingled as to clog the capital words, the whole becomes feeble and perplexed.

The *fourth* rule for promoting the ſtrength of ſentences, is, *that a weaker aſſertion or propoſition ſhould never come after a ſtronger one; and that, when our ſentence conſiſts of two members, the longer ſhould, generally, be the concluding one.*

Thus, to ſay, "When our paſſions have forſaken us, we flatter ourſelves with the belief that we have forſaken them," is both more eaſy and more clear, than to begin with the longer part of the propoſition: "We flatter ourſelves with the belief that we have forſaken our paſſions, when they have forſaken us."

In general, it is agreeable to find a ſentence riſing upon us, and growing in its importance, to the very laſt word, when this conſtruction can be managed without affectation. "If we riſe yet higher," ſays Addiſon, "and conſider the fixed ſtars as ſo many oceans of flame, that are each of them attended with a different ſet of planets; and ſtill diſcover new firmaments and new lights, that are ſunk further in thoſe unfathomable depths of ether; we are *loſt in* ſuch a labyrinth of ſuns and worlds, and confounded with the magnificence and immenſity of nature.

The *fifth* rule for the ſtrength of ſentences is, *to avoid concluding them with an adverb, a prepoſition, or any inconſiderable word.*

Agreeably to this rule, we ſhould not conclude with any of the particles, *of, to, from, with, by.* For inſtance, it is a

great deal better to ſay, "Avarice is a crime of which wiſe men are often guilty," than to ſay, "Avarice is a crime which wiſe men are often guilty of." This is a phraſeology which all correct writers ſhun; and with reaſon. For as the mind cannot help reſting a little, on the import of the word which cloſes the ſentence, it muſt be diſagreeable to be left pauſing on a word, which does not, by itſelf, produce any idea.

For the ſame reaſon, verbs which are uſed in a compound ſenſe, with ſome of theſe prepoſitions, are, though not ſo bad, yet ſtill not proper concluſions of a period: ſuch as, *bring about, lay hold of, come over to, clear up*, and many other of this kind; inſtead of which, if we can employ a ſimple verb, it always terminates the ſentence with more ſtrength. Even the pronoun *it*, ſhould, if poſſible, be avoided in the concluſion: eſpecially when it is joined with ſome of the prepoſitions; as, *with it, in it, to it*. We ſhall be ſenſible of this in the following ſentence. "There is not, in my opinion, a more pleaſing and triumphant conſideration in religion, than this, of the perpetual progreſs which the ſoul makes towards the perfection of its nature, without ever arriving at a period *in it*." How much more agreeable the ſentence, if it had been ſo conſtructed as to cloſe with the word *period!*

Beſides particles and pronouns, any phraſe, which expreſſes a circumſtance only, always appears badly in the rear of a ſentence. We may judge of this by the following paſſage: "Let me therefore conclude by repeating, that diviſion has cauſed all the miſchief we lament; that union alone can retrieve it; and that a great advance towards this union, was the coalition of parties, ſo happily begun, ſo ſucceſsfully carried on, and of late ſo unaccountably neglected; to ſay no worſe." This laſt phraſe, "to ſay no worſe," occaſions a falling off at the end. The proper diſpoſition of ſuch circumſtances in a ſentence, requires attention, in order to adjuſt them ſo as ſhall conſiſt equally with the perſpicuity and the ſtrength of the period.—

Though neceſſary parts, they are, however, like irregular ſtones in a building, which try the ſkill of an artiſt, where to place them with the leaſt offence. But it muſt be remembered, that the cloſe is always an unſuitable place for them. Notwithſtanding what has been ſaid againſt concluding a period with an adverb, &c. this muſt not be underſtood to refer to ſuch words, when the ſtreſs and ſignificancy of the ſentence reſt chiefly upon them. In this caſe they are not to be conſidered as circumſtances, but as the principal objects: as in the following ſentence. "In their proſperity, my friends ſhall never hear of me, in their adverſity, always." Here, "*never*" and "*always*" being emphatical words, were to be ſo placed as to make a ſtrong impreſſion.

The *ſixth* rule relating to the ſtrength of a ſentence, is, *that, in the members of a ſentence, where two things are* compared *or* contraſted *with one another; where either a reſemblance or an oppoſition is intended to be expreſſed; ſome reſemblance, in the language and conſtruction, ſhould be preſerved. For when the things themſelves correſpond to each other, we naturally expect to find a ſimilar correſpondence in the words.*

Thus, when it is ſaid, "The wiſe man is happy when he gains his own approbation; the fool, when he recommends himſelf to the applauſe of thoſe about him;" the oppoſition would have been more complete, if it had been expreſſed thus: "The wiſe man is happy when he gains his own approbation; the fool, when he gains that of others."

"A friend exaggerates a man's virtues; an enemy inflames his crimes." Better thus: "A friend exaggerates a man's virtues; an enemy, his crimes."

The following paſſage from Pope's Preface to his Homer, fully exemplifies the rule juſt given: "Homer was the greater genius; Virgil, the better artiſt: in the one, we moſt admire the man; in the other, the work. Homer hurries us with a commanding impetuoſity; Virgil leads us with an attractive majeſty. Homer ſcatters with a gener-

ous profuſion; Virgil beſtows with a careful magnificence. Homer, like the Nile, pours out his riches with a ſudden overflow; Virgil, like a river in its banks, with a conſtant ſtream."—Periods thus conſtructed, when introduced with propriety, and not returning too often, have a ſenſible beauty. But we muſt beware of carrying our attention to this beauty too far. It ought only to be occaſionally ſtudied, when compariſon or oppoſition of objects naturally leads to it. If ſuch a conſtruction as this be aimed at, in all our ſentences, it leads to a diſagreeable uniformity; produces a regularly returning clink in the period, which tires the ear; and plainly diſcovers affectation.

The *ſeventh* rule for promoting the ſtrength and effect of ſentences, is, *to attend to the harmony and eaſy flow of the words and members.*

Sound is a quality much inferior to ſenſe; yet ſuch as muſt not be diſregarded. For, as long as ſounds are the vehicle or conveyance for our ideas, there will be a very conſiderable connexion between the idea which is conveyed, and the nature of the ſound which conveys it.—Pleaſing ideas, and forcible reaſoning, can hardly be tranſmitted to the mind, by means of harſh and diſagreeable ſounds. The mind revolts at ſuch ſounds, and the impreſſion of the ſentiment muſt conſequently be weakened. The obſervations which we have to make on this ſubject, reſpect the choice of words; their arrangement; the order and diſpoſition of the members; and the cadence or cloſe of ſentences.

We begin with the choice of words. It is evident, that words are moſt agreeable to the ear, when they are compoſed of ſmooth and liquid ſounds, in which there is a proper intermixture of vowels and conſonants; without too many harſh conſonants rubbing againſt each other; or too many open vowels in ſucceſſion, to cauſe a hiatus, or diſagreeable aperture of the mouth.

It may always be aſſumed as a principle, that whatever ſounds are difficult in pronunciation, are, in the ſame pro-

portion, harſh and painful to the ear. Vowels give ſoftneſs; conſonants, ſtrength to the ſound of words. The melody of language requires a juſt proportion of each; and the conſtruction will be hurt, will be rendered either grating or effeminate, by an exceſs of either. Long words are commonly more agreeable to the ear than monoſyllables. They pleaſe it by the compoſition or ſucceſſion of ſounds which they preſent to it; and accordingly, the moſt harmonious languages abound moſt in them. Among words of any length, thoſe are the moſt melodious, which do not run wholly either upon long or ſhort ſyllables, but are compoſed of an intermixture of them: ſuch as *repent, produce, wonderful, velocity, celerity, independent, impetuoſity.*

If we would ſpeak forcibly and effectually, we muſt avoid the uſe of ſuch words as the following: 1. Such as are compoſed of words already compounded, the ſeveral parts of which are not eaſily, and therefore not cloſely united: as, "*Unſucceſsfulneſs, wrongheadedneſs, tenderheartedneſs:*" 2. Such as have the ſyllables which immediately follow the accented ſyllable, crowded with conſonants that do not eaſily coaleſce; as, "*Queſtionleſs, chroniclers, conventielers:*" 3. Such as have too many ſyllables following the accented ſyllable: as, "*Primarily, curſorily, ſummarily, peremptorineſs:*" 4. Such as have a ſhort or unaccented ſyllable repeated, or followed by another ſhort or unaccented ſyllable very much reſembling: as, "*Holily, ſillily, lowlily, farriery.*" A little harſhneſs, by the colliſion of conſonants, which nevertheleſs our organs find no difficulty in articulating, and which do not ſuggeſt to the hearer the diſagreeable idea either of precipitation or of ſtammering, is by no means a ſufficient reaſon for ſuppreſſing a uſeful term. The words *hedg'd, fledg'd, wedg'd, drudg'd, grudg'd, adjudg'd,* which ſome have thought very offenſive, are not expoſed to the objections which lie againſt the words above mentioned. We ſhould not do well to introduce ſuch hard and ſtrong ſounds too frequently; but when they are uſed ſparingly and properly, they have even

a good effect. They contribute to that variety in ſound which is advantageous to language.

The next head, reſpecting the harmony which reſults from a proper arrangement of words, is a point of greater nicety. For, let the words themſelves be ever ſo well choſen, and well ſounding, yet, if they be ill diſpoſed, the melody of the ſentence is utterly loſt, or greatly impaired. That this is the caſe, the learners will perceive by the following examples. "Pleaſures ſimple and moderate always are the beſt;" it would be better to ſay, "Simple and moderate pleaſures are always the beſt." "Office or rank may be the recompenſe of intrigue, verſatility, or flattery;" better thus, "Rank or office may be the recompenſe of flattery, verſatility, or intrigue." "A great recommendation of the guidance offered by integrity to us, is, that it is by all men eaſily underſtood:" better in this form; "It is a great recommendation of the guidance offered to us by integrity, that it is eaſily underſtood by all men." In the following examples, the words are neither ſelected nor arranged, ſo as to produce the moſt agreeable effect. "If we make the beſt of our life, it is but as a pilgrimage, with dangers ſurrounding it:" better thus, "Our life, at the beſt, is a pilgrimage, and dangers ſurround it." "We ſee that we are encumbered with difficulties, which we cannot prevent:" better, "We perceive ourſelves involved in difficulties that cannot be avoided." "It is plain to any one who views the ſubject, even ſlightly, that there is nothing here that is without allay and pure:" improved by this form; "It is evident to the ſlighteſt inſpection, that nothing here is unallayed and pure."

We may take, for an inſtance of a ſentence remarkably harmonious, the following from Milton's Treatiſe on Education: "We ſhall conduct you to a hill-ſide, laborious indeed, at the firſt aſcent; but elſe ſo ſmooth, ſo green, ſo full of goodly proſpects, and melodious ſounds on every ſide, that the harp of Orpheus was not more charming." Every thing in this ſentence conſpires to promote the harmony. The words are well choſen; full of liquids, and

ſoft ſounds; *laborious, ſmooth, green, goodly, melodious, charming;* and theſe words ſo artfully arranged, that, were we to alter the ſituation of any one of them, we ſhould, preſently, be ſenſible of the melody's ſuffering.

To promote this harmonious arrangement of words, the following general directions will be found of ſome uſe. 1ſt, When the preceding word ends with a vowel, let the ſubſequent one begin with a conſonant; and *vicê verſâ. A true friend, a cruel enemy,* are ſmoother and eaſier to the voice, than *a true union, a cruel deſtroyer.* But when it is more perſpicuous or convenient, for vowels or conſonants to end one word and begin the next, it is proper that the vowels be a long and ſhort one; and that the conſonants be either a liquid and a mute, or liquids of different ſorts: thus, *a lovely offspring; a purer deſign; a calm retreat;* are more fluent than, *a happy union, a brief petition, a cheap triumph, a putrid diſtemper, a calm matron, a clean nurſe.* From theſe examples, the ſtudent will perceive the importance of accurately underſtanding the nature of vowels and conſonants, liquids and mutes; with the connexion and influence which ſubſiſt amongſt them. 2d, In general, a conſiderable number of long or ſhort words near one another ſhould be avoided. "Diſappointment in our expectations is wretchedneſs:" better thus; "Diſappointed hope is miſery." "No courſe of joy can pleaſe us long:" better, "No courſe of enjoyment can delight us long." A ſucceſſion of words having the ſame accent on their ſyllables, whether it be long or ſhort, ſhould alſo be avoided. "James was needy, feeble, and fearful:" improved thus, "James was timid, feeble, and deſtitute." "They could not be happy; for he was ſilly, pettiſh, and ſullen:" better thus; "They could not be happy; for he was ſimple, peeviſh, and gloomy." 3d, Words which begin alike, or end alike, muſt not come together; and the laſt ſyllable of the preceding word, ſhould not be the ſame as the firſt ſyllable of the ſubſequent one. It is not ſo pleaſing and harmonious to ſay, "This is a convenient contrivance;" "He is an indulgent parent;" "She behaves with uniform for-

mality;" as, "This is a uſeful contrivance;" "He is a kind parent;" "She behaves with unvaried formality."

We proceed to conſider the members of a ſentence, with regard to harmony. They ſhould not be too long, nor diſproportionate to each other. When they have a regular and proportional diviſion, they are much eaſier to the voice, are more clearly underſtood, and better remembered, than when this rule is not attended to: for whatever tires the voice, and offends the ear, is apt to mar the ſtrength of the expreſſion, and to degrade the ſenſe of the author. And this is a ſufficient ground for paying attention to the order and proportion of ſentences, and the different parts of which they conſiſt. The following paſſage exhibits ſentences, wherein the different members are proportionally arranged.

Temple, ſpeaking ſarcaſtically of man, ſays; "But his pride is greater than his ignorance, and what he wants in knowledge he ſupplies by ſufficiency. When he has looked about him as far as he can, he concludes there is no more to be ſeen; when he is at the end of his line, he is at the bottom of the ocean; when he has ſhot his beſt, he is ſure none ever did, or ever can, ſhoot better, or beyond it. His own reaſon he holds to be the certain meaſure of truth; and his own knowledge, of what is poſſible in nature." Here every thing is at once eaſy to the breath, grateful to the ear, and intelligible to the underſtanding. See another example of the ſame kind, in the 17th and 18th verſes of the 3d chapter of the prophet Habakkuk. We may remark here, that our preſent verſion of the Holy Scriptures, eſpecially of the Pſalms, abounds with inſtances of an harmonious arrangement of the words and members of ſentences.

In the following quotation from Tillotſon, we ſhall become ſenſible of an effect very different from that of the preceding ſentences. "This diſcourſe, concerning the eaſineſs of the Divine commands, does all along ſuppoſe and acknowledge the difficulties of the firſt entrance upon a religious courſe; except only in thoſe perſons who have had the happineſs to be trained up to religion, by the eaſy and

insensible degrees of a pious and virtuous education." Here there is some degree of harshness and unpleasantness, owing principally to this, that there is properly no more than one pause or rest in the sentence, falling betwixt the two members into which it is divided; each of which is so long as to occasion a considerable stretch of the breath in pronouncing it.

With respect to the cadence or close of a sentence, care should be taken, that it be not abrupt, or unpleasant. The following instances may be sufficient to show the propriety of some attention to this part of the rule. "Virtue, diligence, and industry, joined with good temper and prudence, are prosperous in general." It would be better thus: "Virtue, diligence, and industry, joined with good temper and prudence, have ever been found the surest road to prosperity." An author speaking of the Trinity, expresses himself thus: "It is a mystery which we firmly believe the truth of, and humbly adore the depth of." How much better would it have been by this transposition: "It is a mystery, the truth of which we firmly believe, and the depth of which we humbly adore."

In order to give a sentence this proper close, the longest member of it, and the fullest words, should be reserved to the conclusion. But in the distribution of the members, and in the cadence of the period, as well as in the sentences themselves, variety must be observed; for the mind soon tires with a frequent repetition of the same tone.

Though attention to the words and members, and the close of sentences, must not be neglected, yet it must also be kept within proper bounds. Sense has its own harmony; and in no instance should perspicuity, precision, or strength of sentiment, be sacrificed to sound. All unmeaning words, introduced merely to round the period, or fill up the melody, are great blemishes in writing. They are childish and puerile ornaments, by which a sentence always loses more in point of weight, than it can gain by such additions to its sound.

CHAPTER IV.

Of FIGURES *of* SPEECH.

The FOURTH requiſite of a perfect ſentence, is a judicious uſe of the Figures of Speech.

As figurative language is to be met with in almoſt every ſentence; and, when properly employed, confers beauty and ſtrength on compoſition; ſome knowledge of it appears to be indiſpenſable to the ſcholars, who are learning to form their ſentences with perſpicuity, accuracy, and force. We ſhall, therefore, enumerate the principal figures, and give them ſome explanation.

In general, Figures of Speech imply ſome departure from ſimplicity of expreſſion; the idea which we mean to convey is expreſſed in a particular manner, and with ſome circumſtance added, which is deſigned to render the impreſſion more ſtrong and vivid. When I ſay, for inſtance, "That a good man enjoys comfort in the midſt of adverſity;" I juſt expreſs my thoughts in the ſimpleſt manner poſſible: but when I ſay, "To the upright there ariſeth light in darkneſs;" the ſame ſentiment is expreſſed in a figurative ſtyle; a new circumſtance is introduced; "light," is put in the place of "comfort," and "darkneſs" is uſed to ſuggeſt the idea of "adverſity." In the ſame manner, to ſay, "It is impoſſible, by any ſearch we can make, to explore the Divine Nature fully," is to make a ſimple propoſition: but when we ſay, "Canſt thou, by ſearching, find out the Lord? Canſt thou find out the Almighty to perfection? It is high as heaven, what canſt thou do? deeper than hell, what canſt thou know?" this introduces a figure into ſtyle; the propoſition being not only expreſſed, but with it admiration and aſtoniſhment.

But, though figures imply a deviation from what may be reckoned the moſt ſimple form of ſpeech, we are not thence to conclude, that they imply any thing uncommon, or unnatural. On many occaſions, they are both the moſt natural, and the moſt common method of uttering our ſentiments. It would be very difficult to compoſe any diſ-

courſe without uſing them often; nay, there are few ſentences of conſiderable length, in which there does not occur ſome expreſſion that may be termed a figure. This being the caſe, we may ſee the neceſſity of ſome attention, in order to underſtand their nature and uſe.

At the firſt riſe of language, men would begin with giving names to the different objects which they diſcerned, or thought of. The ſtock of words would, then, be very ſmall. As men's ideas multiplied, and their acquaintance with objects increaſed, their ſtore of names and words would alſo increaſe. But to the vaſt variety of objects and ideas, no language is adequate. No language is ſo copious, as to have a ſeparate word for every ſeparate idea. Men naturally ſought to abridge this labour of multiplying words without end; and, in order to lay leſs burden on their memories, made one word, which they had already appropriated to a certain idea or object, ſtand alſo for ſome other idea or object, between which and the primary one, they found, or fancied, ſome relation. The names of ſenſible objects, were the words moſt early introduced; and were, by degrees, extended to thoſe mental objects, of which men had more obſcure conceptions, and to which they found it more difficult to aſſign diſtinct names. They borrowed, therefore, the name of ſome ſenſible idea, where their imagination found ſome affinity. Thus, we ſpeak of a *piercing* judgment, and a *clear* head; a *ſoft* or a *hard* heart; a *rough* or a *ſmooth* behaviour. We ſay, *inflamed* by anger, *warmed* by love, *ſwelled* with pride, *melted* into grief; and theſe are almoſt the only ſignificant words which we have for ſuch ideas.

The principal advantages of figures of ſpeech, are the two following.

Firſt, They enrich language, and render it more copious. By their means, words and phraſes are multiplied for expreſſing all ſorts of ideas; for deſcribing even the minuteſt differences; the niceſt ſhades and colours of thought; which no language could poſſibly do by proper words alone, without aſſiſtance from Tropes.

Secondly, They frequently give us a much clearer and

more ſtriking view of the principal object, than we could have if it were expreſſed in ſimple terms, and diveſted of its acceſſory idea. By a well choſen figure, even conviction is aſſiſted, and the impreſſion of a truth upon the mind, made more lively and forcible than it would otherwiſe be. We perceive this in the following illuſtration of Young: "When we dip too deep in pleaſure, we always ſtir a ſediment that renders it impure and noxious:" and in this inſtance: "A heart boiling with violent paſſions, will always ſend up infatuating fumes to the head." An image that preſents ſo much congruity between a moral and a ſenſible idea, ſerves, like an argument from analogy, to enforce what the author aſſerts, and to induce belief.

Having conſidered the general nature of figures, we proceed next to particularize ſuch of them as are of the moſt importance; viz. Metaphor, Allegory, Compariſon, Metonymy, Synecdoche, Perſonification, Apoſtrophe, Antitheſis, Interrogation, Exclamation, and Amplification or Climax.

A *Metaphor* is a figure founded entirely on the reſemblance which one object bears to another. Hence, it is much allied to ſimile or compariſon, and is indeed no other than a compariſon, expreſſed in an abridged form. When I ſay of ſome great miniſter, "That he upholds the ſtate like a pillar which ſupports the weight of a whole edifice," I fairly make a compariſon: but when I ſay of ſuch a miniſter, "That he is the pillar of the ſtate," it now becomes a metaphor. In the latter caſe, the compariſon between the miniſter and a pillar is made in the mind; but it is expreſſed without any of the words that denote compariſon.

The following are examples of metaphor taken from Scripture: "I will be unto her a wall of fire round about, and will be the glory in the midſt of her." "Thou art my rock and my fortreſs." "Thy word is a lamp to my feet, and a light to my path."

Rules to be obſerved in the uſe of metaphors.

1. *Metaphors, as well as other figures, ſhould, on no occaſion be ſtuck on profuſely; and ſhould always be ſuch as accord with the ſtrain of our ſentiment.* The latter part of the

following paſſage from a late hiſtorian, is, in this reſpect, very exceptionable. He is giving an account of the famous act of parliament againſt irregular marriages in England. "The bill," ſays he, "underwent a great number of alterations and amendments, which were not effected without violent conteſt. At length, however, it was floated through both houſes on the tide of a great majority, and ſteered into the ſafe harbour of royal approbation."

2. Care ſhould be taken that *the reſemblance which is the foundation of the metaphor, be clear and perſpicuous, not far-fetched, nor difficult to diſcover.* The tranſgreſſion of this rule makes what are called harſh or forced metaphors; which are diſpleaſing, becauſe they puzzle the reader, and inſtead of illuſtrating the thought, render it perplexed and intricate.

3. In the third place, we ſhould be careful, in the conduct of metaphors, *never to jumble metaphorical and plain language together.* An author, addreſſing himſelf to the king, ſays:

To thee the world its preſent homage pays;
The *harveſt* early, but mature the *praiſe.*

It is plain, that, had not the rhyme miſled him to the choice of an improper phraſe, he would have ſaid,

The *harveſt* early, but mature the *crop;*

and ſo would have continued the figure which he had begun. Whereas, by dropping it unfiniſhed, and by employing the literal word "praiſe," when we were expecting ſomething that related to the harveſt, the figure is broken, and the two members of the ſentence have no ſuitable correſpondence to each other.

4. We ſhould avoid making two inconſiſtent metaphors meet on one object. This is what is called *mixed* metaphor, and is indeed one of the greateſt miſapplications of this figure. One may be "*ſheltered* under the patronage of a great man:" but it would be wrong to ſay, "*ſheltered* under the maſk of diſſimulation;" as a maſk conceals, but does not ſhelter. Addiſon, in his letter from Italy, ſays,

I *bridle* in my ſtruggling muſe with pain,
That longs to *launch* into a bolder ſtrain.

The muſe, figured as a horſe, may be bridled; but when we ſpeak of launching, we make it a ſhip; and, by no force of imagination, can it be ſuppoſed both a horſe and a ſhip at one moment; *bridled*, to hinder it from *launching*.

The ſame author, elſewhere, ſays, "There is not a ſingle view of human nature, which is not ſufficient to *extinguiſh* the *ſeeds* of pride." Obſerve the incoherence of the things here joined together; making a view *extinguiſh*, and extinguiſh *ſeeds*.

As metaphors ought never to be mixed, ſo they ſhould not be crowded together on the ſame object; for the mind has difficulty in paſſing readily through many different views of the ſame object, preſented in quick ſucceſſion.

The *laſt* rule concerning metaphors, is, *that they be not too far purſued*. If the reſemblance, on which the figure is founded, be long dwelt upon, and carried into all its minute circumſtances, we tire the reader, who ſoon grows weary of this ſtretch of fancy; and we render our diſcourſe obſcure. This is called *ſtraining a metaphor*. Authors of a lively and ſtrong imagination are apt to run into this exuberance of metaphor. When they hit upon a figure that pleaſes them, they are loth to part with it, and frequently continue it ſo long, as to become tedious and intricate. We may obſerve, for inſtance, how the following metaphor is ſpun out.

Thy thoughts are vagabonds; all outward bound,
'Midſt ſands, and rocks, and ſtorms, to cruiſe for pleaſure;
If gain'd, dear bought; and better miſs'd than gain'd.
Fancy and ſenſe, from an infected ſhore,
Thy cargo bring; and peſtilence the prize:
Then ſuch a thirſt, inſatiable thirſt,
By fond indulgence but inflam'd the more;
Fancy ſtill cruiſes, when poor ſenſe is tir'd.

An *Allegory* may be regarded as a metaphor continued; ſince it is the repreſentation of ſome one thing by another that reſembles it, and which is made to ſtand for it. We

may take from the ſcriptures a very fine example of an allegory, in the 80th pſalm; where the people of Iſrael are repreſented under the image of a vine; and the figure is carried throughout with great exactneſs and beauty. "Thou haſt brought a vine out of Egypt: thou haſt caſt out the heathen and planted it. Thou preparedſt room before it; and didſt cauſe it to take deep root, and it filled the land. The hills were covered with the ſhadow of it; and the boughs thereof were like the goodly cedars. She ſent out her boughs into the ſea, and her branches into the river. Why haſt thou broken down her hedges, ſo that all they which paſs by the way do pluck her? The boar out of the wood doth waſte it, and the wild beaſt of the field doth devour it. Return, we beſeech thee, O God of Hoſts, look down from heaven, and behold and viſit this vine!" See alſo Ezekiel, xvii. 22—24.

The firſt and principal requiſite in the conduct of an allegory, is, *that the figurative and the literal meaning be not mixed inconſiſtently together.* Indeed, all the rules that were given for metaphors, may alſo be applied to allegogories, on account of the affinity they bear to each other. The only material difference between them, beſides the one being ſhort, and the other being prolonged, is, that a metaphor always explains itſelf by the words that are connected with it in their proper and natural meaning: as, when I ſay, "Achilles was a lion;" "An able miniſter is the pillar of the ſtate;" the "lion" and the "pillar" are ſufficiently interpreted by the mention of "Achilles" and the "miniſter," which I join to them; but an allegory is, or may be, allowed to ſtand leſs connected with the literal meaning, the interpretation not being ſo directly pointed out, but left to our own reflection.

Allegory was a favourite method of delivering inſtruction in ancient times: for what we call fables or parables, are no other than allegories. By words and actions attributed to beaſts or inanimate objects, the diſpoſitions of men were figured; and what we call the moral, is the unfigured ſenſe or meaning of the allegory.

A *Compariſon* or *ſimile*, is, when the reſemblance between two objects is *expreſſed in form*, and generally purſued more fully than the nature of a metaphor admits: as when it is ſaid, "The actions of princes are like thoſe great rivers, the courſe of which every one beholds, but their ſprings have been ſeen by few." "As the mountains are round about Jeruſalem, ſo the Lord is round about his people." "Behold, how good and how pleaſant it is for brethren to dwell together in unity! It is like the precious ointment, &c. and as the dew that deſcended upon the mountains of Zion."

The advantage of this figure ariſes from the illuſtration which the ſimile employed gives to the principal object; from the clearer view which it preſents; or the more ſtrong impreſſion which it ſtamps upon the mind. Obſerve the effect of it in the following inſtance. The author is explaining the diſtinction between the powers of ſenſe and imagination in the human mind. "As wax," ſays he, "would not be adequate to the purpoſe of ſignature, if it had not the power to retain as well as to receive the impreſſion, the ſame holds of the ſoul with reſpect to ſenſe and imagination. Senſe is its receptive power; imagination, its retentive. Had it ſenſe without imagination, it would not be as wax, but as water, where, though all impreſſions are inſtantly made, yet as ſoon as they are made, they are inſtantly loſt."

In compariſons of this nature, the underſtanding is concerned much more than the fancy: and therefore the rules to be obſerved, with reſpect to them, are, that they be clear, and that they be uſeful; that they tend to render our conception of the principal object more diſtinct; and that they do not lead our view aſide, and bewilder it with any falſe light. We ſhould always remember that ſimiles are not arguments. However apt they may be, they do no more than explain the writer's ſentiments; they do not prove them to be founded on truth.

Compariſons ought not to be founded on likeneſſes which are too faint and remote. For theſe, in place of

aſſiſting, ſtrain the mind to comprehend them, and throw no light upon the ſubject. It is alſo to be obſerved, that a compariſon which, in the principal circumſtances, carries a ſufficiently near reſemblance, may become unnatural and obſcure, if puſhed too far. Nothing is more oppoſite to the deſign of this figure, than to hunt after a great number of coincidences in minute points, merely to ſhow how far the writer's ingenuity can ſtretch the reſemblance.

A *Metonymy* is founded on the ſeveral relations, of cauſe and effect, container and contained, ſign and thing ſignified. When we ſay: "They read Milton," the cauſe is put inſtead of the effect; meaning "Milton's works." On the other hand, when it is ſaid, "Gray hairs ſhould be reſpected," we put the effect for the cauſe, meaning by "gray hairs," *old age*. "The kettle boils," is a phraſe where the name of the container is ſubſtituted for that of the thing contained. "To aſſume the ſceptre" is a common expreſſion for entering on royal authority; the ſign being put for the thing ſignified.

When the whole is put for a part, or a part for the whole; a genus for a ſpecies, or a ſpecies for a genus; in general, when any thing leſs, or any thing more, is put for the preciſe object meant; the figure is then called a *ſynecdoche* or *Comprehenſion*. It is very common, for inſtance, to deſcribe a whole object by ſome remarkable part of it: as when we ſay: "A fleet of twenty *ſail*," in the place of "*ſhips*;" when we uſe the "*head*" for the "*perſon*," the "*waves*" for the "*ſea*." In like manner, an attribute may be put for a ſubject: as, "Youth" for the "young," the "deep" for the "ſea;" and ſometimes a ſubject for its attribute.

Perſonification or *Proſopopoeia*, is that figure by which we attribute life and action to inanimate objects. The uſe of this figure is very natural and extenſive: there is a wonderful proneneſs in human nature, under emotion, to animate all objects. When we ſay, "the ground *thirſts* for rain," or, "the earth *ſmiles* with plenty;" when we

ſpeak of "ambition's being *reſtleſs*," or, "a diſeaſe's being *deceitful*;" ſuch expreſſions ſhow the facility with which the mind can accommodate the properties of living creatures to things that are inanimate, or to abſtract conceptions of its own forming. The following are ſtriking examples from the Scriptures: "When Iſrael went out of Egypt, the houſe of Judah from a people of ſtrange language; the ſea ſaw it, and fled: Jordan was driven back! The mountains ſkipped like rams, and the little hills like lambs. What ailed thee, O thou ſea! that thou fleddeſt? Thou Jordan, that thou waſt driven back? Ye mountains, that ye ſkipped like rams; and ye little hills, like lambs? Tremble, thou earth, at the preſence of the Lord, at the preſence of the God of Jacob."

"The wilderneſs and the ſolitary place ſhall be glad for them; and the deſert ſhall rejoice and bloſſom as the roſe."

Apoſtrophe is a turning off from the regular courſe of the ſubject, to addreſs ſome perſon or thing; as, "Death is ſwallowed up in victory. O death! where is thy ſting? O grave! where is thy victory?

The following is an inſtance of perſonification and apoſtrophe united: "O thou ſword of the Lord! how long will it be ere thou be quiet? put thyſelf up into thy ſcabbard, reſt and be ſtill! How can it be quiet, ſeeing the Lord hath given it a charge againſt Aſkelon, and againſt the ſea-ſhore? there hath he appointed it." See alſo an extraordinary example of theſe figures, in the 14th chapter of Iſaiah, from the 4th to the 19th verſe, where the prophet deſcribes the fall of the Aſſyrian empire.

The next figure in order, is *Antitheſis*. Compariſon is founded on the reſemblance; antitheſis, on the contraſt or oppoſition of two objects. Contraſt has always the effect, to make each of the contraſted objects appear in the ſtronger light. White, for inſtance, never appears ſo bright as when it is oppoſed to black; and when both are viewed together. An author, in his defence of a friend againſt the

charge of murder, expreſſes himſelf thus: "Can you believe that the perſon whom he ſcrupled to ſlay, when he might have done ſo with full juſtice, in a convenient place, at a proper time, with ſecure impunity; he made no ſcruple to murder againſt juſtice, in an unfavourable place, at an unſeaſonable time, and at the riſk of capital condemnation?"

The following examples further illuſtrate this figure.

Tho' deep, yet clear; tho' gentle, yet not dull;
Strong, without rage; without o'erflowing, full.

"If you wiſh to enrich a perſon, ſtudy not to increaſe his ſtores, but to diminiſh his deſires."

"If you regulate your deſires according to the ſtandard of nature, you will never be poor; if according to the ſtandard of opinion, you will never be rich."

A maxim, or moral ſaying, very properly receives the form of the two laſt examples; both becauſe it is ſuppoſed to be the fruit of meditation, and becauſe it is deſigned to be engraven on the memory, which recalls it more eaſily by the help of ſuch contraſted expreſſions. But where ſuch ſentences frequently ſucceed each other; where this becomes an author's favourite and prevailing manner of expreſſing himſelf, his ſtyle appears too much ſtudied and laboured; it gives us the impreſſion of an author attending more to his manner of ſaying things, than to the things themſelves.

Interrogation. The unfigured, literal uſe of interrogation, is to aſk a queſtion: but when men are ſtrongly moved, whatever they would affirm or deny, with great earneſtneſs, they naturally put in the form of a queſtion, expreſſing thereby the ſtrongeſt confidence of the truth of their own ſentiment, and appealing to their hearers for the impoſſibility of the contrary. Thus Balaam expreſſed himſelf to Balak. "The Lord is not a man that he ſhould lie, neither the ſon of man that he ſhould repent. Hath he ſaid it? and ſhall he not do it? Hath he ſpoken it? and ſhall he not make it good?"

Exclamations are the effect of ſtrong emotions of the mind; ſuch as, ſurpriſe, admiration, joy, grief, and the like. "Wo is me that I ſojourn in Meſech, that I dwell in the tents of Kedar!" *Pſalms.*

"O that my head were waters and mine eyes a fountain of tears, that I might weep day and night, for the ſlain of the daughter of my people! O that I had in the wilderneſs a lodging-place of way-faring men!" *Jeremiah.*

The laſt figure of ſpeech that we ſhall mention, is what writers call *Amplification* or *Climax.* It conſiſts in heightening all the circumſtances of an object or action, which we deſire to place in a ſtrong light. We ſhall give an inſtance from the charge of a judge to the jury, in the caſe of a woman accuſed of murdering her own child. "Gentlemen, if one man had any how ſlain another; if an adverſary had killed his oppoſer, or a woman occaſioned the death of her enemy; even theſe criminals would have been capitally puniſhed by the Cornelian law: but if this guiltleſs infant, that could make no enemy, had been murdered by its own nurſe, what puniſhment would not then the mother have demanded? With what cries and exclamations would ſhe have ſtunned your ears! What ſhall we ſay then, when a woman, guilty of homicide, a mother, of the murder of her innocent child, hath compriſed all thoſe miſdeeds in one ſingle crime; a crime, in its own nature, deteſtable; in a woman, prodigious; in a mother, incredible; and perpetrated againſt one whoſe age called for compaſſion, whoſe near relation claimed affection, and whoſe innocence deſerved the higheſt favour."

We have now finiſhed what was propoſed, concerning Perſpicuity in ſingle words and phraſes, and the accurate conſtruction of ſentences. The former has been conſidered, under the heads of Purity, Propriety, and Preciſion; and the latter, under thoſe of Clearneſs, Unity, Strength, and the proper uſe of Figurative Language. Though many of thoſe attentions which have been recommended, may ap-

pear minute, yet their effect upon writing and ſtyle, is much greater than might, at firſt, be imagined. A ſentiment which is expreſſed in accurate language, and in a period, clearly, neatly, and well arranged, makes always a ſtronger impreſſion on the mind, than one that is expreſſed inaccurately, or in a feeble or embarraſſed manner. Every one feels this upon a compariſon: and if the effect be ſenſible in one ſentence, how much more in a whole diſcourſe, or compoſition that is made up of ſuch ſentences?

The fundamental rule for *writing* with accuracy, and into which all others might be reſolved, undoubtedly is, *to communicate, in correct language, and in the cleareſt and moſt natural order, the ideas which we mean to transfuſe into the minds of others.* Such a ſelection and arrangement of words, as do moſt juſtice to the ſenſe, and expreſs it to moſt advantage, make an agreeable and ſtrong impreſſion. To theſe points have tended all the rules which have been given. Did we always think clearly, and were we, at the ſame time, fully maſters of the language in which we write, there would be occaſion for few rules. Our ſentences would then, of courſe, acquire all thoſe properties of clearneſs, unity, ſtrength, and accuracy, which have been recommended. For we may reſt aſſured, that whenever we expreſs ourſelves ill, beſides the miſmanagement of language, there is, for the moſt part, ſome miſtake in our manner of conceiving the ſubject. Embarraſſed, obſcure, and feeble ſentences, are generally, if not always, the reſult of embarraſſed, obſcure, and feeble thought. Thought and expreſſion act and re-act upon each other. The underſtanding and language have a ſtrict connexion; and they who are learning to compoſe and arrange their ſentences with accuracy and order, are learning, at the ſame time, to *think* with accuracy and order; a conſideration which *alone* will recompenſe the ſtudent, for his attention to this branch of literature.

CONCLUSION.

THE Compiler of theſe elements of the Engliſh language, hopes it will not be deemed inconſiſtent with the nature and deſign of his work, to make a ſhort addreſs to the young perſons engaged in the ſtudy of it, reſpecting their future walks in the paths of literature, and the chief purpoſe to which they ſhould apply their acquiſitions.

In forming this grammar, and the volume of Exerciſes connected with it, the author was influenced by a deſire to facilitate your progreſs in learning, and, at the ſame time, to impreſs on your minds principles of piety and virtue. He wiſhed alſo to aſſiſt, in ſome degree, the labours of thoſe who are cultivating your underſtandings; and providing for you a fund of rational and uſeful employment, in place of thoſe frivolous purſuits, and that love of eaſe and ſenſual pleaſure, which enfeeble and corrupt the minds of many inconſiderate youth, and render them uſeleſs to ſociety.

Without your own beſt exertions, the concern of others for your welfare, will be of little avail: with them, you may fairly promiſe yourſelves ſucceſs. The writer of this addreſs, therefore, recommends to you, an earneſt co-operation with the endeavours of your friends to promote your improvement and happineſs. He hopes that, whatever may be your attainments, you will not reſt ſatisfied with mere literary acquiſitions, nor with a ſelfiſh or contracted application of them. When they advance only the intereſts of this ſtage of being, and look not beyond the preſent tranſient ſcene, their influence is circumſcribed within a very narrow ſphere. The great buſineſs of this life is to prepare, and qualify us, for the enjoyment of a better, by cultivating a pure and humble ſtate of mind, and cheriſhing habits of piety towards God, and benevolence to men. Every thing that promotes or retards this important work, is of great moment to you, and claims your firſt and moſt ſerious attention.

If, then, the cultivation of letters, and an advancement in knowledge, are found to ſtrengthen and enlarge your minds, to purify and exalt your pleaſures, and to diſpoſe you to pious and virtuous ſentiments and conduct, they produce excellent effects, which, with your beſt endeavours to improve them, and the Divine bleſſing ſuperadded, will not fail to render you, not only wiſe and good yourſelves, but alſo the happy inſtruments of diffuſing wiſdom, religion, and goodneſs around you. Thus improved, your acquiſitions become handmaids to virtue; and they may eventually ſerve to increaſe the rewards, which the ſupreme Being has promiſed to faithful and well-directed exertions, for the promotion of truth and goodneſs amongſt men.

But if you counteract the hopes of your friends, and the tendency of theſe attainments; if you grow vain of your real or imaginary diſtinctions, and regard with contempt, the virtuous, unlettered mind; if you ſuffer yourſelves to be abſorbed in over-curious or trifling ſpeculations; if your heart and principles be debaſed and poiſoned, by the influence of corrupting and pernicious books, for which no elegance of compoſition can make amends; if you ſpend ſo much of your time in literary engagements, as to make them interfere with higher occupations, and lead you to forget, that pious and benevolent action is the great end of your being: if ſuch be the unhappy miſapplication of your acquiſitions and advantages,—inſtead of becoming a bleſſing to you, they will prove the occaſion of greater condemnation; and, in the hour of ſerious thought, they may excite the painful reflections,—that it would have been better for you, to have remained illiterate and unaſpiring; to have been confined to the humbleſt walks of life; and to have been even hewers of wood and drawers of water all your days.

THE END.

ISAAC COLLINS & SON,

At their Store of Books and Stationary, No. 189, Pearl-Street, New-York, keep conſtantly on hand,

Neat editions of the following Books,

BY LINDLEY MURRAY:

1.

ENGLISH GRAMMAR

Adapted to the different Claſſes of Learners, &c. The *ninth* edition, with corrections and additions.

2.

AN ABRIDGMENT OF

MURRAY'S Engliſh Grammar. With an Appendix, containing Exerciſes in parſing, in orthography, in ſyntax, and in punctuation. Deſigned for the younger Claſſes of Learners. The *eleventh* edition, enlarged and improved.

3.

ENGLISH EXERCISES,

Adapted to Murray's Engliſh Grammar, conſiſting of

Exemplifications of the Parts of Speech;
Inſtances of Falſe Orthography;
Violations of the Rules of Syntax;
Defects in Punctuation; and
Violations of the Rules reſpecting Perſpicuity and Accuracy.

Deſigned for the Benefit of Private Learners, as well as for the Uſe of Schools.

4.

A KEY TO THE ENGLISH EXERCISES;

Calculated to enable private Learners to become their own Inſtructers, in Grammar and Compoſition.

"Mr. Murray has preſented to the public the *eighth* edition of his grammar, in which he ſhows a laudable anxiety to render his book more and more worthy of the high reputation by which it is honourably diſtinguiſhed.

"Mr. Murray's Grammar, Exerciſes, and Key to the

Exercises, form altogether, by far, the most complete and judicious analysis of the English language, that has hitherto been published. The rules for composition are excellent; the examples are selected with taste and judgment; and the execution of the whole displays an unusual degree of critical acuteness and sagacity."

Annual Review, 1802.

"Mr. Murray's English Grammar, *English Exercises*, and Abridgment *of the Grammar, claim our attention, on account of their being composed* on the principle we have *so frequently recommended*, of combining religious and *moral improvement* with the elements of scientific knowledge. But as it is not a part of our plan, to enter into a particular examination of works of this nature, we shall only say, that they have long been in high estimation.

The late learned Dr. Blair gave his opinion of them in the following terms:—'Mr. Lindley Murray's Gram-'mar, with the Exercises and the Key in a separate vo-'lume, I esteem as a most excellent performance. I think 'it superior to any work of that nature we have yet had; 'and am persuaded that it is, by much, the best Grammar 'of the English language extant. On Syntax, in particu-'lar, he has shown a wonderful degree of acuteness and 'precision, in ascertaining the propriety of language, and 'in rectifying the numberless errors which writers are apt 'to commit. Most useful these books must certainly be to 'all who are applying themselves to the arts of composi-'tion.' *Guardian of Education, July*, 1803.

"This grammar is a publication of much merit, and fully answers the professions in the title. The appendix contains some of the best rules for writing elegantly, and with propriety, that we recollect to have seen."

"We have been much pleased with the perusal of Mr. Murray's "English Exercises." They occupy, with distinguished excellence, a most important place in the science of the English language; and, as such, we can warmly recommend them to the teachers of schools, as well as to all those who are desirous of attaining correctness and precision in their native tongue."

Monthly Review, 1796, 1797.

"This book (Engliſh Exerciſes) has been accidentally miſlaid: but we willingly repeat the praiſe we formerly gave the author for his Engliſh Grammar. There is great judgment ſhown in theſe Exerciſes; and, what is no common merit, the greateſt perſpicuity in the adaptation of the examples to the ſeveral rules."

Britiſh Critic, November, 1798.

"The materials of this grammar have been carefully and judiciouſly ſelected; its arrangement is diſtinct, and well adapted to the purpoſe of inſtruction; and its expreſſion is ſimple, perſpicuous, and accurate."

"The examples contained in Mr. Murray's "Engliſh Exerciſes," are ſelected with great judgment; and are very happily adapted to the purpoſe of correcting *common* errors in writing and ſpeaking."

Analytical Review, 1796, 1797.

"The principle upon which all the publications of Mr. Murray, for the inſtruction of the riſing generation, are founded, is ſuch as gives him an unqueſtionable claim to public protection. The man who blends religion and morals with the elements of ſcientific knowledge, renders an eminent ſervice to ſociety: and where ability of execution is added to excellence of deſign, as in the preſent caſe, the claim becomes irreſiſtible."

Anti-jacobin Review, January, 1804.

"In the *Monthly Magazine and American Review* (vol. iii. p. 311.) notice was taken of the grammar of Mr. Murray. We can only repeat our opinion, that it is the beſt work of the kind that has appeared in our language. The *Exerciſes and Key,* which are publiſhed in a ſeparate volume, are valuable, and muſt greatly facilitate the acquiſition of correctneſs and perſpicuity in writing. The *Grammar* has paſſed through *ſeven* editions in England; and has received, as well as the other publications of Mr. Murray, the uniform approbation of literary characters and journaliſts. We do not heſitate warmly to recommend them

o the inſtructers of youth in every part of the United States, as eminently conducive to pure morality and religion, and to the acquiſition of a correct and elegant ſtyle. They deſerve to take place of all other works of the ſame kind which are now uſed in our ſchools."

The American Review and Literary Journal for July, Auguſt, and September, 1801.

5.

Introduction to the English Reader:

Or, a *Selection of Pieces*, in Proſe and Poetry, &c.

"*Animated* by the favourable reception of the "English Reader," Mr. Murray here purſues the ſame object; and has not only compiled a judicious and well-arranged ſupplement for the *higher* claſſes of learners, *(The Sequel to the Engliſh Reader,)* but in order to complete his undertaking, has prepared an Introduction to it, for the *younger* claſſes.—We have no doubt that the public will be pleaſed with the additions to both the fronts of the original building. The whole is truly uſeful and well-arranged.

"This work may be ſafely recommended, and put into the hands of youth: and the *rules and obſervations for aſſiſting them to read with propriety*, form to it a very ſuitable introduction. Mr. Murray endeavours to correct thoſe errors which children are apt to commit; and gives ſome directions which, if obſerved, cannot fail to make good readers. They are ſhort; and it would be of ſervice to young perſons, if they would imprint them on their memory." *Monthly Review, Auguſt*, 1801.

6.

The English Reader:

Or, Pieces in Proſe and Poetry, ſelected from the beſt writers, &c. With a few preliminary obſervations on the PRINCIPLES OF GOOD READING.

"We do not fear diſcrediting our judgment, by recommending to all ſects and degrees of people this portable

volume; which, though profeſſedly compiled for the inſtruction of youth, will not be found unuſeful to perſons of riper years. *New London Review, July,* 1799.

"This work may be recommended as a uſeful companion to the young of both ſexes."

Critical Review, July, 1799.

"This ſelection reflects much credit on the taſte of the Compiler; and the arrangement of the various pieces is judicious. The preliminary rules for enunciation are uſeful, and clearly delivered. We therefore recommend this ſmall volume to thoſe who wiſh to attain, without the help of inſtructers, the important advantages of thinking and ſpeaking with propriety."

Monthly Review, Auguſt, 1799.

"Inſtead of attempting to diſplay the merits of this uſeful and pleaſing work, by remarks of our own, we ſhall tranſcribe the author's Preface; which ſhows that he was actuated by ſuperior motives, which do him honour, &c." "The ends propoſed by this reſpectable author, have, we hope, been accompliſhed to his utmoſt wiſh; for public approbation has crowned his labours."

Guardian of Education, July 1803.

7.

SEQUEL TO THE ENGLISH READER:

Or, Elegant Selections in Proſe and Poetry. Deſigned to improve the higheſt Claſs of Learners in reading; to eſtabliſh a taſte for juſt and accurate compoſition; and to promote the intereſts of piety and virtue.

"The character that we formerly gave of Mr. Murray's "Engliſh Reader," is juſtly applicable to the preſent ſupplemental volume. Its contents are drawn from the moſt correct and elegant writers; and in the ſelection, all due attention has been paid by the Compiler, to preſerve untainted the morals, at the ſame time that he agreeably amuſes and improves the minds of the riſing generation."

Gentleman's Magazine, October, 1800.

8.

The Power of Religion on the Mind,

In retirement, affliction, and at the approach of death: exemplified in the teſtimonies and experience of perſons diſtinguiſhed by their greatneſs, learning, or virtue. The *tenth* edition.

"We have had frequent occaſion to ſpeak of the diligence, good ſenſe, and good intentions, of Mr. Murray; and we congratulate him ſincerely on the *ſucceſs of this* particular work. We announce this edition, becauſe the alterations and additions are ſo conſiderable, that it is rendered almoſt a new work; the nature of which alterations is explained in the Advertiſement placed before the Table of Contents. Twenty-two characters have been added to the work, and much new biographical information is introduced." *Britiſh Critic, July,* 1801.

"That 'examples draw where precepts fail,' is a truth which has been acknowledged in all ages and nations: and on the ſtrength of this principle, Mr. Murray has had recourſe to experience, in evincing the power and importance of religion. He has thus furniſhed an intereſting collection of teſtimonies: and we wonder not, that a work ſo inſtructive and amuſing, as well as impreſſive, ſhould have been generally patroniſed. It is a book which may be read with profit, by perſons in all ſituations; and, with the riſing generation, it may anſwer the double purpoſe, of improving them in biography and in virtue."

Monthly Review, Auguſt, 1801.

"In an age like the preſent, when infidelity ſeems to have thrown away her maſk, as no longer being aſhamed to diſcloſe her daring front;—when a laxity of morals prevails even among believers, and men ſtick not to inſinuate that an indulgence in crimes expreſsly forbidden by our holy religion, will find excuſe in the eye of that Being, who knows he formed us *frail creatures,*—at ſuch a ſeaſon, it is of the higheſt importance to recur to the piety of thoſe comparatively few bright examples, who will be of ſingular efficacy to excite in us a love of God and goodneſs.

Mr. Murray, with much commendable zeal, has, in the volume before us, provided the reader with an assemblage of virtuous and religious characters. The conduct of the greater part of them, at the approach of death, affords a lesson which all are concerned to learn—that 'the fear of the Lord' alone 'is wisdom,' and to depart from evil the only 'understanding.'"

Critical Review, June, 1803.

"This work, which has been long and justly admired, has, in the last edition, received many alterations and improvements; and, in its present enlarged state, forms, in our opinion, one of the best books that can be put into the hands of young people. The subject is grave and important; but Mr. Murray has rendered it highly interesting and engaging, by a judicious selection of anecdotes and examples; which, by the intermixture of pious reflections, he teaches the reader to apply to his own benefit."

Guardian of Education, August, 1803.

9.

Lecteur Francois:

Ou, Recueil de Pièces, en Prose et en Vers, tirées des Meilleurs Ecrivains: pour servir à perfectionner les jeunes gens dans la lecture; à étendre leur connoissance de la langue Françoise; et à leur inculquer des principes de vertu et de piété.

"Mr. Murray is entitled to great commendation for the care and judgment, evidently displayed in the useful collection before us, which is literally what it professes to be; and is, of course, well calculated for the purposes which its author intended to accomplish. None but extracts the most unexceptionable are here offered to the study of youth, and such as have an immediate tendency at once to correct their taste, and to improve their minds."

Antijacobin Review, December, 1802.

"To those who have seen Mr. Murray's "English Reader," and the "Sequel" to that work, we need only

say, that the present volume is compiled on a similar plan, and with the same degree of attention to purity of sentiment and elegance of composition. The extracts are chiefly drawn from the best French writers of the age of Louis the Fourteenth. The Compiler professes to have paid particular attention to the orthography, which, he says, will be found to be strictly agreeable to the latest edition of the French Academy's Dictionary; and in the task of selection he has spared no pains to render his book equally interesting and instructive to young persons.

"At the end of the work we find some very pleasing and satisfactory biographical notes (in alphabetical arrangement) of the numerous writers to whose works Mr. Murray has resorted for the materials of his *Lecteur Francois*: they are honourable, at once, to his taste and industry."

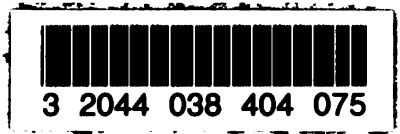
European Magazine, November, 1802.

"The name of Mr. Lindley Murray has often appeared in our pages, connected with very just commendations of his talents and diligence. The present work, which is printed with great neatness, contains a well-classed selection of extracts from the best French authors, and must be of considerable use to students, who are not so situated as to command access to a variety of books."

British Critic, March, 1803.

"The favourable reception of Mr. Murray's *English Reader*, has prompted him to undertake the present compilation; which is conducted on the same plan, and calculated to afford the same assistance to the student of the *French* language, that the *English* work was designed to administer to our youth in relation to their own tongue. The extracts are, for the most part, taken from the best writers of the age of Louis XIV.; and afford specimens of various styles and modes of composition. Especial care has been taken to render the study of eloquence subservient to virtue, and to introduce only such pieces as shall answer the double purpose of promoting good principles, and a correct and elegant taste.—This will, no doubt, be found a very useful school-book."

Monthly Review, May, 1803.


3 2044 038 404 075